OKI

User's Manual

Advanced

Try using various functions

1 Convenient print functions

2 Matching Colors

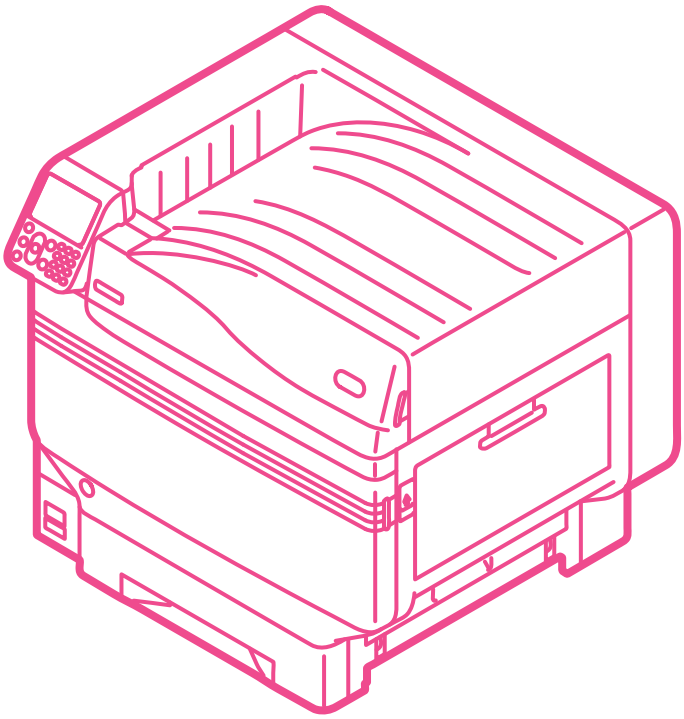
3 Using Utility Software

4 Network Setup

5 Checking and Changing Printer Settings Using the Control Panel

Appendix

Index



C911
C931
C941
C942
ES9411
ES9431
ES9541
ES9542
Pro9431
Pro9541
Pro9542

Manual Configuration

The following user manuals are enclosed with the product.

The e-manual is stored as software on DVD-ROM.

1 Step Read this first



• Pamphlet

Opening the box and installing the printer

Set-up Guide

This guide uses illustrations to explain the methods from opening the box to installation. For the advanced setup guide, see the "Basic".

• E-format

Preparing the printer to print

Basic

This guide describes the precautions for safe use of the device. Make sure to read before use. Further, basic uses from the device installation methods to initial printing are also explained. The device functions are described in the appendix.

- Checking the product
- Parts nomenclature and functions
- Using the device to its fullest
- Installing the device
- Turning ON and OFF the power supply
- Test printing using the printer only
- Connecting to a PC
- Paper
- Printing
- Paper ejection
- Setting Power Save mode
- Setting auto power OFF
- Checking the print quantity, consumables, remaining maintenance unit quantity, and remaining service life
- Cancelling a print job
- Adding printers using LPD protocols (TCP/IP)
- Table of control panel menu items
- Basic Windows procedures
- Printer specifications

2 Step Read these guides as necessary

• E-format

Try using various functions

Advanced (This manual)

This guide explains the various paper print methods and how to use useful functions. Read to optimize the printing environment or to adjust the color, etc., using the enclosed utility software.
Further, this guide also explains the items that can be set from the control panel, and the network settings.

- Useful print functions
- Adjusting the color
- Using utility software
- Network settings
- Checking and changing printer settings using the control panel

• E-format

Read for any points that are not understood, or for maintenance

Troubleshooting/Daily Maintenance Manual

This manual explains the procedures for paper jams, and troubleshooting method if an error message is displayed. This manual also explains daily maintenance such as now to replace consumables and maintenance units, and cleaning, etc.

- Troubleshooting
- Maintenance
- Consumables, maintenance products, options, color management server, etc.

• E-format

Using C941/C942/ES9541/ES9542/Pro9541/Pro9542

Separate Volume Spot Color Guide

This guide explains how to set up the Spot Color kit and check the printer drivers, and how to print using Spot Color. Make sure to read before use.

- Setting the Spot Color kit
- Control panel explanation
- Checking the printer drivers
- Table of printer driver functions
- Printing on color paper
- Printing on transparent film
- Specifying and printing Spot Color toner using the applications
- Fine-tuning white
- Switching Spot Color kits

Reading the Manual

Symbols

Note

- These are cautions and restrictions for the correct operation of the device. Make sure to read to avoid misoperation.

Memo

- Knowledge of the information before using the device is useful and can act as a reference. Reading is recommended.

Reference

- This are the reference pages. Read to learn detailed information and relevant information.

⚠WARNING

- Mishandling due to ignoring this display may cause death or serious injury.

⚠CAUTION

- Mishandling due to ignoring this display may cause personal injury.

Keys, Buttons, and Symbols

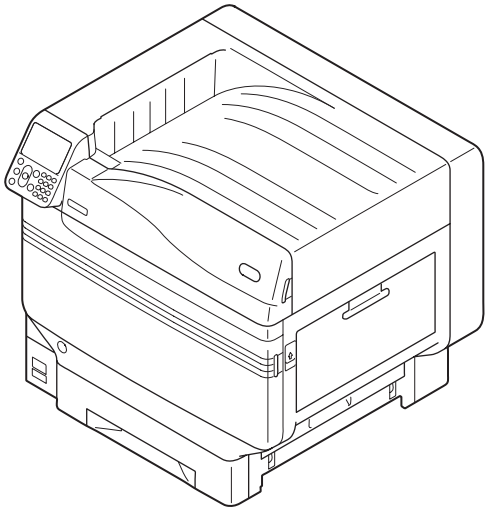
This chapter described the following keys, buttons, and symbols.

Inscription	Explanation
[ ] button/key	● The control panel buttons and 10-key pad are described below. E.g.: OK → [OK] button　　↩ → [BACK] button ✳ → [Fn] key　　C → [CLEAR] key ● Indicates your PC keyboard.
[ ]	● Describes the menu name on the liquid crystal panel. ● Describes the PC menus, windows, and dialog box names.
" "	● Describes the messages and input text displayed in the liquid crystal panel. ● Describes the file and screen names on the PC. ● Describes the reference title.
>	Describes the menu level of the device or PC.

Illustrations

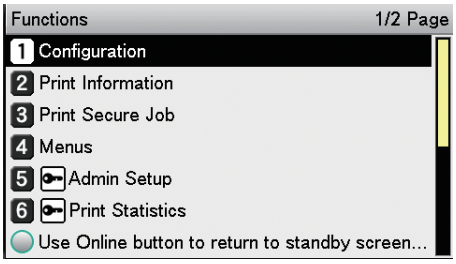
The device illustrations used herein show the C931 model unless otherwise specified.

Illustrations may differ from the actual product.



Screens

The images of the control panel and PC used herein are examples. The images may differ from actual products and screens.



Inscriptions

The following inscriptions are used in this manual.

- C911dn → C911
- C931dn → C931
- C941dn → C941
- C942dn → C942
- ES9411dn → ES9411
- ES9431dn → ES9431
- ES9541dn → ES9541
- Microsoft® Windows® 7 64-bit Edition operating system version → Windows 7 (64bit version)
- Microsoft® Windows® 7 operating system version → Windows 7
- Mac OS X10.3.9 or later → Mac OS X

The manuals enclosed with the printer use as examples Windows 7 in the case of Windows, and OS X 10.8 in the case of Mac OS X unless otherwise specified.

Depending on the OS and model used, descriptions in this manual may differ.

Contents

Manual Configuration 2
Reading the Manual 3
Symbols 3
Keys, Buttons, and Symbols 3
Illustrations 4
Screens 4
Inscriptions 5

1 Convenient print functions 13
Printer driver functions table 14
Functions explanation 14
Windows PS printer driver functions 14
Windows PCL printer driver functions 16
Windows XPS printer driver functions 17
Mac OS X PS printer driver functions 18
Printing on various papers 22
Printing on envelopes 22
Before setting 22
Printing on standard size envelopes 23
Printing on irregular size envelopes 28
Printing on glossy paper 35
Printing on labels and transparencies 41
Printing on user-selected paper sizes (custom pages and lengthy printing) 47
Using custom media 52
Economy printing 54
Printing multiple pages on a single sheet (multi-page printing) 54
2-Sided Printing 56
Test printing with toner economy (toner economy mode) 58
Changing sizes to print 61
Enlarging/reducing pages 61
Enlarging and printing multiple sheets (poster printing) 63
Sorting pages to print pamphlets (booklets) 65
Clean printing 67
Changing print quality (resolution) 67
Printing sharper photos (photo mode) 69
Printign text and lines sharply 69
Compensating fine lines 71
Using printer fonts 73

Using PC fonts **75**

Printing print results so that people cannot see them **76**

Entering passwords to print (Secure Print) **76**

Printing secret text (encrypted secure print) **78**

Correcting the Print Position on the Paper Using the Control Panel ... **81**

Correcting the print start position **81**

Adjusting the Image Stretch (Print Length) Using the Control Panel ... **83**

Adjusting the stretch of print results **83**

Advanced print functions **85**

Setting the page order **85**

Printing documents in page order 85

Printing documents in reverse page order 85

Printing single sheets manually **87**

Automatically selecting trays **90**

Printing only covers from a separate tray (cover printing) **92**

Stamping and printing (watermarks) **93**

Collate (sort printing) **95**

Outputting portrait and landscape alternately using batch printing **97**

Saving data for repeat printing **99**

Printing using registered forms (overlay printing) **101**

Automatically switching trays **103**

Using the printer buffer **106**

Outputting to file without printing **107**

Downloading PostScript files **108**

Printing PostScript errors **109**

Changing emulation modes **109**

Changing settings for mono printing **110**

Saving the printer driver settings **111**

Saving settings 111

Calling and using saved settings 112

Changing the default printer driver settings **113**

Deleting or updating printer drivers **114**

Deleting the printer drivers **114**

Updating the printer drivers **115**

2 Matching Colors **119**

Matching colors using the control panel **120**

Manually compensating color drift **120**

Automatically compensating density and gradation **120**

Manually compensating density **121**

Watermark adjustment for density compensation **122**

Adjusting the color balance (density) 123
Adjusting the color balance 126
Matching Colors Using the Printer Drivers 128
Color matching 128
What is color matching? 128
Color matching (recommended) 128
Easy color matching (Office colors) 130
Color matching (GraphicPro) 133
Color matching (color matching OFF) 135
Changing black finish 137
Printing using monochrome (black and white) 140
Rendering white lines between text and background inconspicuous (black overprint) 142
Calibrating plate misalignment (trapping) 143
Simulating print effects 145
Printing using color analysis (classification printing) 148
Disabling the Postscript Color Matching 149
Matching Colors Using Utilities 150
Color Correct Utility 150
Changing palette colors (Windows) 150
Changing palette colors (Macintosh) 154
Changing gamma values and hues (Windows) 158
Changing gamma values and hues (Macintosh) 161
Saving color adjustment settings (Windows) 163
Saving color matching settings (Macintosh) 164
Importing color matching settings (Windows) 165
Importing color matching settings (Macintosh) 167
Deleting color matching settings (Windows) 168
Deleting color matching settings (Macintosh) 169
PS Gamma Adjuster 170
Registering gamma (Windows) 170
Registering gamma (Macintosh) 171
Color Swatch Utility 172
Operations environment 172
Printing RGB color samples 172
Profile assistant 173
Registering ICC profiles 174
3 Using Utility Software 175
Utility software that can be used with the printer 176
Utilities table 176
Windows/Macintosh common utilities 176
Windows utilities 176

Macintosh utilities 178
Installing utilities 178
Windows 178
Macintosh 179
Windows utilities 180
Configuration Tool 180
Operations environment 180
Installing 180
Registering devices 182
Device Info tab 183
Network Setting plug-in 183
Storage Manager plug-in 184
PDF Print Direct 187
Operations environment 187
Printing PDF files 187
Print Job Accounting client 188
Operations environment 188
Installing 188
Changing job account modes 188
Change the Printer Display Language 192
Operations environment 192
Switching the control panel language 192
Direct Network Printing Utility (LPR) 194
Operations environment 194
Starting up 194
Downloading files to the printer 194
Checking/deleting/transferring jobs 195
Checking the printer status 195
Adding printers 196
Automatically transferring jobs 196
Printing using multiple printers simultaneously 197
Starting the web browser 198
Adding comments 199
Setting IP addresses automatically 200
Uninstalling 200
Network Extension 201
Operations environment 201
Checking the printer settings 201
Setting options automatically 202
Uninstalling 202
Web Driver Installer 203

Mac OS X utilities 204
Panel language setup 204
Setting the printer 204
Print Job Accounting client 205
Installing 205
Registering user IDs and user names 205
Registering multiple users simultaneously 205
Changing user IDs and user names 206
Deleting user IDs and user names 206
Network Card Setup Utility 207
Setting IP addresses 207
Making web settings 207
Finishing the Network Card Setup Utility 208

4 Network Setup 209
Network setting items 210
Initializing network settings 223
Using DHCP 224
Setting the DHCP server 224
Setting the printer 225
Using SNMP 227
About IPv6 228
Checking IPv6 addresses 228
Setting the network from the web browser 229
Operations environment 229
Starting up 229
Logging in as an administrator 230
Items table 231
Changing administrator passwords 233
Checking printer status from the PC 234
Changing printer settings from the PC 234
Encrypting communications (SSL/TLS) 235
Printing using IPP 237
Encrypting communications (IPSec) 239
Using the access restriction function (IP filter) with IP addresses 246
Using the access restriction function with MAC addresses 247
Notifying errors using e-mail 249
Notifying errors periodically using e-mail 251
Using SNMPv3 254
Using IEEE802.1X 256
Changing EtherTalk printer names (Macintosh) 260

Changing EtherTalk zones (Macintosh) **260**
Printing without printer drivers (Direct printing) **261**
Printing PDF files 261
Setting the server to print mail attachments 262

5 Checking and Changing Printer Settings Using the Control Panel **263**
Printing printer information **264**
Printable report tables **264**
Printing printer settings lists **265**
Settings details 265
Printing printer information lists **266**
Network information 266
File list 267
Demo pages 267
Error log 268
Total print results 268
Total print results Printing print lists **269**
Font list 269
Color profile list 269
User media list 270
Test prints 270
Registering custom sizes (irregular paper) **271**
Changing administrator passwords **273**
Restricting button operations (panel lockout) **274**
Restricting menu displays (menu lockout) **275**
Checking print quantities **276**
Checking remaining consumables and maintenance unit quantities ... **277**
Table of setting items in the device setup screen **278**
Device setup screen **278**
[Configuration] **279**
[Print Information] **282**
[Print Secure Job] **283**
[Menus] **284**
[Admin Setup] **297**
[Print Statistics] **315**
[Calibration] **316**
[Boot Menu] **320**

Appendix 321

Using Print Job Accounting 322

Number of usable user IDs and logs 322

Character code table 323

PostScript mode 323

PCL mode 326

Index 329

1 Convenient print functions

Printer driver functions table 14

Printing on various papers 22

Economy printing 54

Changing sizes to print 61

Clean printing 67

Printing print results so that people cannot see them 76

Correcting the Print Position on the Paper Using the Control Panel 81

Adjusting the Image Stretch (Print Length) Using the Control Panel 83

Advanced print functions 85

Deleting or updating printer drivers ... 114

Note

- This section uses [WordPad] for its Windows explanations, and [TextEditor] for its Mac OS X explanations. Depending on the application, the screens and operations procedures may differ.
- For detailed explanations of the printer driver and utility setup items, see "Online Help".
- Due to printer driver and utility version upgrades, there may be differences from the descriptions in this manual.

Printer driver functions table

This section explains the convenient functions when printing from a PC.

Reference

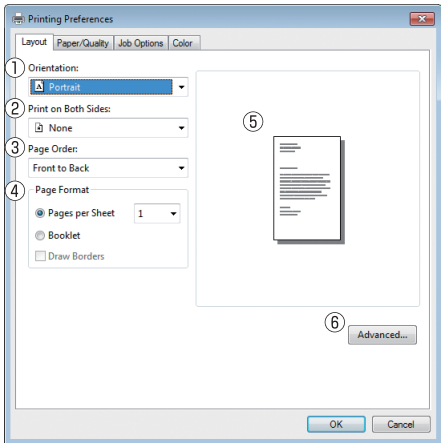
- For detailed explanations of the printer driver setup items, see "Online Help".

Functions explanation

There are three printer driver types for Windows (PCL, PS, and XPS), and one printer driver type for Mac OS X (PS). The functions may differ depending on the printer driver.

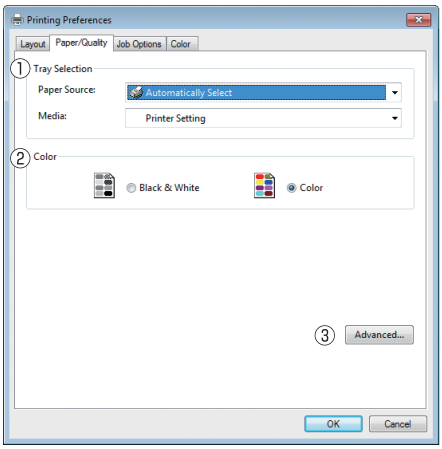
Windows PS printer driver functions

[Layout] tab



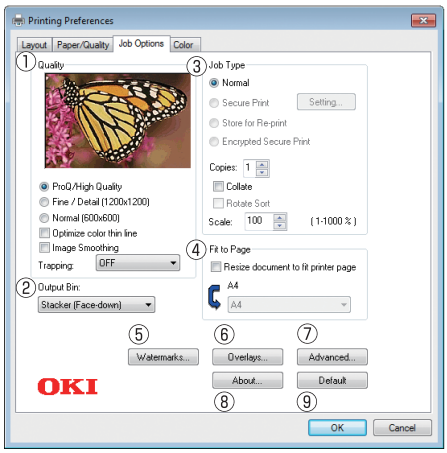
	Item	Explanation
①	Orientation	Specifies the print orientation.
②	Print on Both Sides	Specifies to use both sides printing.
③	Page Order	Specifies the order of the document pages to be printed.
④	Page Format	Specifies the number of pages and small leaflet printing to be printed on 1 sheet of paper.
⑤	Preview window	Displays an image of the print results.
⑥	Advanced	You can make more advanced setups regarding the print quality and paper size.

[Paper/Quality] tab



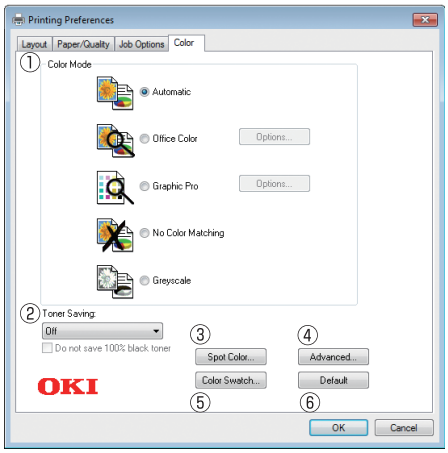
	Item	Explanation
①	Tray Selection	Specifies the tray to feed the paper.
②	Color	Specifies color or monochrome printing.
③	Advanced	You can make more advanced setups regarding the print quality and paper size.

[Job Options] tab



	Item	Explanation
①	Quality	Specifies the resolution during printing.
②	Output Bin	Specifies the paper output bin.
③	Job Type	Specifies the print format and quantity to be printed.
④	Fit to Page	Specifies when printing by converting the paper size of the document to be printed.
⑤	Watermarks	Specifies when implementing stamp printing.
⑥	Overlays	Specifies when implementing overlay printing.
⑦	Advanced	You can make other advanced print setups.
⑧	About	Displays the printer driver version information.
⑨	Default	Restores the tab settings to the default settings.

[Color] tab

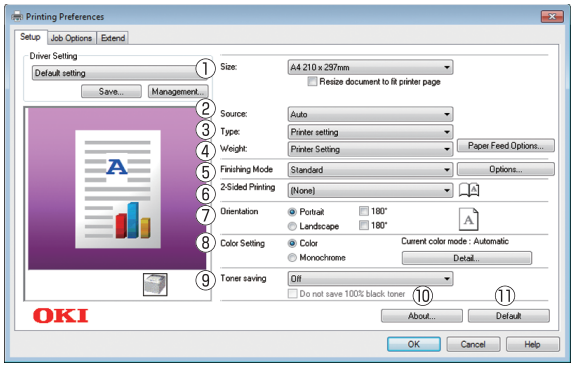


	Item	Explanation
①	Color Mode	Specifies color matching, etc., in color mode.
②	Toner Saving	Specifies the print density when economizing on toner.
③	Spot Color*	Specifies when implementing Spot Color printing.
④	Advanced	You can make other advanced print setups.
⑤	Color Swatch	Starts the color swatch utility.
⑥	Default	Restores the tab settings to the default settings.

*: "Spot Color" is a function for model C941/C942/ES9541/ES9542/Pro9541/Pro9542 only. For details, see the "Separate Volume Spot Color Guide".

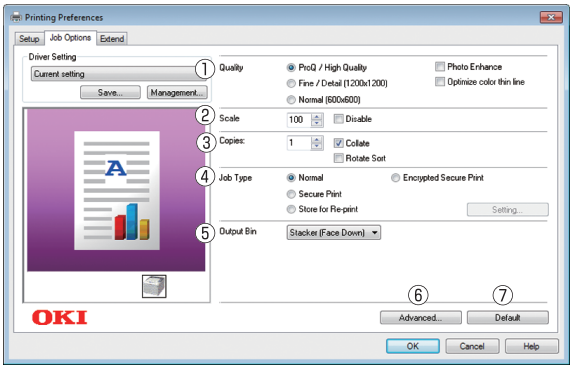
Windows PCL printer driver functions

[Setup] Tab



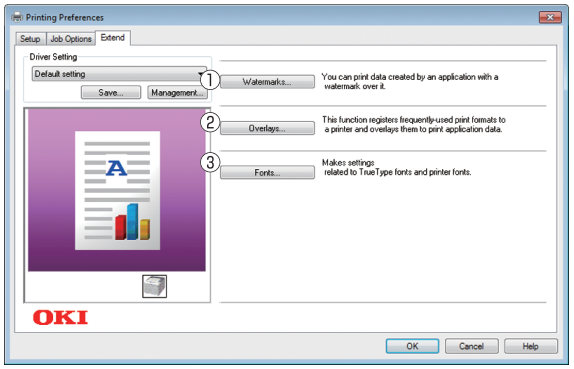
	Item	Explanation
①	Size	Specifies the paper size.
②	Source	Specifies the tray to feed the paper.
③	Type	Specifies the paper type.
④	Weight	Specifies the paper thickness.
⑤	Finishing Mode	Specifies multi-page printing, booklets, and poster printing, etc.
⑥	2-Sided Printing	Specifies to print on both sides of the paper.
⑦	Orientation	Specifies the print orientation.
⑧	Color Setting	Specifies whether to print in color or monochrome.
⑨	Toner saving	Specifies the print density when economizing on toner.
⑩	About	Displays the printer driver version information.
⑪	Default	Restores the tab settings to the default settings.

[Job Options] Tab



	Item	Explanation
①	Quality	Specifies the resolution during printing.
②	Scale	Specifies the rate of enlargement and contraction during printing.
③	Copies	Specifies the quantity to be printed.
④	Job Type	Specifies the print format.
⑤	Output Bin	Specifies the paper output bin.
⑥	Advanced	You can make several other print setups.
⑦	Default	Restores the tab settings to the default settings.

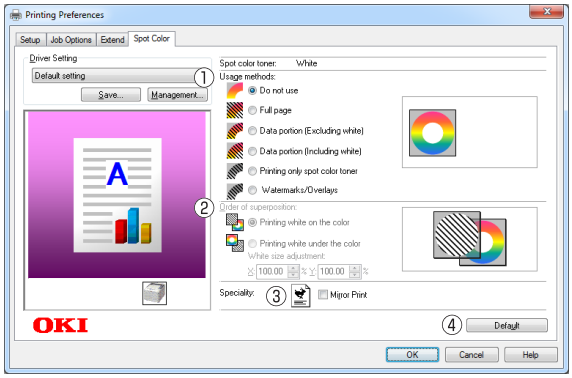
[Extend] Tab



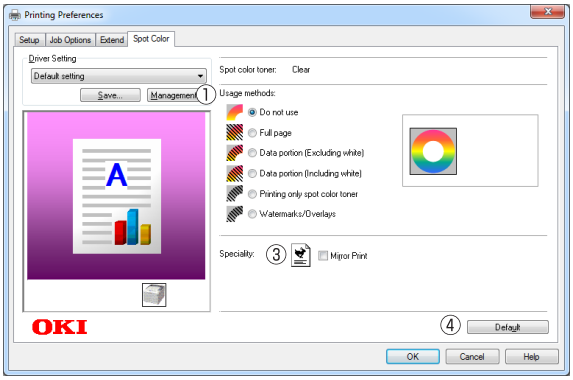
	Item	Explanation
①	Watermarks	Specifies when implementing stamp printing.
②	Overlays	Specifies when implementing overlay printing.
③	Fonts	Sets the TrueType fonts and printer fonts.

[Spot Color] Tab

- In white mode



- In clear mode



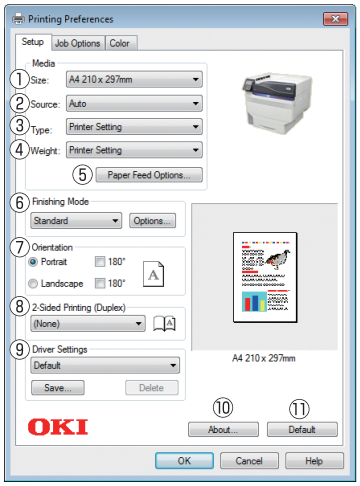
	Item	Explanation
①	Usage methods	Specifies the range of Spot Color printing.
②	Order of superposition	Specify the order of color and white layering and white size adjustment when printing the white under. (white mode only).
③	Mirror Print	Sets when to print by reversing the horizontal orientation so that the document is as if reflected in a mirror.
④	Default	Restores the tab settings to the default settings.

Memo

- "Spot Color" is a function for model C941/C942/ES9541/ES9542/Pro9541/Pro9542 only. For details, see the "Separate Volume Spot Color Guide".

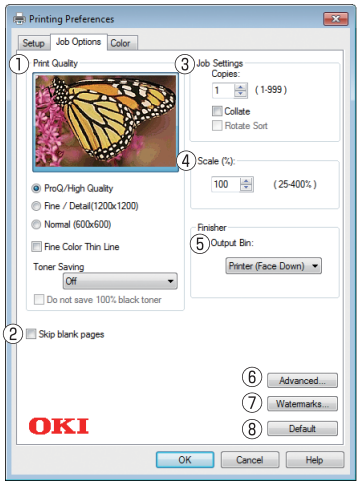
Windows XPS printer driver functions

[Setup] Tab



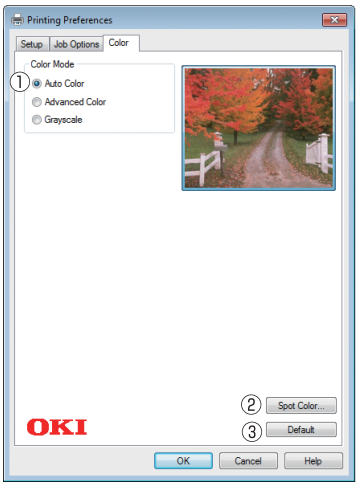
	Item	Explanation
①	Size	Specifies the paper size.
②	Source	Specifies the tray to feed the paper.
③	Type	Specifies the paper type.
④	Weight	Specifies the paper thickness.
⑤	Paper Feed Options	You can set paper feed such as changing the paper size and tray switching, etc.
⑥	Finishing Mode	Specifies multi-page printing, booklets, and poster printing, etc.
⑦	Orientation	Specifies the print orientation.
⑧	2-Sided Printing (Duplex)	Specifies to print on both sides of the paper.
⑨	Driver Settings	Specified when saving the details set in the tab, and when printing using these saved settings.
⑩	About	Displays the printer driver version information.
⑪	Default	Restores the tab settings to the default settings.

[Job Options] tab



	Item	Explanation
①	Print Quality	Specifies the resolution during printing.
②	Skip blank pages	Prints excluding blank pages.
③	Job Settings	Specifies the quantity to be printed, etc.
④	Scale	Specifies the rate of enlargement and contraction during printing.
⑤	Output Bin	Specifies the paper output bin.
⑥	Advanced	You can make other advanced print setups.
⑦	Watermarks	Specifies when implementing stamp printing.
⑧	Default	Restores the tab settings to the default settings.

[Color] tab

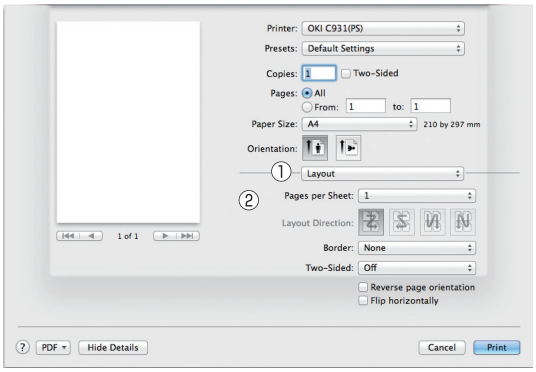


	Item	Explanation
①	Color Mode	Specifies the color print method.
②	Spot Color*	Specifies when implementing Spot Color printing.
③	Default	Restores the tab settings to the default settings.

*: "Spot Color" is a function for model C941/C942/ES9541/ES9542/Pro9541/Pro9542 only. For details, see the "Separate Volume Spot Color Guide".

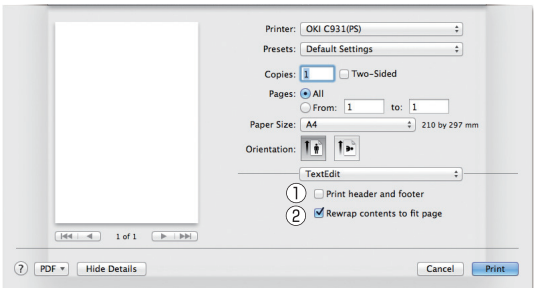
Mac OS X PS printer driver functions

[Print Options] panel



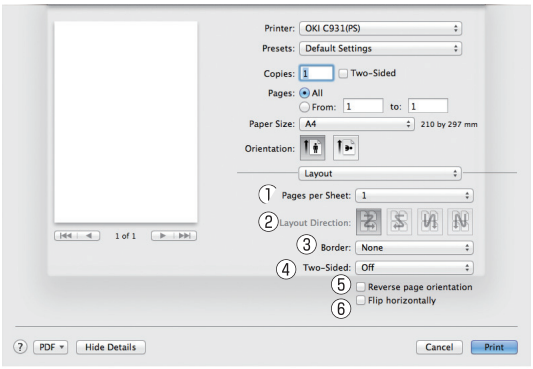
	Item	Explanation
①	Print Options	Sets various functions.
②	Setup Items	Specifies the setup items conforming to the print setup.

[TextEdit] panel



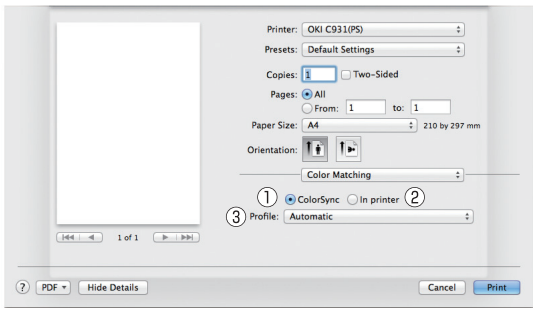
	Item	Explanation
①	Printing header and footer	Enable to print page numbers, dates, and text titles, etc.
②	Rewrap contents to fit page	Enable to print by aligning to the text wrapping method durign editing.

[Layout] Panel



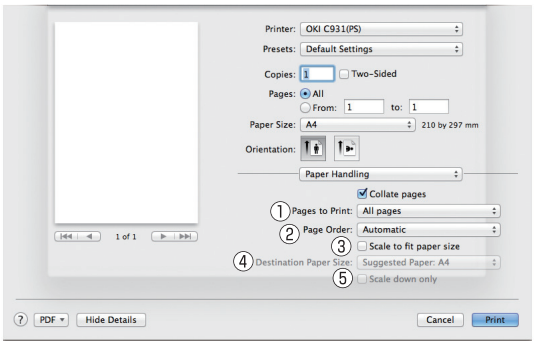
	Item	Explanation
①	Pages per Sheet	Selects the number of pages to be printed on 1 sheet of paper.
②	Layout Direction	Specifies the layout when printing multiple pages on a single sheet of paper.
③	Border	Specifies the boundary line type.
④	Two-Sided	Specifies to use 2-sided printing.
⑤	Reverse page orientation	Enable to print by reversing the page orientation.
⑥	Flip horizontally	Enable to print by reversing left and right.

[Color Matching] panel



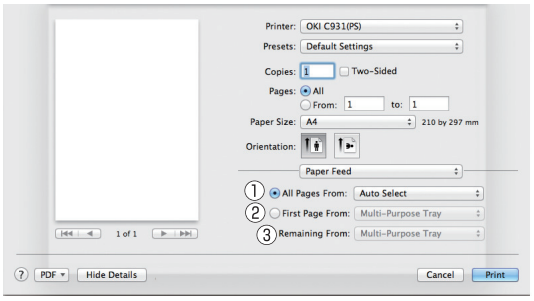
	Item	Explanation
①	ColorSync	Specifies the ColorSync function.
②	In printer	Implements printer color matching.
③	Profile	Specifies the profile.

[Paper Handling] panel



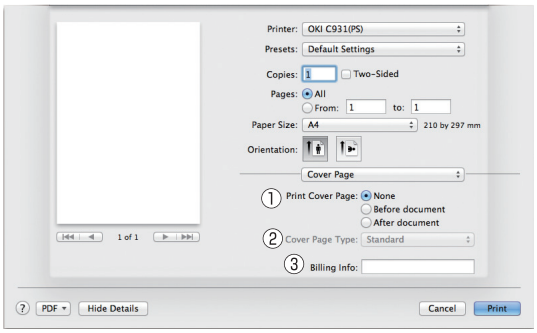
	Item	Explanation
①	Pages to Print	Specifies the pages to be printed.
②	Page Order	Specifies the order of the pages to be printed.
③	Scale to fit Paper size	Prints by aligning to the paper size. Some items may not be printed correctly depending on the setup.
④	Destination Paper Size	Specifies to print by scaling to match the size of the paper to be output.
⑤	Scale down only	Specifies to print by reducing only to match the size of the paper to be output.

[Paper Feed] panel



	Item	Explanation
①	All Pages From	Specifies the tray for the paper feed. The tray is selected automatically when [Auto Select] is specified.
②	First Page From	Select to print from the tray that specifies the header page.
③	Remaining From	Prints from the tray that specifies the remaining pages.

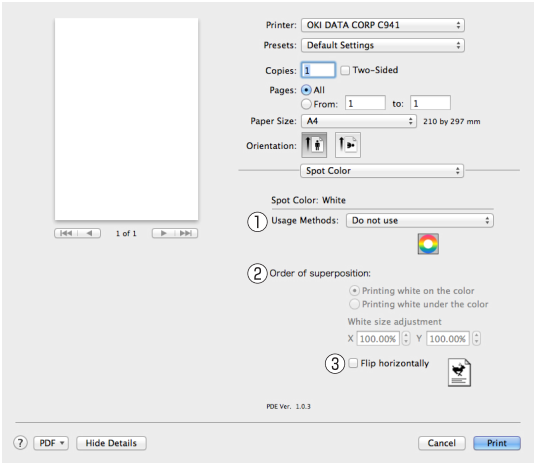
[Cover Page] panel



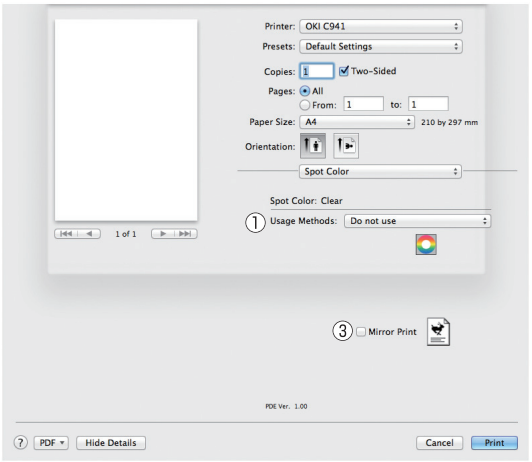
	Item	Explanation
①	Print Cover Page	Specifies cover printing.
②	Cover Page Type	Specifies the text during printing.
③	Billing Info	This function cannot be used.

[Spot Color] panel

- In white mode



- In clear mode

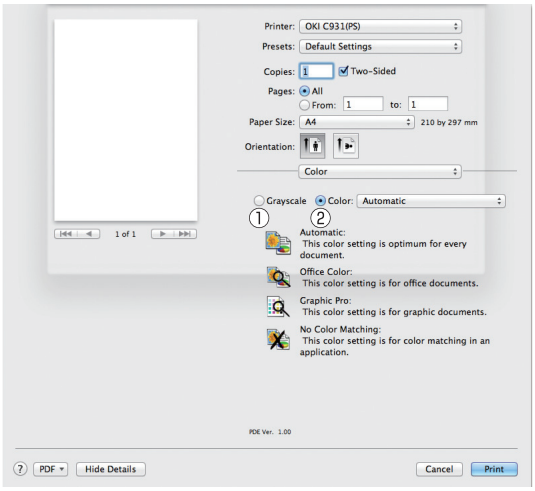


	Item	Explanation
①	Usage Methods	Specifies the range of Spot Color printing.
②	Order of superposition	Specify the order of color and white layering and white size adjustment when printing the white under. (white mode only).
③	Mirror Print	Sets when to print by reversing the horizontal orientation so that the document is as if reflected in a mirror.

Memo

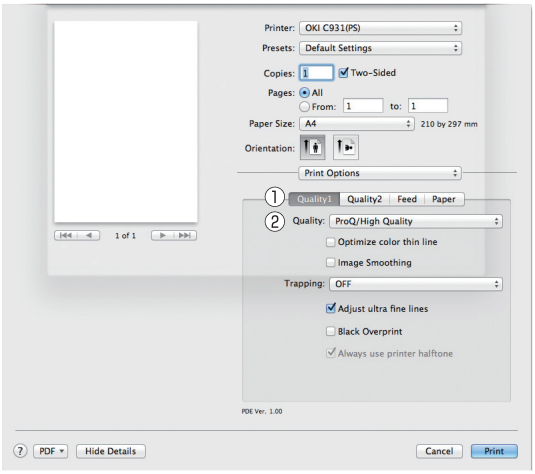
- "Spot Color" is a function for model C941/C942/ES9541/ES9542/Pro9541/Pro9542 only. For details, see the "Separate Volume Spot Color Guide".

[Color] panel



	Item	Explanation
①	Grayscale	Specifies to use monochrome printing.
②	Color	Specifies alignment to color mode when printing in color.

[Print Options] panel



	Item	Explanation
①	Print Options	Specifies alignment to the items that have been set such as print quality, paper type, etc.
②	Items Setup	Specifies the setup items conforming to the print setup tab.

Memo

- This section uses [MemoPad] for its Windows explanations, and [TextEditor] for its Mac OS X explanations. Descriptions may differ depending on the applications and printer drivers used.

Reference

- For detailed explanations of the printer driver setup items, see the printer driver "Online Help".

Printing on various papers

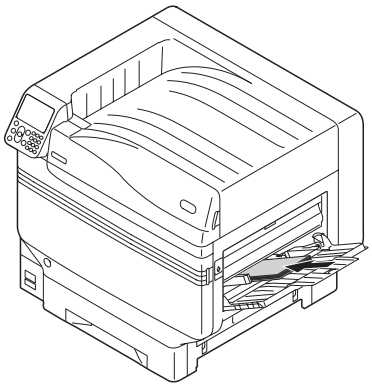
Printing on envelopes

Memo

- For the types of envelopes that can be used, see "Usable Paper Types" in "Basic".
- For the Multi-Purpose Tray preparations, see "Setting paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray" in "Basic".
- You can print by manually feeding one page at a time from the Multi-Purpose Tray. For details, see "Printing single sheets manually" (P.87).

Note

- 2-sided printing and printing from paper trays are disabled for envelopes.
- Print speed will be slowed.

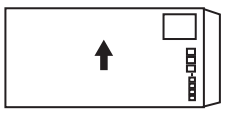


- Setting the paper orientation

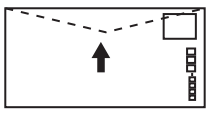
  Set the print surface face-up.

  Set as a diagram to print the addressee.

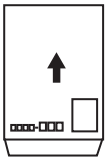
(Kakugata 3 gou/ 6 gou/8 gou Nagagata 3 gou/ 4 gou/40 gou)



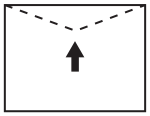
(Yougata 0 gou/2 gou/4 gou Yougata Long 3 gou)



(Kakugata 2 gou)



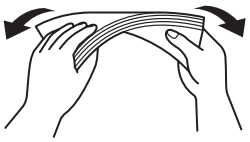
Com-6 3/4, Com-9, Com-10 DL, C4, C5 Monarch, A2 Envelope, A6 Envelope, A7 Envelope



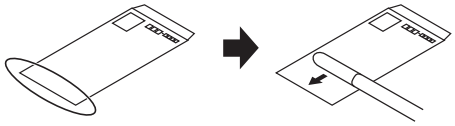
Before setting

1 Check that the envelope is not bent or swollen.

2 If the envelope is bent, hold the diagonally-opposite edges of the envelope and slowly bend to straighten the envelope.



3 If there is a difference in the thickness on the left and right when the envelopes are stacked, use a rod to make the thickness universal.

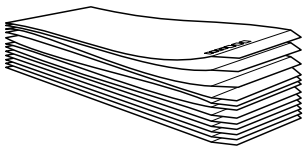


- Cross-sectional diagram of an envelope



Memo

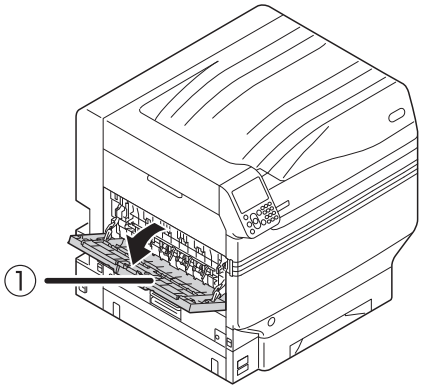
- If the front edge of the envelope is bent or swollen, extend the envelope out flat as shown in the diagram below.



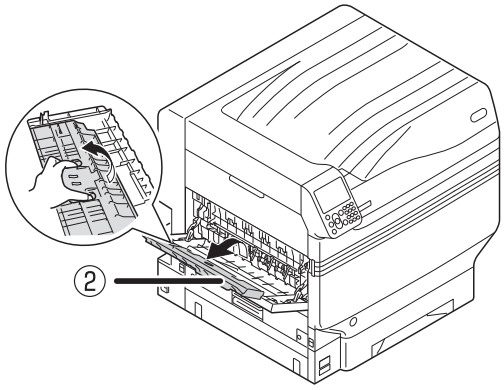
Printing on standard size envelopes

1 Setting envelopes in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

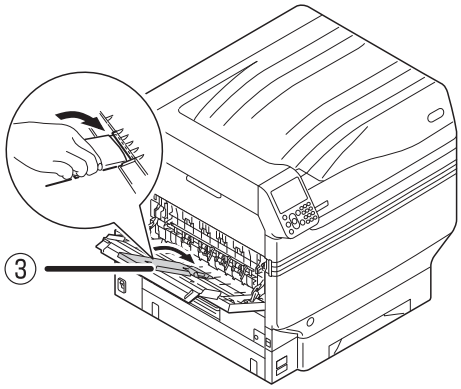
2 Open the face-up stacker (①) on the left side of the machine.



3 Open the paper supporter (②) as shown in the following figure.



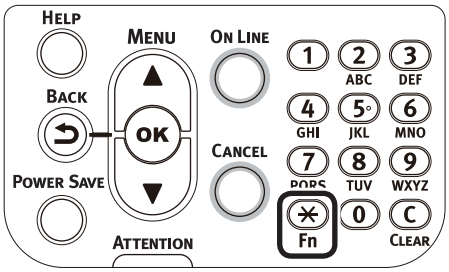
4 Rotate the auxiliary supporter (③) in the arrow direction to the lock position.



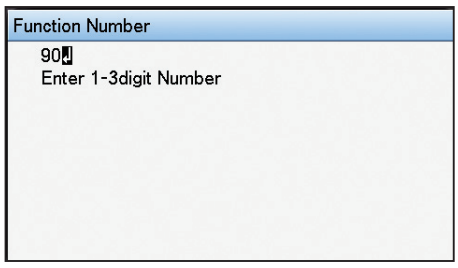
5 Set the paper size using the control panel.

(1) Press the [Fn] key.

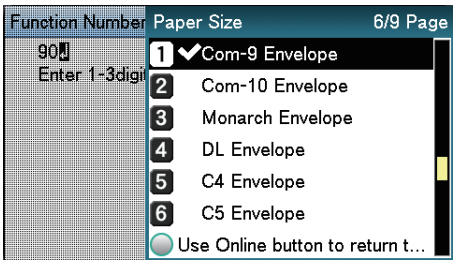
The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



(2) Press [9], [0], and press the [OK] button.

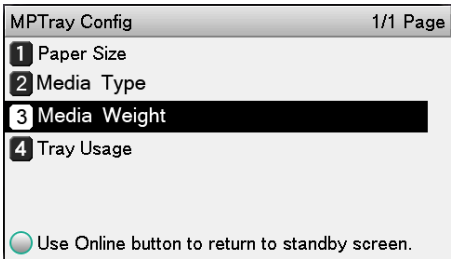


(3) Select the envelope type, and press the [OK] button.

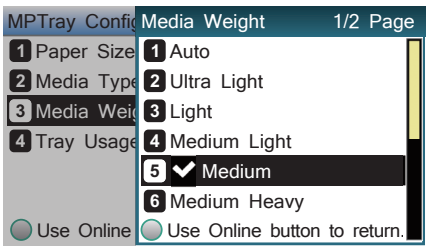


(4) Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the selected envelope, and press the [BACK] button.

(5) Select [Media Weight], and press the [OK] button.



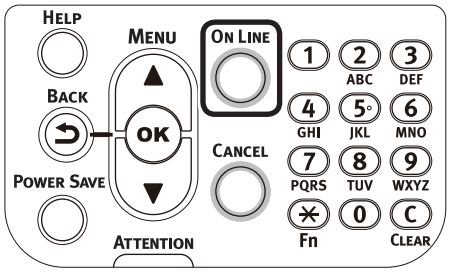
(6) Select a suitable media weight, and press the [OK] button. Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the selected media weight.

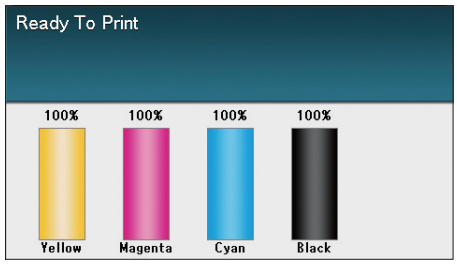


Memo

- If you want to print on a thin envelope of 24 lb, the [Light] setting may improve the printing result.

(7) Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.





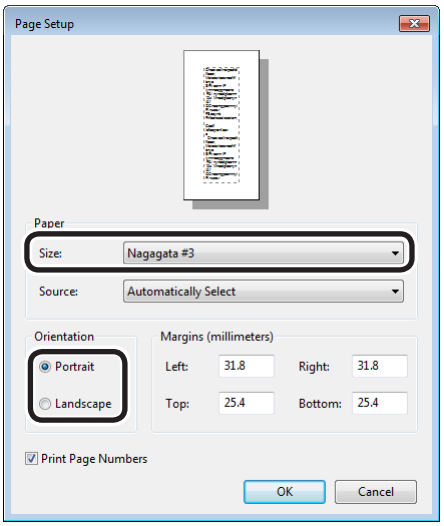
6 Open the file to be printed.

7 Select [Paper Size], [Paper Source], and [Output Bin] in the printer drivers to print.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

2 Select [Nagagata∗ (where ∗ is the envelope type)] in [Size], and [Portrait] or [Landscape] in [Orientation], and click [OK].

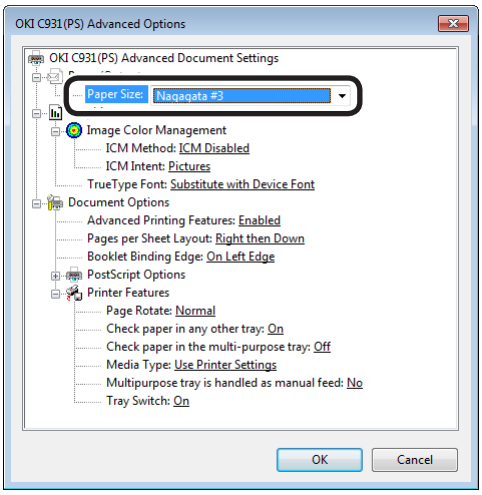


3 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

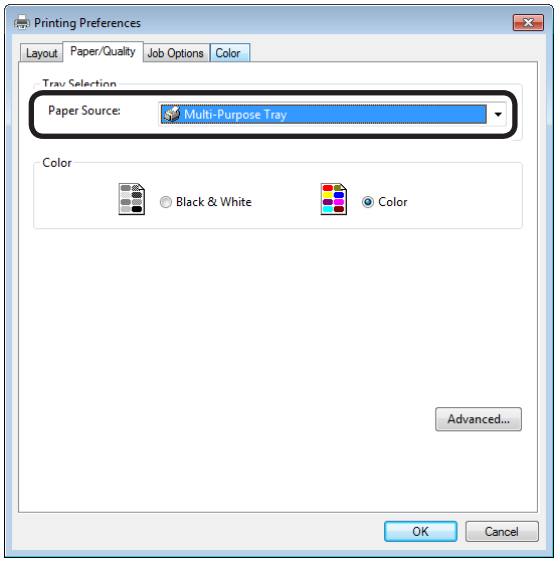
4 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

5 Click [Advanced] in the [Paper/Quality] tab.

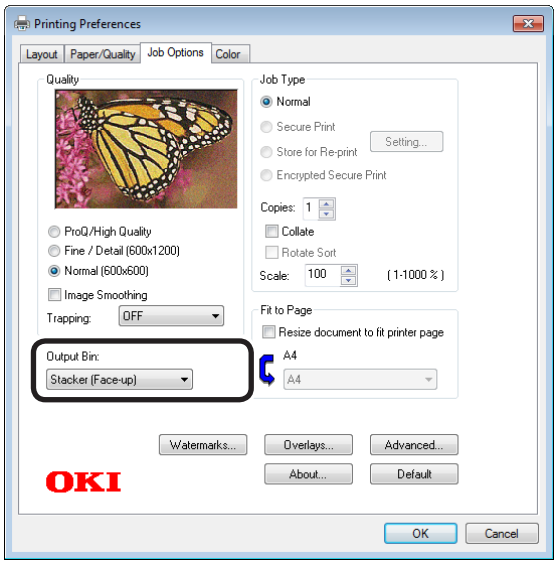
6 Select the envelope type in [Paper Size] in the "Advanced Options" screen, and click [OK].



7 Select [Multi-Purpose Tray] in [Paper Source].



8 Select [Stacker (Face-up)] in [Output Bin] in the [Job Options] tab, and click [OK].

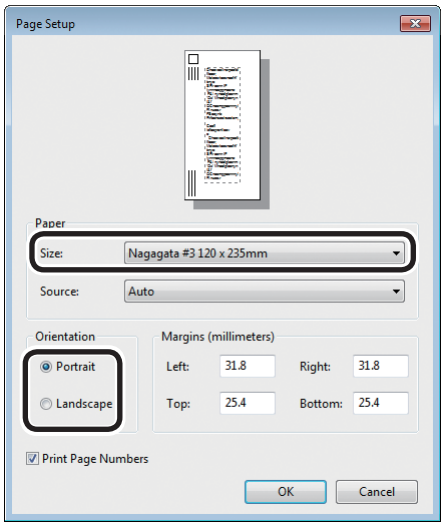


9 Click [Print] in the "Print" screen to print.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

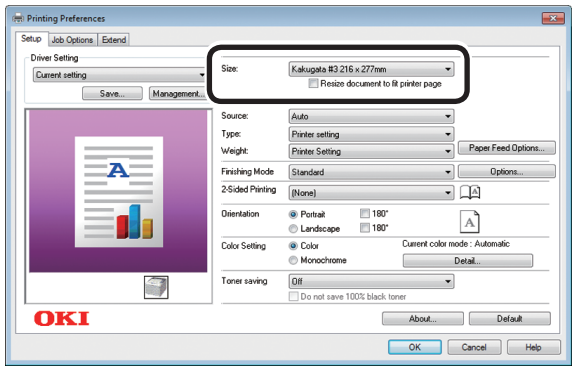
2 Select [Nagagata∗ (where ∗ is the envelope type)] in [Size], and [Portrait] or [Landscape] in [Orientation], and click [OK].



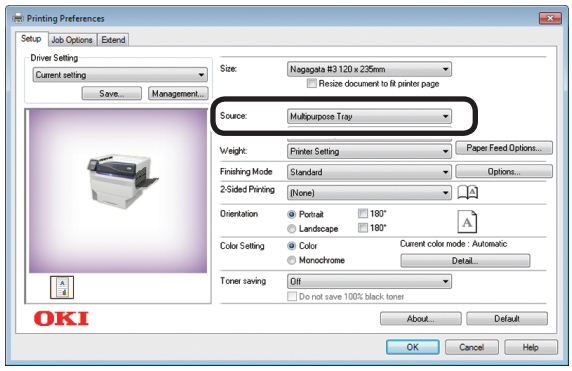
3 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

4 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

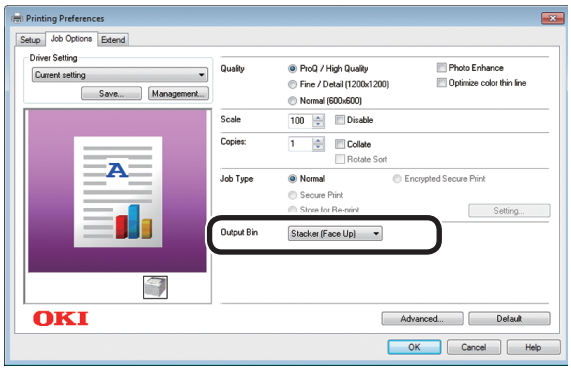
5 Select the envelope type in [Size] in the [Setup] tab.



6 Select [Multipurpose Tray] in [Source].



7 Select [Stacker (Face UP)] in [Output Bin] in the [Job Options] tab, and click [OK].

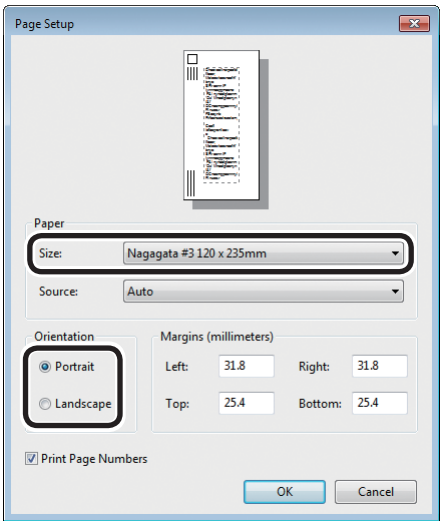


8 Click either [OK] or [Print] in the "Print" screen to print.

■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

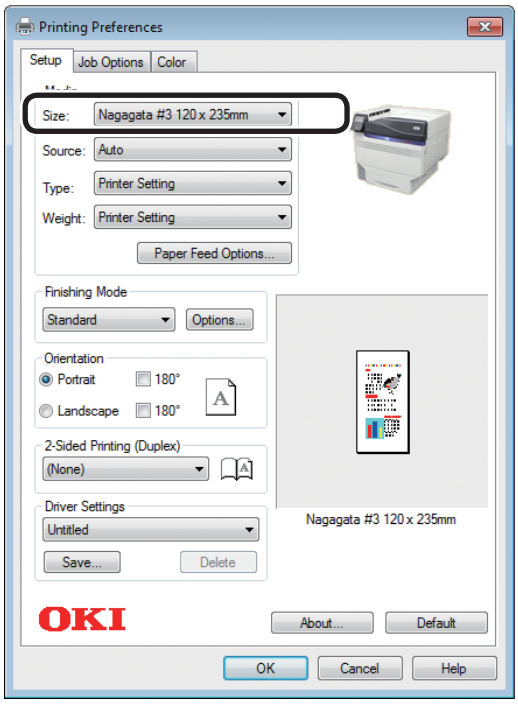
2 Select [Nagagata∗ (where ∗ is the envelope type)] in [Size], and [Portrait] or [Landscape] in [Orientation], and click [OK].



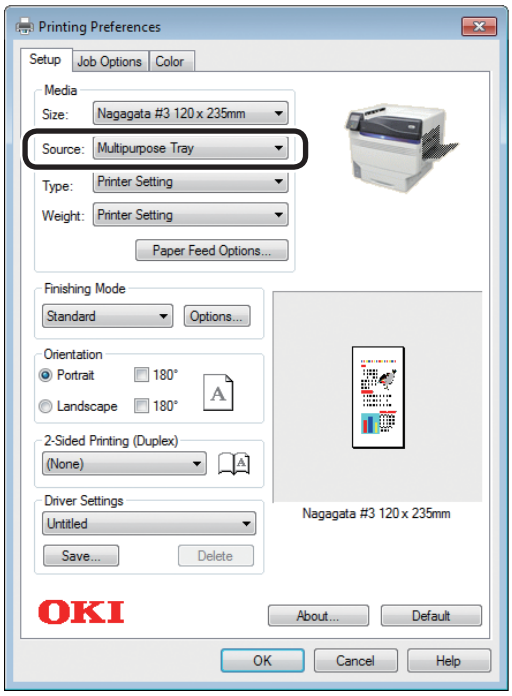
3 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

4 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

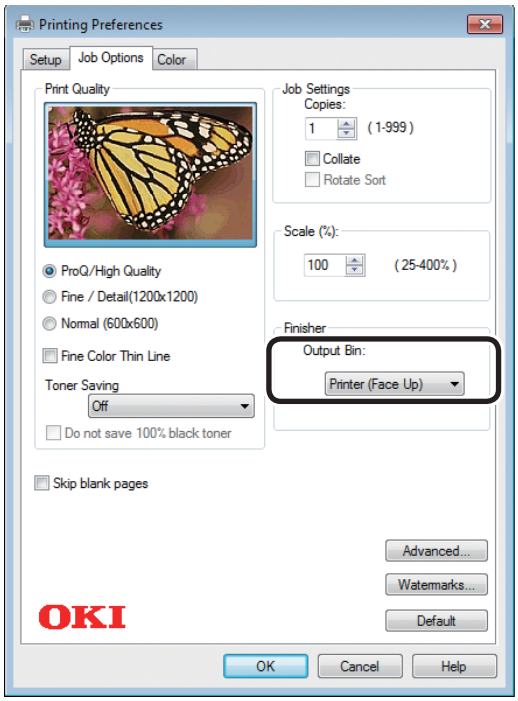
5 Select the envelope type in [Size] in the [Setup] tab.



6 Select [Multipurpose Tray] in [Source].



7 Select [Printer (Face Up)] in [Output Bin] in the [Job Options] tab, and click [OK].

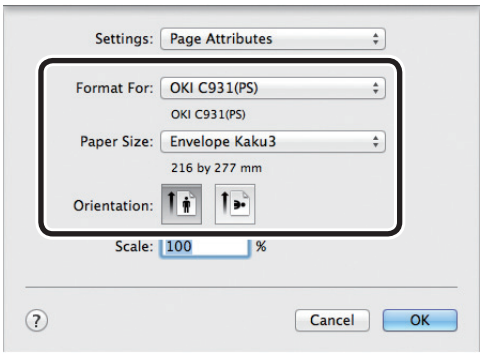


8 Click [Print] in the "Print" screen to print.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

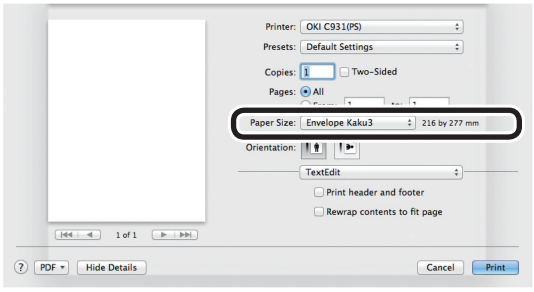
2 Select the printer model name in [Format For], and select [Envelope∗ (where ∗ is the envelope type)] in [Paper Size], and a suitable orientation in [Orientation], and click [OK].



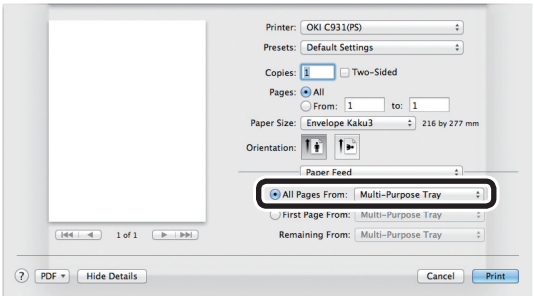
3 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

4 Check that the printer model name is selected in [Printer].

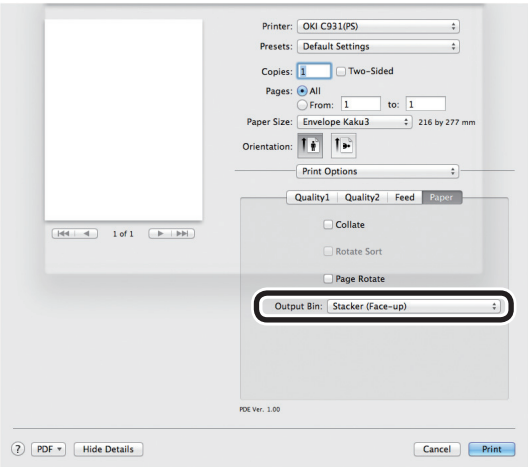
5 Select the envelope type in [Paper Size].



6 Select [Multi-Purpose Tray] in [Paper Feed].



7 Click the [Paper] button in the [Print Options] panel, and select [Stacker (Face-up)] from [Output Bin].



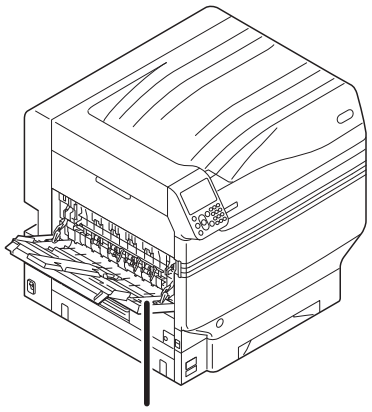
8 Click [Print] to print.

Printing on irregular size envelopes

1 Setting envelopes in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

2 Open the face-up stacker.

Set the print surface face-up to output.

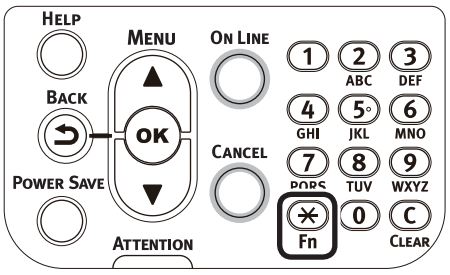


Face-up stacker

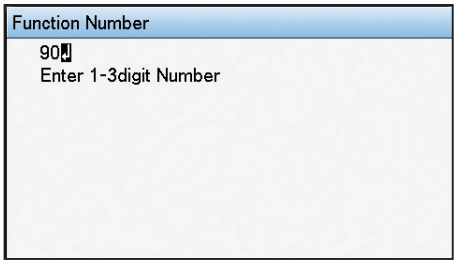
3 Set the paper size, paper type, and paper weight using the control panel.

(1) Press the [Fn] key.

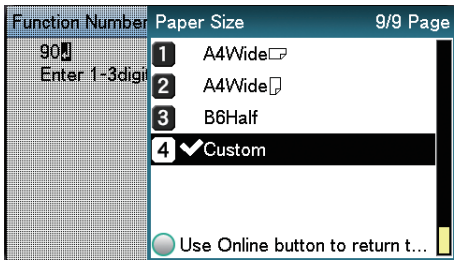
The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



(2) Press [9], [0], and press the [OK] button.

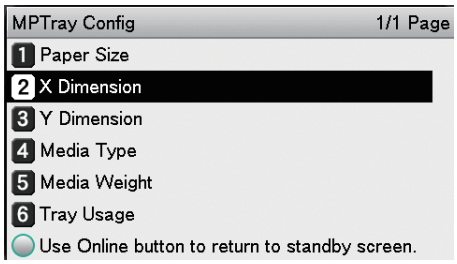


(3) Select [Custom], and press the [OK] button.

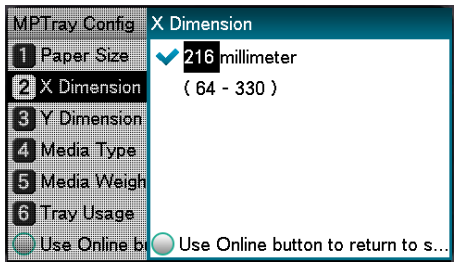


(4) Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of [Custom], and press the [BACK] button.

(5) Select [X Dimension], and press the [OK] button.

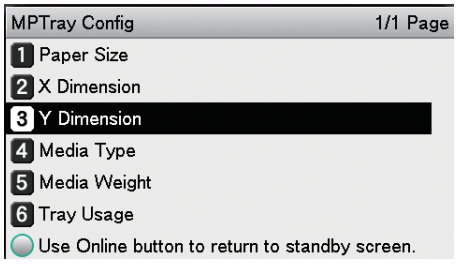


(6) Press the scroll buttons ▲ or ▼ to select a suitable size, and then press the [OK] button.

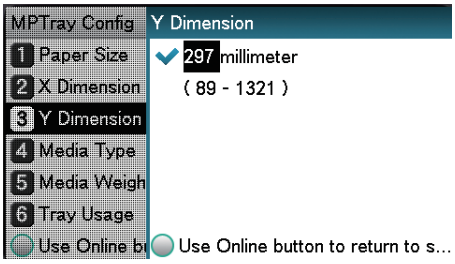


(7) Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the selected size, and press the [BACK] button.

(8) Select [Y Dimension], and press the [OK] button.

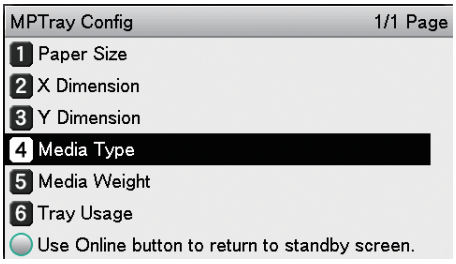


(9) Press the scroll buttons ▲ or ▼ to select a suitable size, and then press the [OK] button.

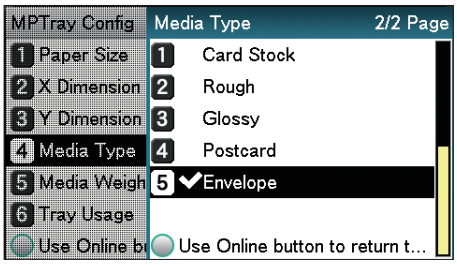


(10) Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the selected size, and press the [BACK] button.

(11) Select [Media Type], and press the [OK] button.

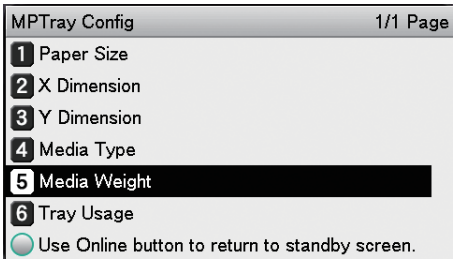


(12) Select [Envelope], and press the [OK] button.

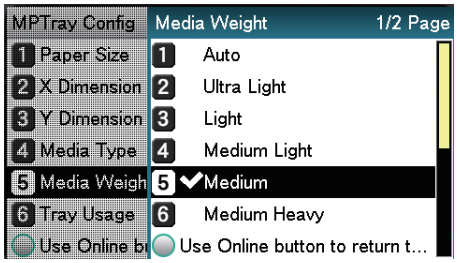


(13) Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of [Envelope], and press the [BACK] button.

(14) Select [Media Weight], and press the [OK] button.



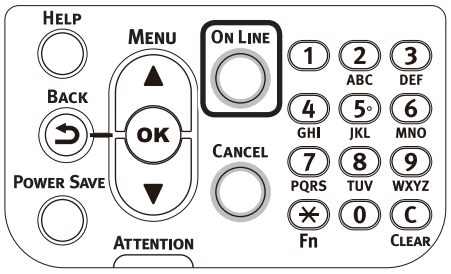
(15) Select a suitable paper weight, and press the [OK] button. Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the selected paper weight.

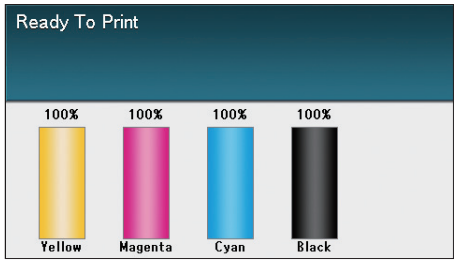


Memo

- If you want to print on a thin envelope of 24 lb, the [Light] setting may improve the printing result.

(16) Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.





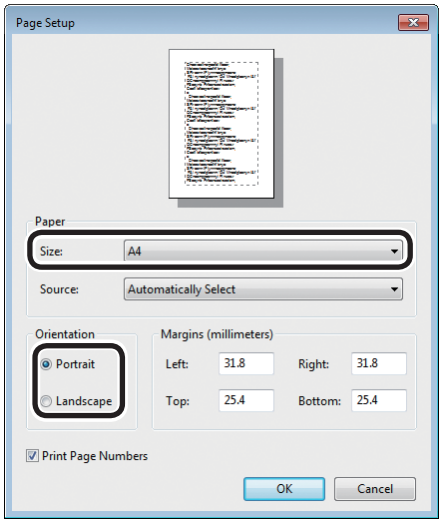
4 Open the file to be printed.

5 Select [Paper Size], [Paper Source], and [Output Bin] in the printer drivers to print.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

2 Select the paper size in [Size] and a suitable orientation in [Orientation], and click [OK].

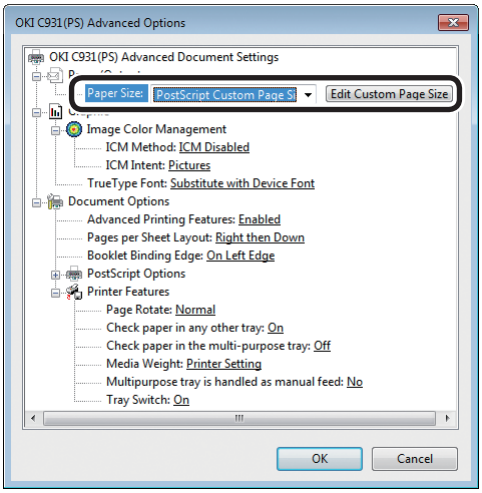


3 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

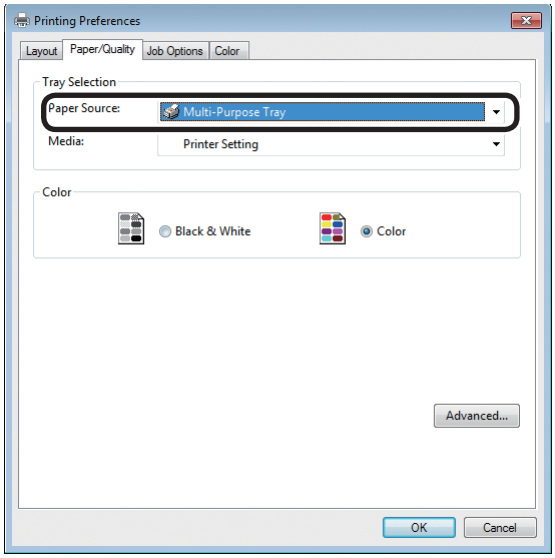
4 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

5 Click [Advanced] in the [Paper/Quality] tab.

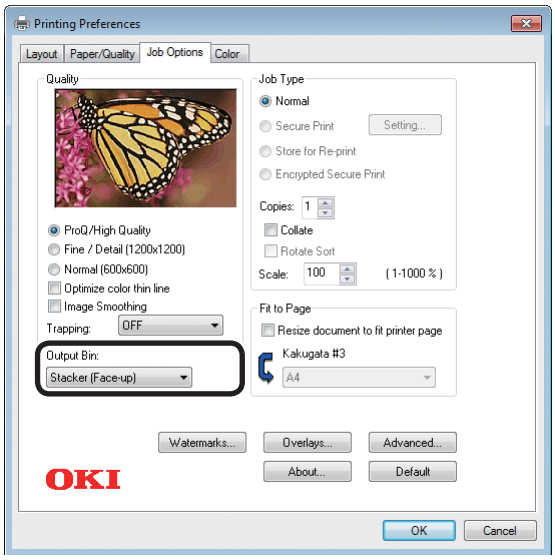
6 Select the paper size in [Paper Size] in the "Advanced Options" screen.



7 Select [Multi-Purpose Tray] in [Paper Source].



8 Select [Stacker (Face-up)] in [Output Bin] in the [Job Options] tab, and click [OK].

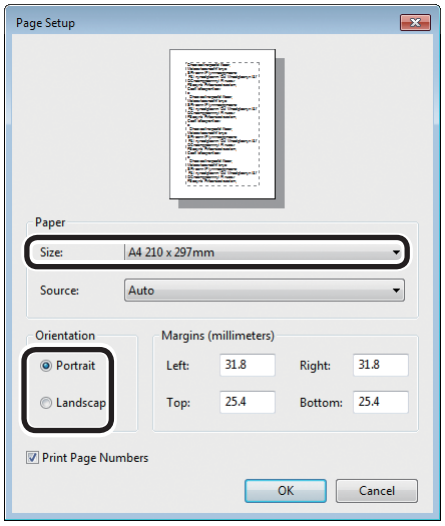


9 Click [Print] in the "Print" screen to print.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

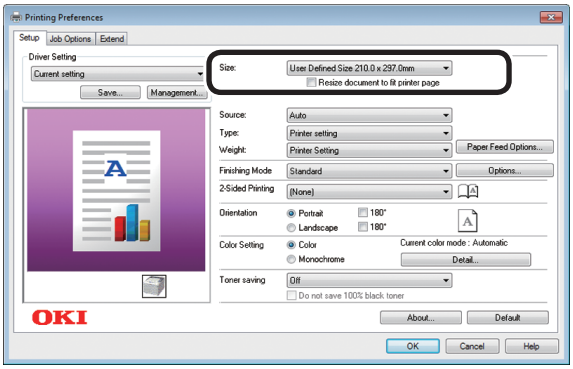
2 Select the paper size in [Size] and a suitable orientation in [Orientation], and click [OK].



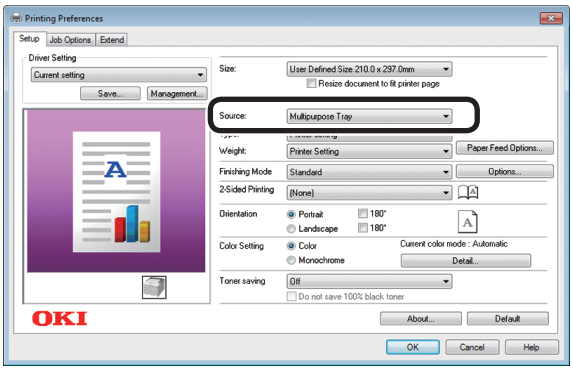
3 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

4 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

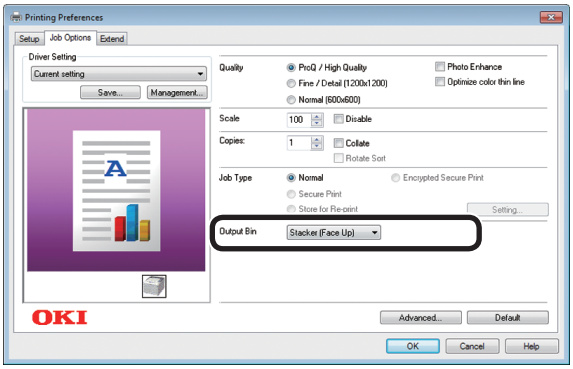
5 Select the paper size in [Size] in the [Setup] tab.



6 Select [Multipurpose Tray] in [Source].



7 Select [Stacker (Face Up)] in [Output Bin] in the [Job Options] tab.



8 Click [Print] in the "Print" screen to print.

■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

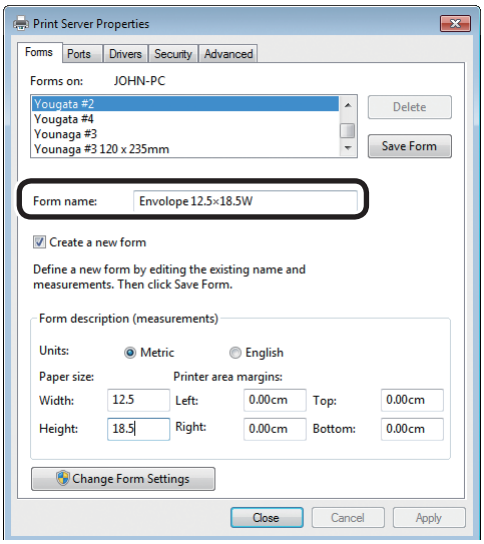
1 Register the paper name and paper size for irregular size envelopes.

(1) Click [Start], and then select [Devices and Printers].

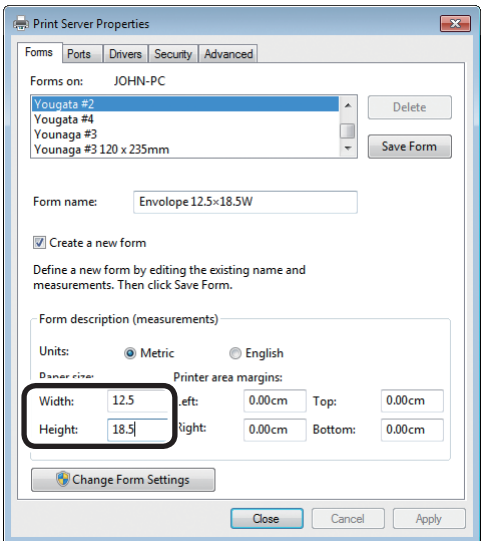
(2) Select [OKI (product name)(XPS)], and select [Print Server Properties] in the tool bar.

(3) Enable the [Create a new form] check box in the [Forms] tab.

(4) Enter the name of the irregular size envelope in [Form name].



(5) Enter the [Width] and [Height] values.



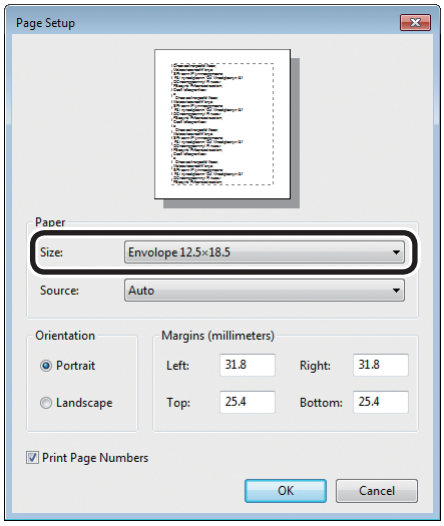
(6) Click [Save Form].

(7) Click [Close].

2 Select the [Size], [Source], and [Output Bin] for the registered irregular size envelope to print.

(1) Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

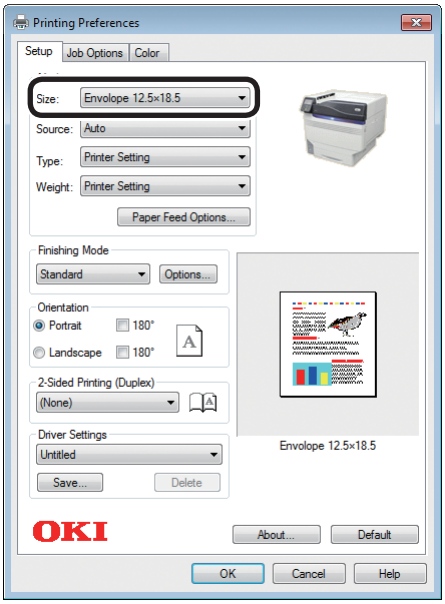
(2) Select the name of the envelope registered in [Size] and a suitable orientation in [Orientation], and click [OK].



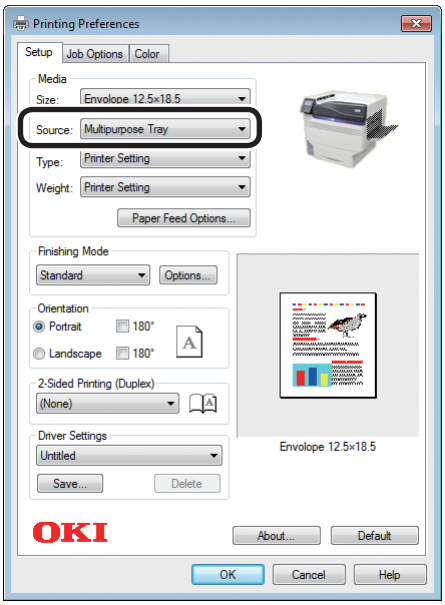
(3) Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

(4) Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

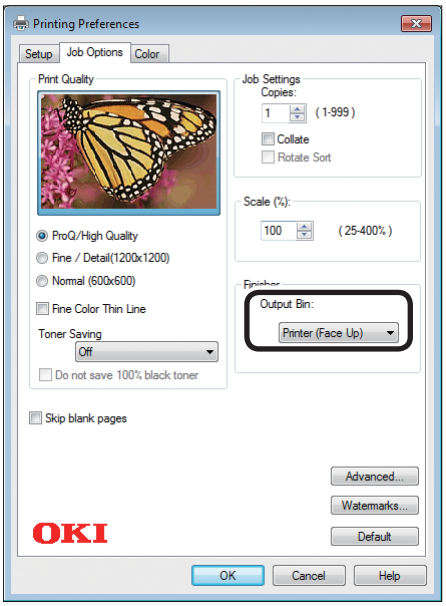
(5) Select the envelope name in [Size] in the [Setup] tab.



(6) Select [Multipurpose Tray] in [Source].



(7) Select [Printer (Face Up)] in [Output Bin] in the [Job Options] tab, and click [OK].

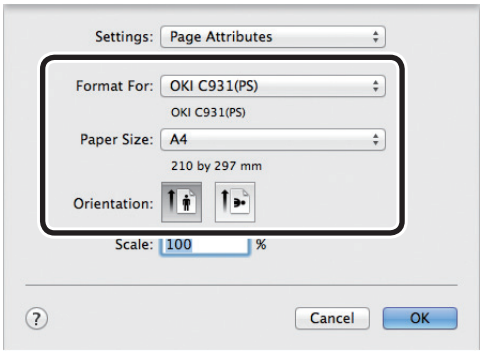


(8) Click [Print] in the "Print" screen to print.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

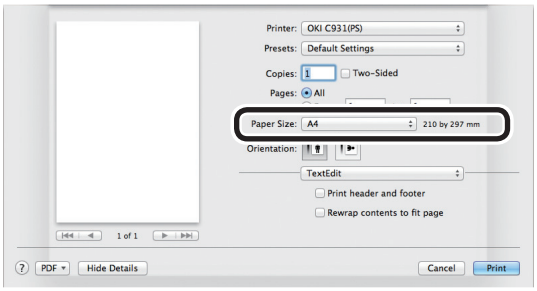
2 Select the printer model name in [Format For], and select the paper size in [Paper Size], and a suitable orientation in [Orientation], and click [OK].



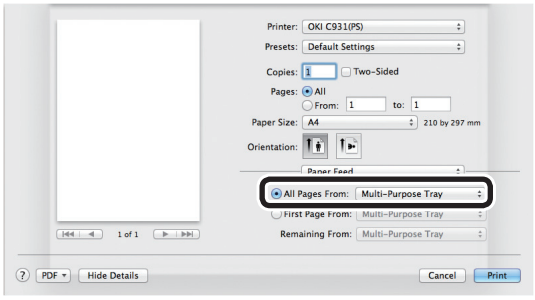
3 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

4 Check that the printer model name is selected in [Printer].

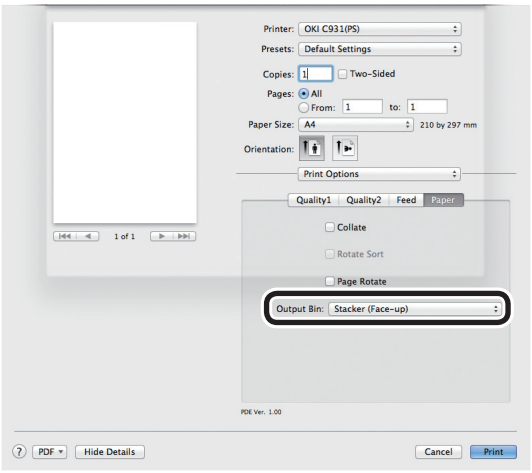
5 Select the paper size in [Paper Size].



6 Select [Multi-Purpose Tray] in [Paper Feed].



7 Click the [Paper] button in the [Print Options] panel, and select [Stacker (Face-up)] from [Output Bin].



8 Click [Print] to print.

Printing on glossy paper

Memo

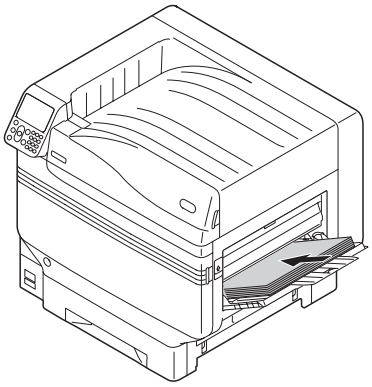
- For the Multi-Purpose Tray preparations, see "Setting paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray" in "Basic".

1 Set the glossy paper.

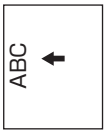
Memo

- You can print by manually feeding one page at a time from the Multi-Purpose Tray. For details, see "Printing single sheets manually" (P.87).

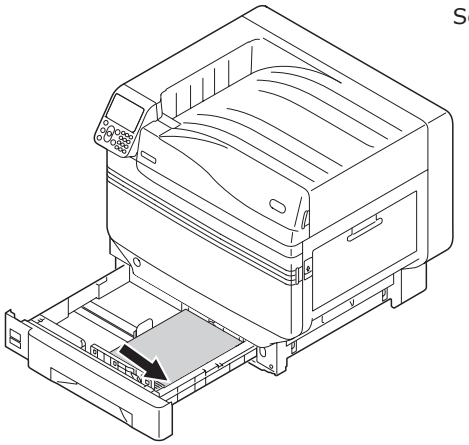
Setting in the Multi-Purpose Tray



Setting the paper orientation



Setting in the paper tray



Setting the paper orientation

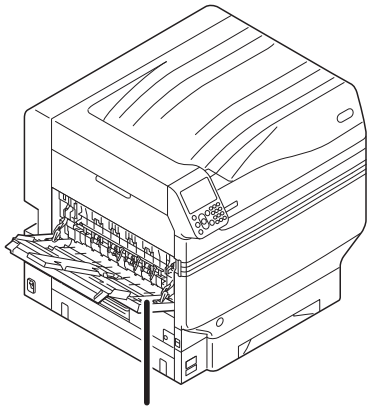


2 If outputting to the face-up stacker, open the face-up stacker.

Set the print surface face-up to output.

Memo

- You can output to the face-down stacker.

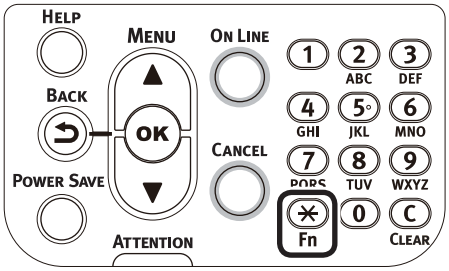


Face-up stacker

3 Set the paper size and paper type using the control panel.

(1) Press the [Fn] key.

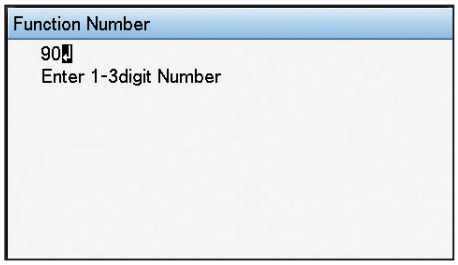
The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



(2) Enter a number according to the paper to be used.

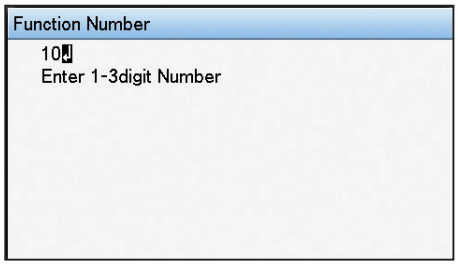
- Using the Multi-Purpose Tray

  Press [9], [0], and press the [OK] button.

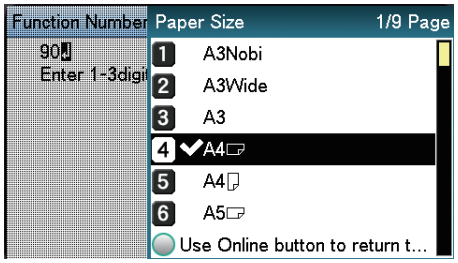


- Using tray 1

  Press [1], [0], and press the [OK] button.

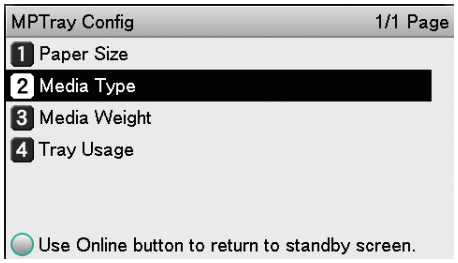


(3) Select the paper size, and press the [OK] button.

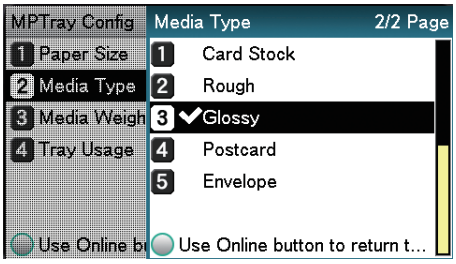


(4) Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the selected paper size, and press the [BACK] button.

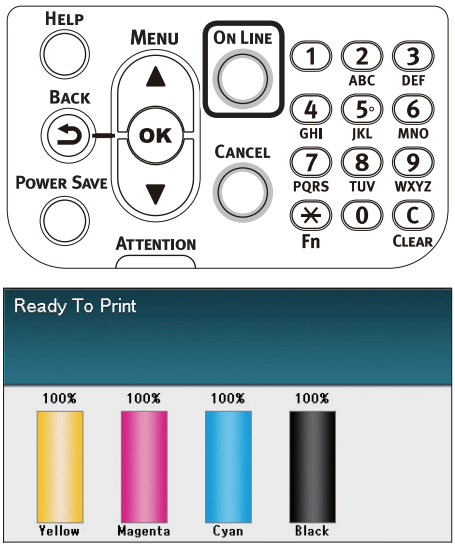
(5) Select [Media Type], and press the [OK] button.



(6) Select [Glossy], and press the [OK] button. Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of [Glossy].



(7) Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.



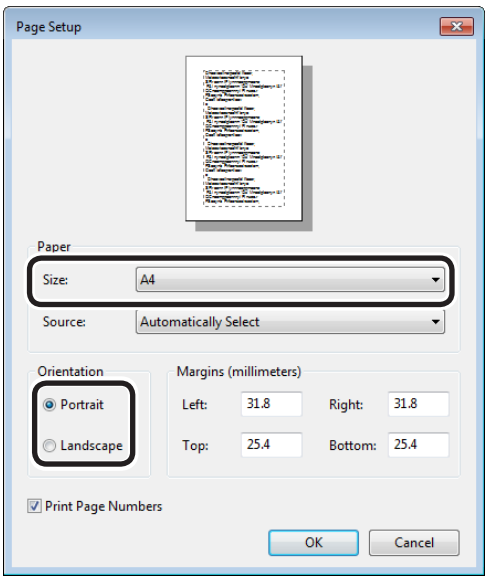
4 Open the file to be printed.

5 Select [Size], [Source], and [Output Bin] in the printer drivers to print.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

2 Select the paper size in [Size] and a suitable orientation in [Orientation], and click [OK].

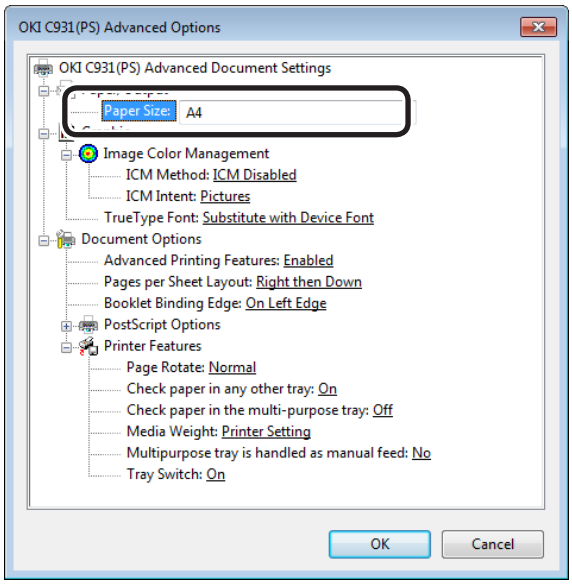


3 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

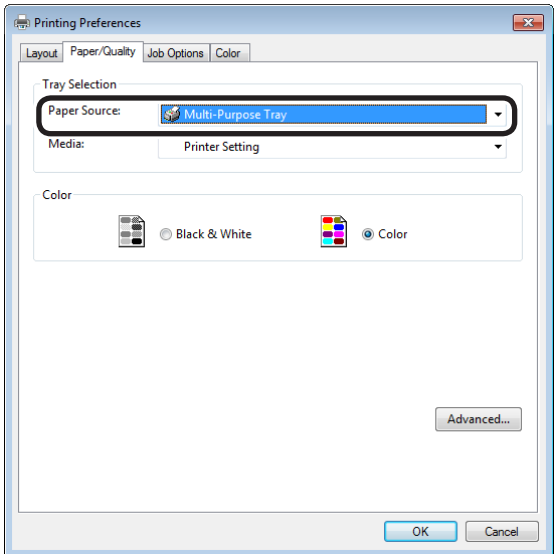
4 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

5 Click [Advanced] in the [Paper/Quality] tab.

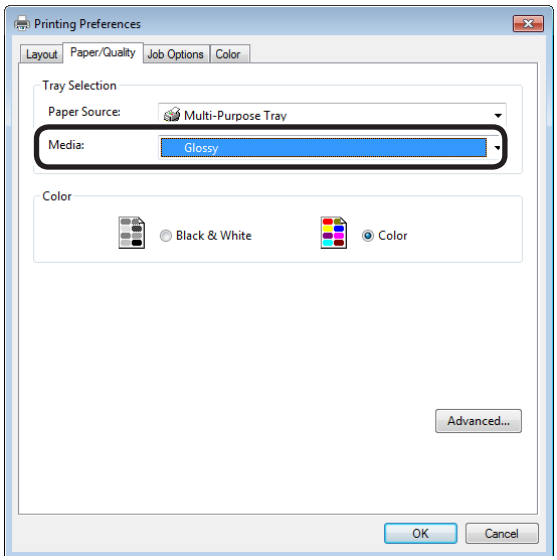
6 Select the paper size in [Paper Size] in the "Advanced Options" screen.



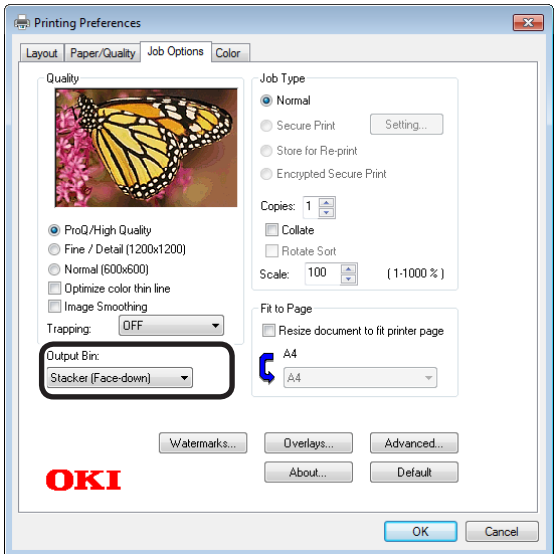
7 Select the paper tray in [Paper Source].



8 Select [Glossy] in [Media].



9 Select the output bin using [Output Bin] in the [Job Options] tab, and click [OK].

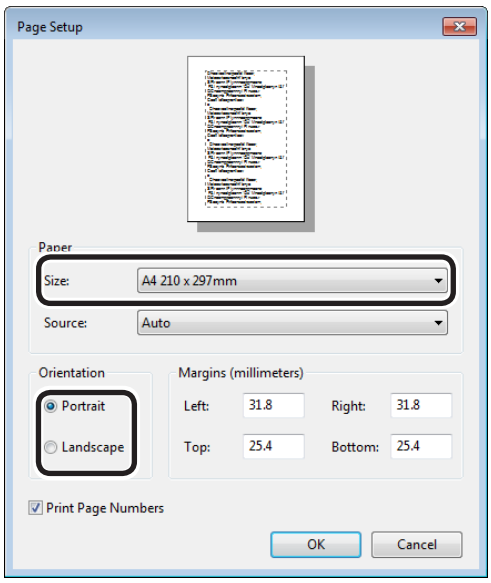


10 Click [Print] in the "Print" screen to print.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

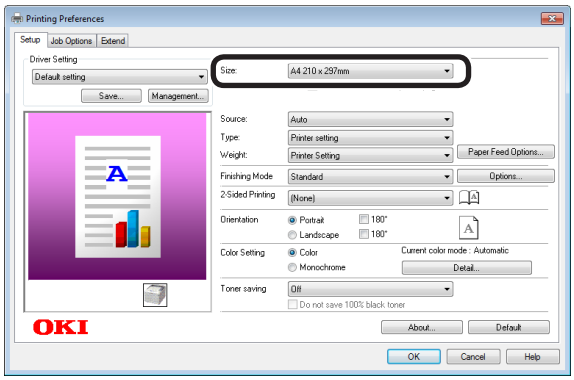
2 Select the paper size in [Size] and a suitable orientation in [Orientation], and click [OK].



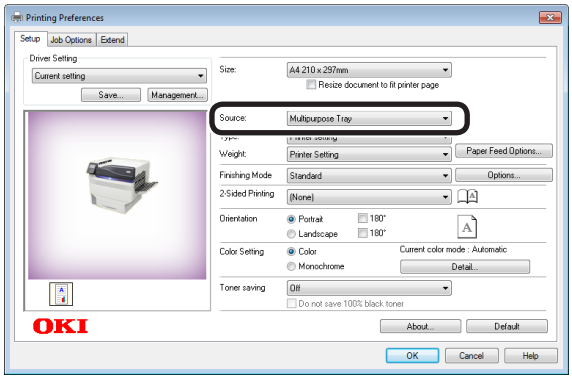
3 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

4 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

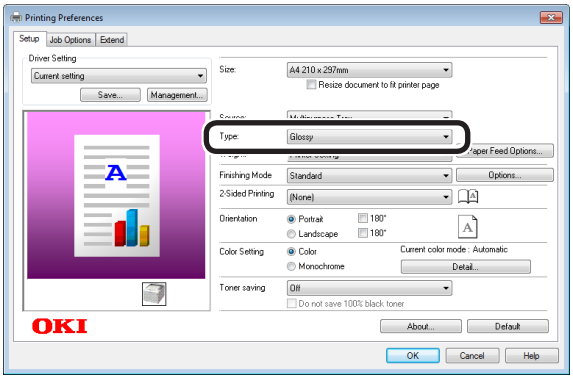
5 Select the paper size in [Size] in the [Setup] tab.



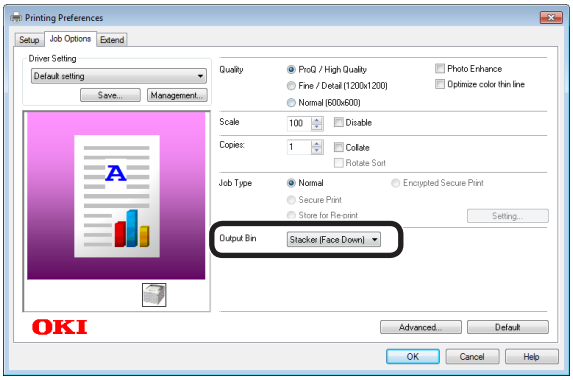
6 Select the paper tray in [Source].



7 Select [Glossy] in [Type].



8 Select the output bin using [Output Bin] in the [Job Options] tab, and click [OK].

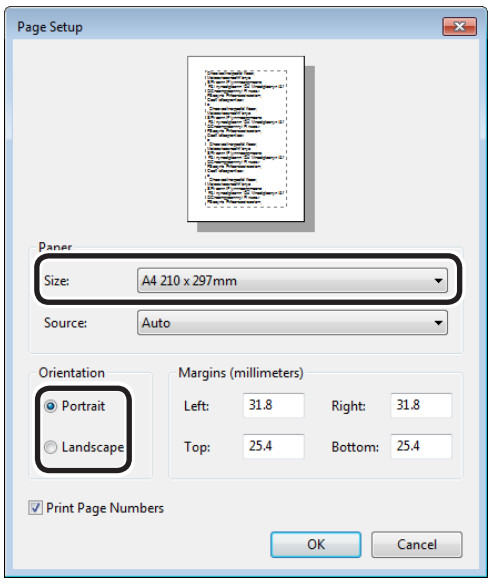


9 Click [Print] in the "Print" screen to print.

■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

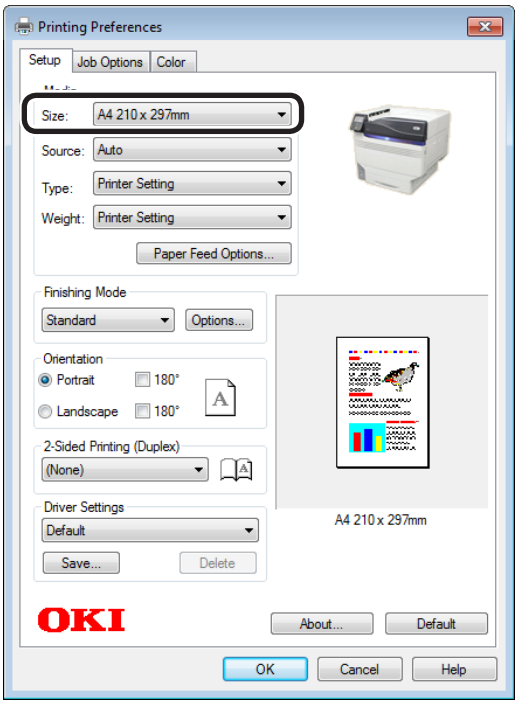
2 Select the paper size in [Size] and a suitable orientation in [Orientation], and click [OK].



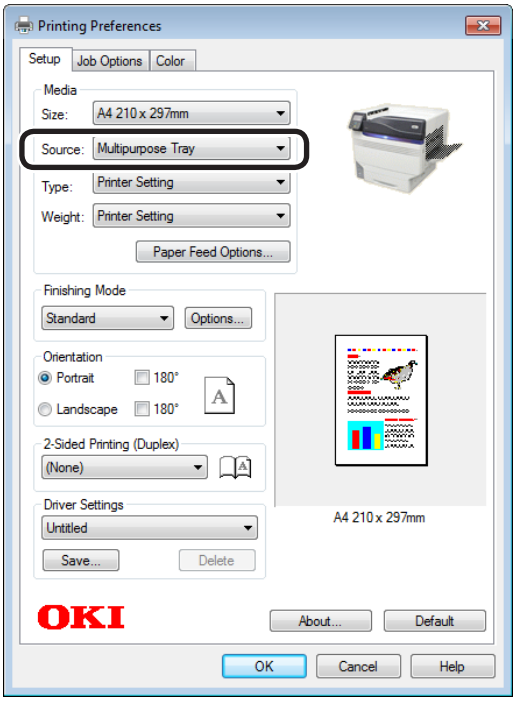
3 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

4 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

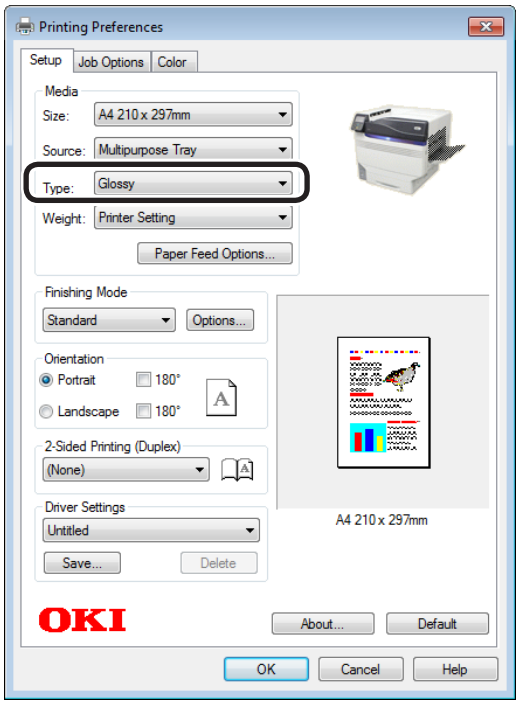
5 Select the paper size in [Size] in the [Setup] tab.



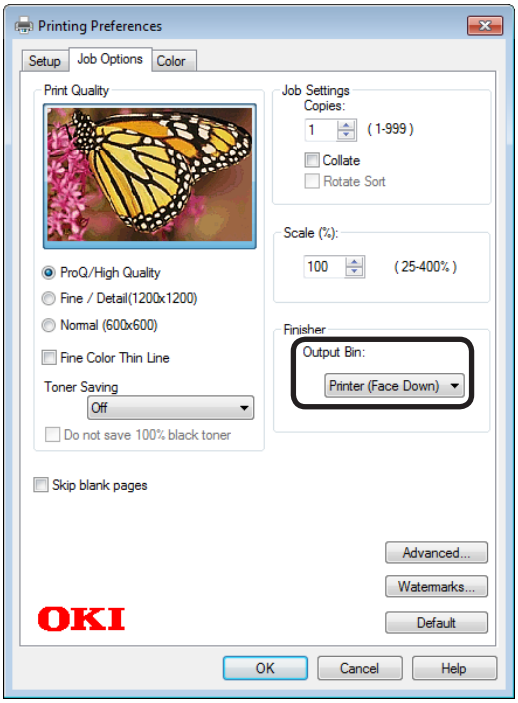
6 Select the paper tray in [Source].



7 Select [Glossy] in [Type].



8 Select the output bin using [Output Bin] in the [Job Options] tab, and click [OK].

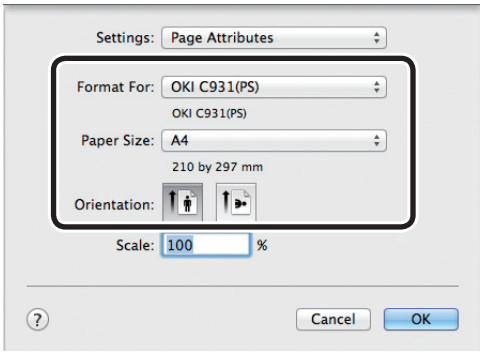


9 Click [Print] in the "Print" screen to print.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

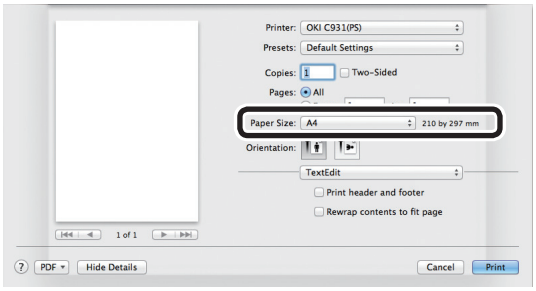
2 Select the printer model name in [Format For], and select the paper size in [Paper Size], and a suitable orientation in [Orientation], and click [OK].



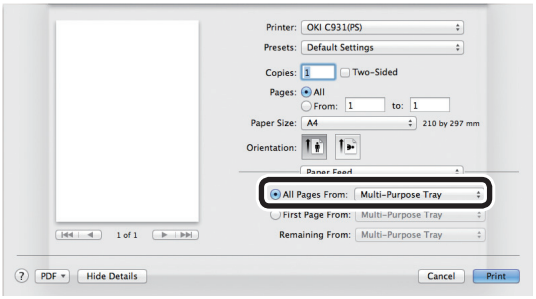
3 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

4 Check that the printer model name is selected in [Printer].

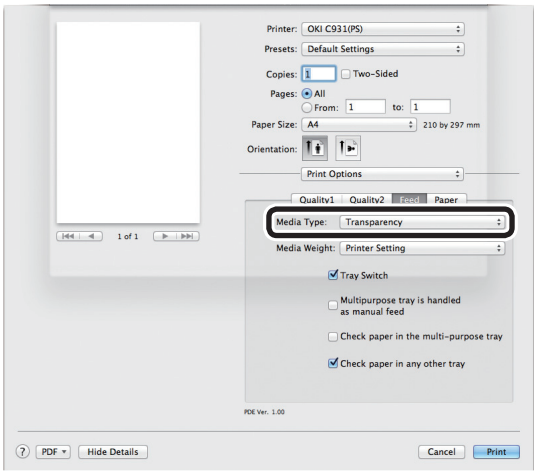
5 Select the paper size in [Paper Size].



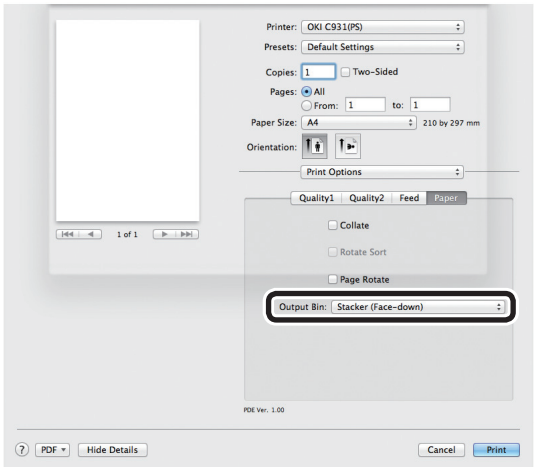
6 Select the paper tray in the [Paper Feed] panel.



7 Click [Feed] in the [Print Options] panel, and select [Transparency] from [Media Type].



8 Click the [Paper] button in the [Print Options] panel, and select the output bin from [Output Bin].



9 Click [Print] to print.

Printing on labels and transparencies

Memo

- For the types of labels and transparencies that can be used, see "Usable Paper Types" in "Basic".
- For the Multi-Purpose Tray preparations, see "Setting paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray" in "Basic".

1 Set the paper.

Labels and transparencies are printed from the Multi-Purpose Tray or Tray 1.

Memo

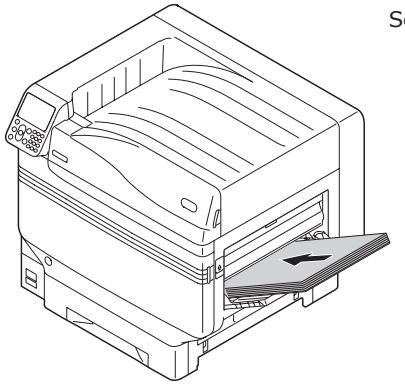
- You can print by manually feeding one page at a time from the Multi-Purpose Tray. For details, see "Printing single sheets manually" (P.87).

Note

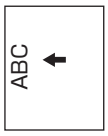
- Printing from trays 2 to 5 and 2-sided printing are disabled for labels and transparencies.
- Print speed will be slowed.
- Transparency is not available to clear toner printing.

Setting in the Multi-Purpose Tray

Set the print surface face-up.

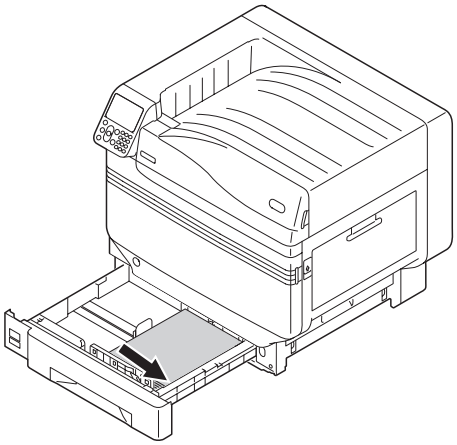


Setting the paper orientation

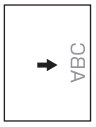


Setting in tray 1

Set the print surface face-down.

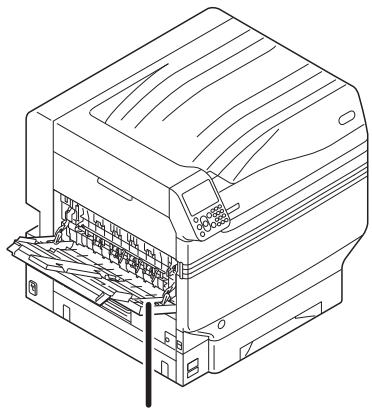


Setting the paper orientation



2 Open the face-up stacker.

Output labels and transparencies to the face-up stacker.

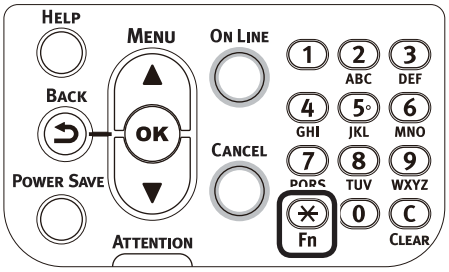


Face-up stacker

3 Set the paper weight, paper size, and paper type using the control panel.

(1) Press the [Fn] key.

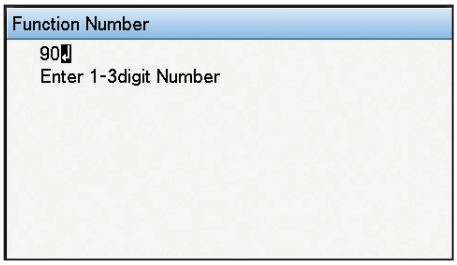
The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



(2) Enter a number according to the paper to be used.

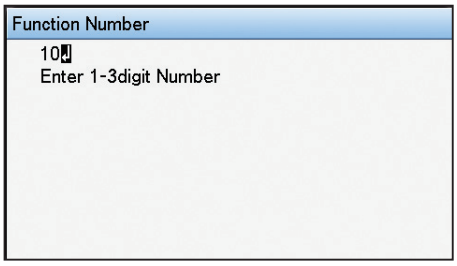
- Using the Multi-Purpose Tray

  Press [9], [0], and press the [OK] button.

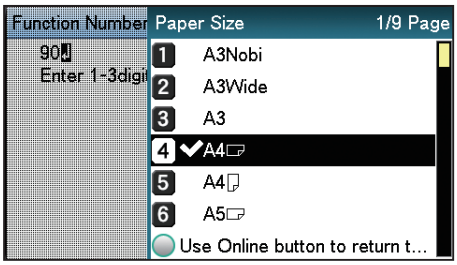


- Using tray 1

  Press [1], [0], and press the [OK] button.

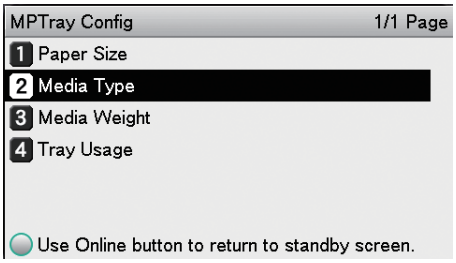


(3) Select [A4▭], and press the [OK] button.

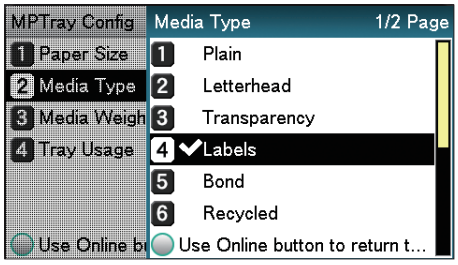


(4) Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of [A4▭], and press the [BACK] button.

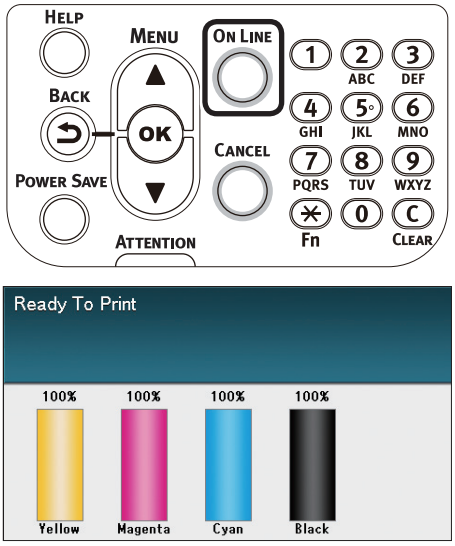
(5) Select [Media Type], and press the [OK] button.



(6) Select [Labels] or [Transparency], and press the [OK] button. Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of [Labels] or [Transparency], and press the [BACK] button.



(7) Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.



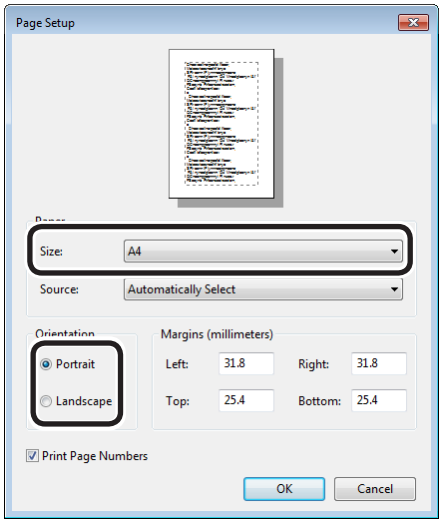
4 Open the file to be printed.

5 Select [Size], [Source], and [Output Bin] in the printer drivers to print.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

2 Select [Portrait] or [Landscape] in [Orientation], and click the [OK] button.

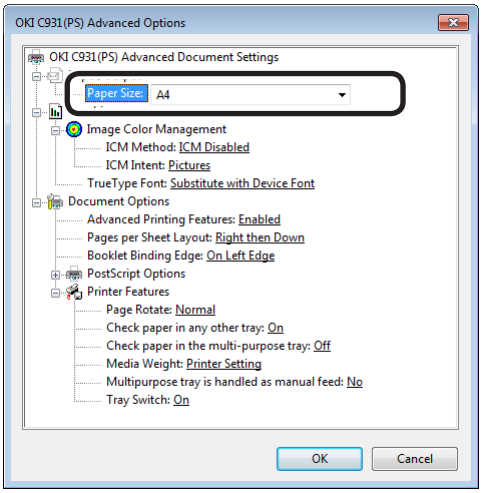


3 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

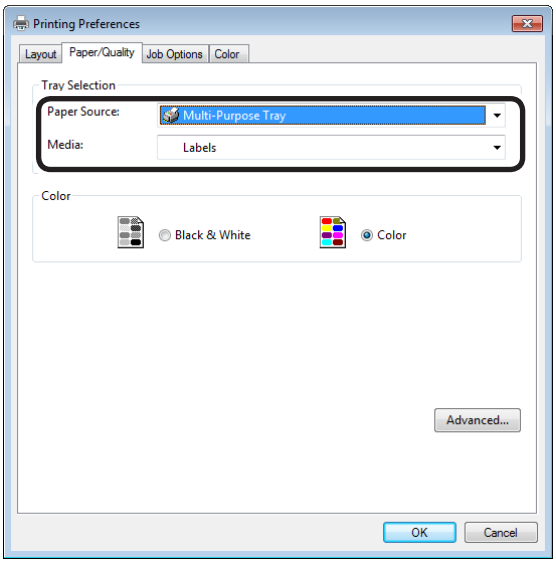
4 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

5 Click [Advanced] in the [Paper/Quality] tab.

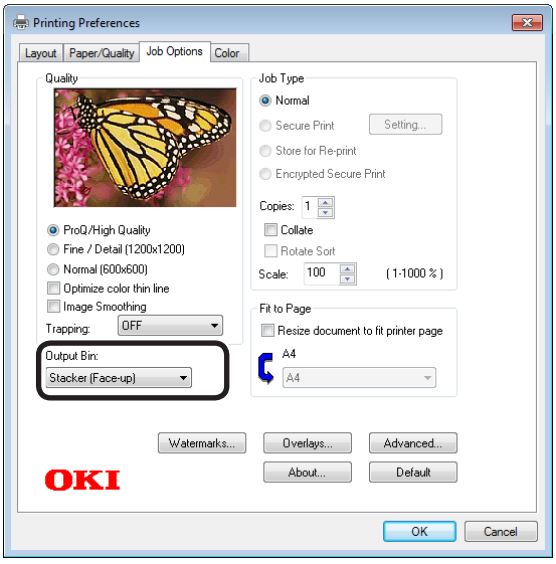
6 Select the paper size in [Paper Size] in the "Advanced Options" screen.



7 Select [Labels] or [Transparency] in [Media]. Select the paper tray in [Paper Source].



8 Select [Stacker (Face-up)] in [Output Bin] in the [Job Options] tab, and click [OK].

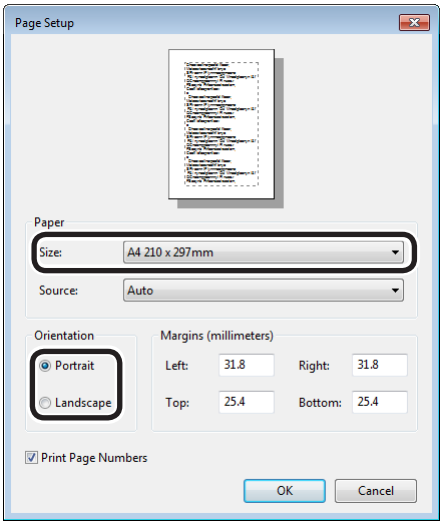


9 Click [Print] in the "Print" screen to print.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

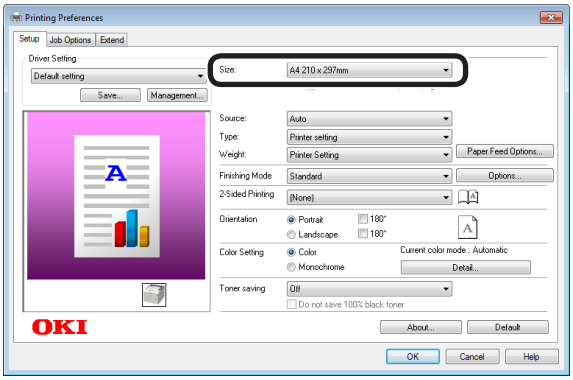
2 Select [Portrait] or [Landscape] in [Orientation], and click the [OK] button.



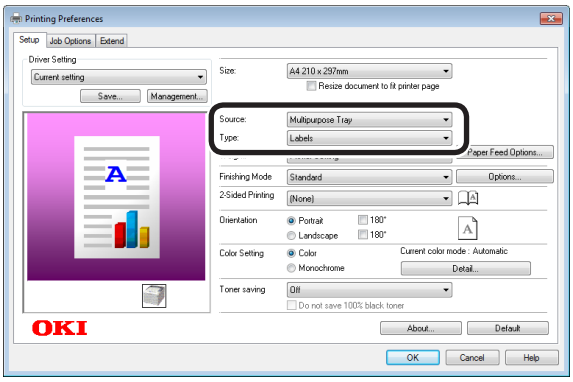
3 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

4 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

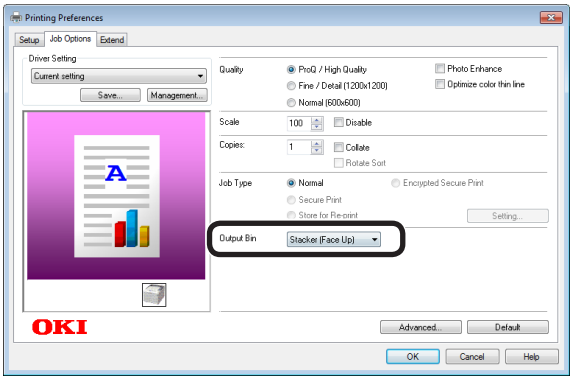
5 Select the paper size in [Size] in the [Setup] tab.



6 Select [Labels] or [Transparency] in [Type]. Select the paper tray in [Source].



7 Select [Stacker (Face Up)] in [Output Bin] in the [Job Options] tab, and click [OK].

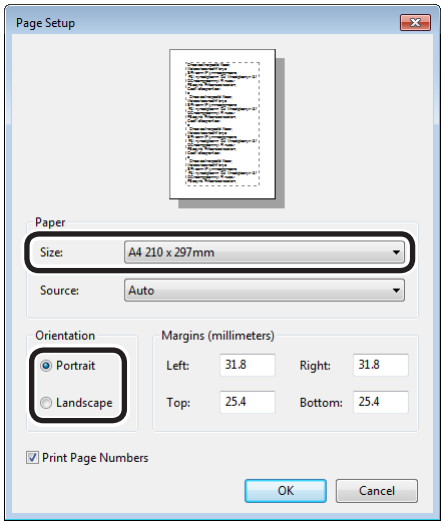


8 Click either [OK] or [Print] in the "Print" screen to print.

■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

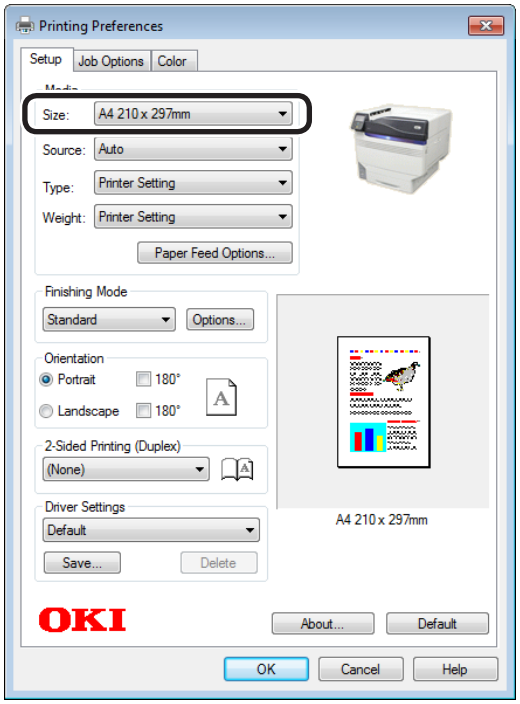
2 Select [Portrait] or [Landscape] in [Orientation], and click the [OK] button.



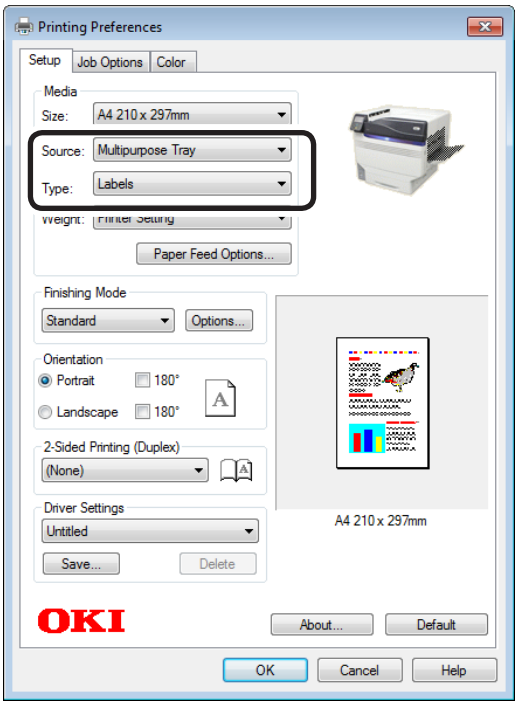
3 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

4 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

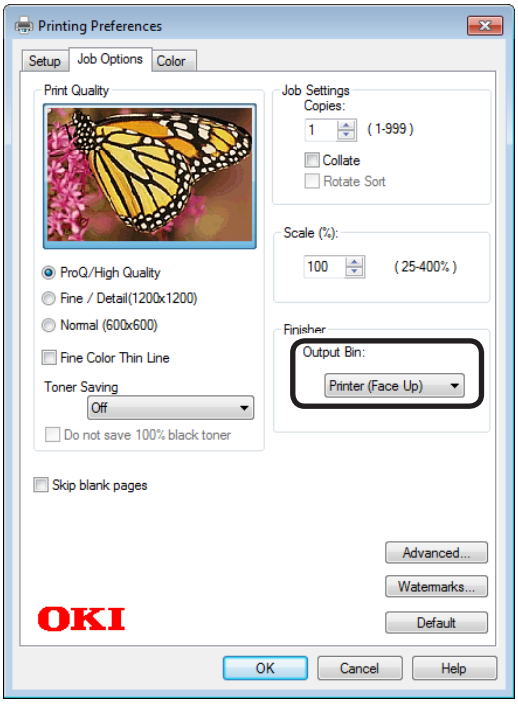
5 Select the paper size in [Size] in the [Setup] tab.



6 Select [Labels] or [Transparency] in [Type]. Select the paper tray in [Source].



7 Select [Printer (Face Up)] in [Output Bin] in the [Job Options] tab, and click [OK].

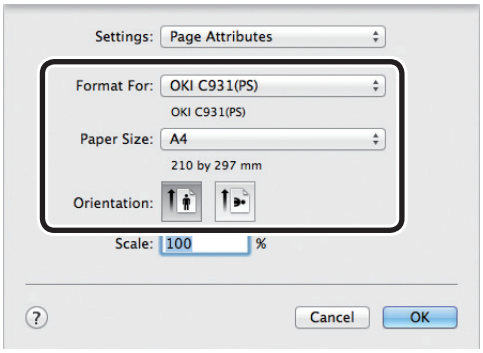


8 Click [Print] in the [Print] screen to print.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

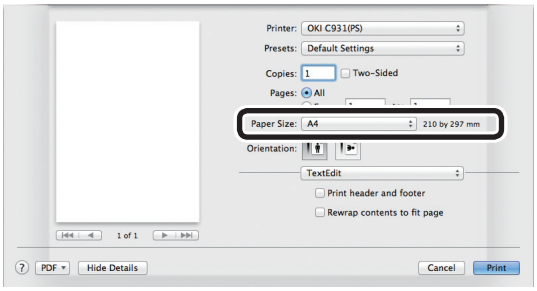
2 Select the printer model name in [Format For], and select the paper size in [Paper Size], and a suitable orientation in [Orientation], and click [OK].



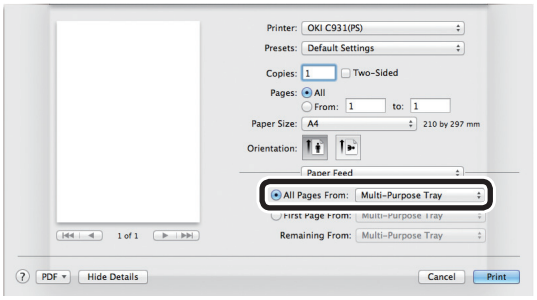
3 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

4 Check that the printer model name is selected in [Printer].

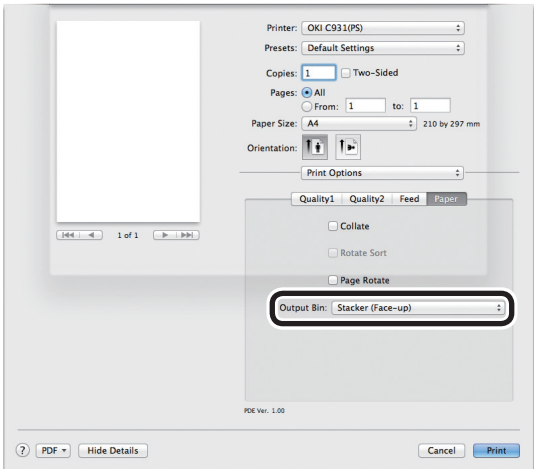
5 Select the paper size in [Paper Size].



6 Select the paper tray in the [Paper Feed] panel.



7 Click the [Paper] button in the [Print Options] panel, and select [Stacker (Face-up)] from [Output Bin].



8 Click [Print] to print.

Printing on user-selected paper sizes (custom pages and lengthy printing)

Register the desired paper size in the printer driver, and specify when printing.

[Sizes that can be fed from the Multi-Purpose Tray (Settable custom sizes)]
Width: 64 to 330mm
Length: 89 to 1321mm
[Sizes that can be fed from the Multi-Purpose Tray]
Trays 1/2/3/4/5
Width: 99 to 330mm
Length: 147 to 457mm
[Sizes where 2-sided printing is possible]
Width: 99 to 330mm
Length: 147 to 483mm

! Note

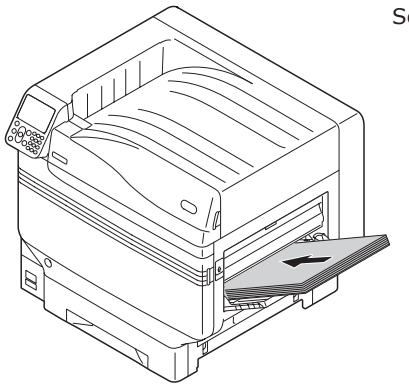
- If printing smaller paper than width 99mm and length 147mm, feed from the Multi-Purpose Tray and output to the face-up stacker.
- Set the paper size to portrait length, and set in the device.
- Not usable with some applications.
- If feeding from the Multi-Purpose Tray, support the paper manually for paper lengths that are not fully supported by the paper supporter.
- If feeding from the paper trays (tray 1, (optional) trays 2 to 5), press the scroll buttons ▲ or ▼ on the device control panel, and select [Menu]>[Tray Configuration]>[Set Tray 1]>[Paper Size]>[Custom].
- If there is no paper in the tray, setting the function to switch automatically to a tray in which paper of the same size has been set, the default settings will be enabled (i.e., the check box will be enabled). If the paper runs out during printing, paper will feed from another tray. Disable (i.e., uncheck) the check box when printing custom size paper from a designated tray only.

1 Set the paper.

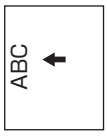
Memo

- You can print by manually feeding one page at a time from the Multi-Purpose Tray. For details, see "Printing single sheets manually" (P.87).

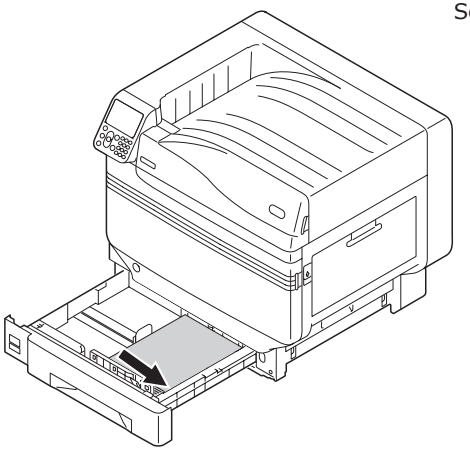
Setting in the Multi-Purpose Tray



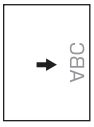
Setting the paper orientation



Setting in the paper tray



Setting the paper orientation

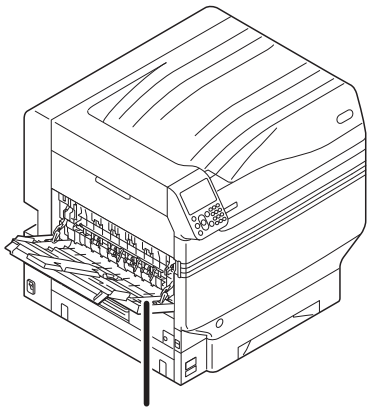


2 If outputting to the face-up stacker, open the face-up stacker.

Set the print surface face-up to output.

Memo

- You can output to the face-down stacker.

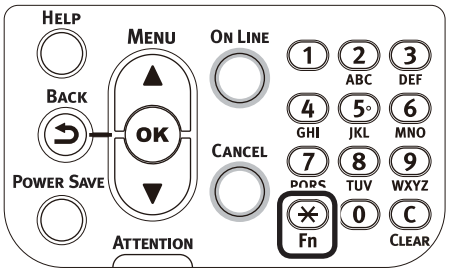


Face-up stacker

3 Set the paper size and paper type using the control panel.

(1) Press the [Fn] key.

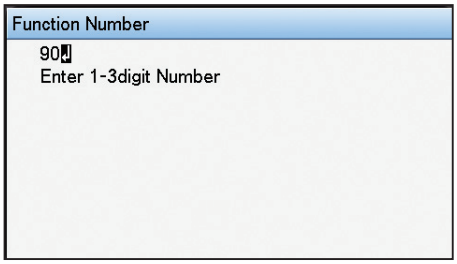
The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



(2) Enter a number according to the paper to be used.

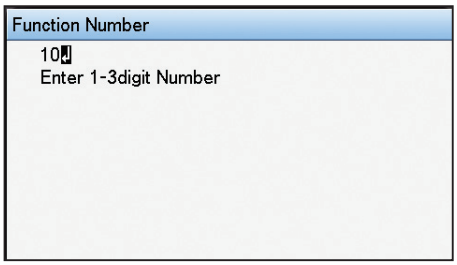
- Using the Multi-Purpose Tray

  Press [9], [0], and press the [OK] button.

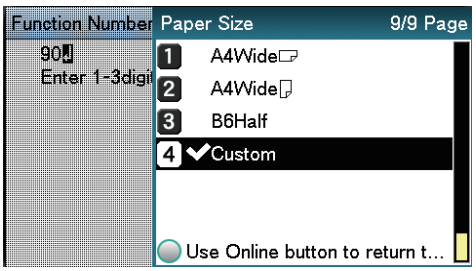


- Using tray 1

  Press [1], [0], and press the [OK] button.

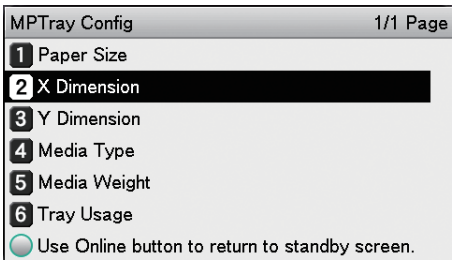


(3) Select [Custom], and press the [OK] button.

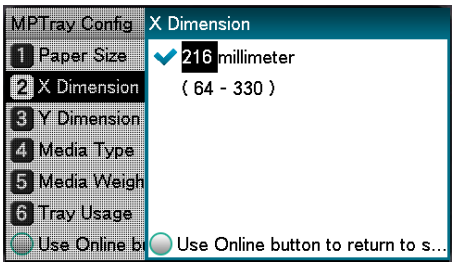


(4) Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of [Custom], and press the [BACK] button.

(5) Select [X Dimension], and press the [OK] button.

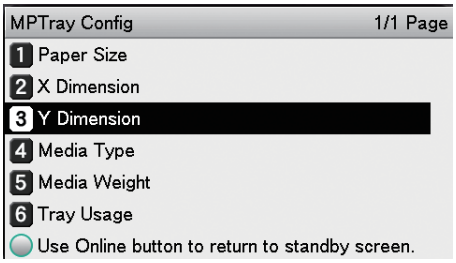


(6) Press the scroll buttons ▲ or ▼ to select a suitable size, and then press the [OK] button.

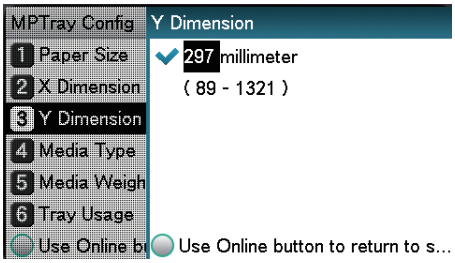


(7) Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the selected size, and press the [BACK] button.

(8) Select [Y Dimension], and press the [OK] button.



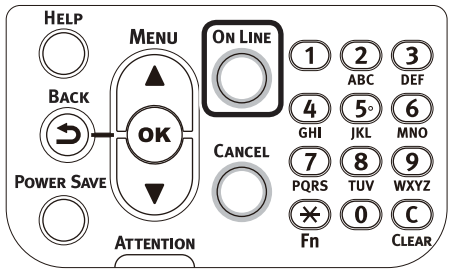
(9) Press the scroll buttons ▲ or ▼ to select a suitable size, and then press the [OK] button.

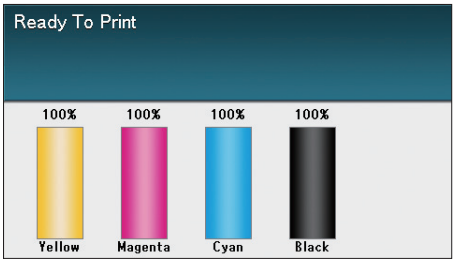


(10) Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the selected size, and press the [BACK] button.

(11) Set the paper type and paper weight as necessary.

(12) Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.





4 Register the desired paper size in the printer drivers to print.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

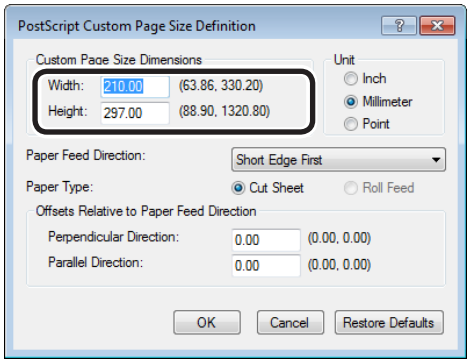
1 Click [Start], and then select [Devices and printers].

2 Right-click the [OKI (product name) (PS)] icon, and select [Printing Preferences]>[OKI (product name) (PS)].

3 Click [Advanced] in the [Layout] tab.

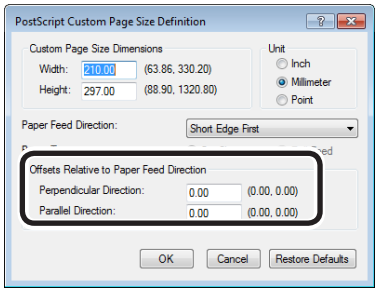
4 Select [PostScript Custom Page Size] in [Paper Size].

5 Enter the [Width] and [Height] in the "PostScript Custom Page Size Definition" screen.



Note

- "Offsets Relative to Paper Feed Direction" cannot be set.



6 Click [OK] until the "Printing Preferences" screen closes.

7 Open the file to be printed.

8 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

9 Specify the registered paper size to print.

Memo

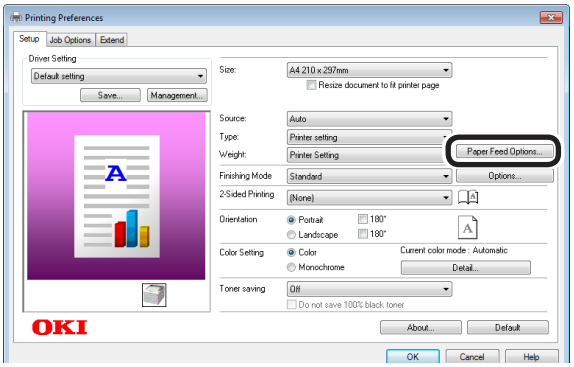
- If printing is incorrect using large size paper from the PS printer drivers, you can correct the printing by setting "Normal" in [Quality].

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

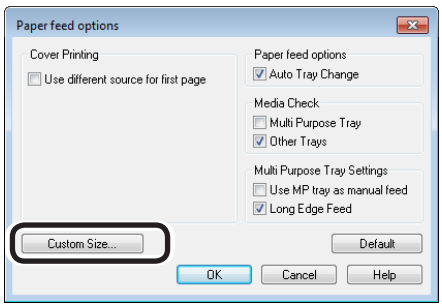
1 Click [Start], and then select [Devices and printers].

2 Right-click the [OKI (product name) (PCL6)] icon, and select [Printing Preferences]>[OKI (product name) (PCL6)].

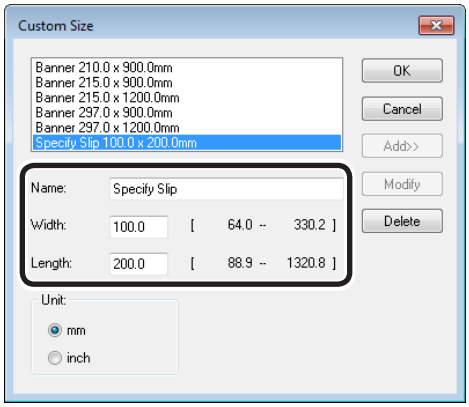
3 Click [Paper Feed Options] in the [Setup] tab.



4 Click [Custom Size] in the [Paper Feed Options] screen.



5 Enter [Name], [Width], and [Length] in the [Custom Size] screen.



6 Click [Add].

The created paper will be displayed at the bottom of the [Size] list in the [Setup] tab. 32 types max. can be defined.

7 Click [OK] until the "Printing Preferences" screen closes.

8 Open the file to be printed.

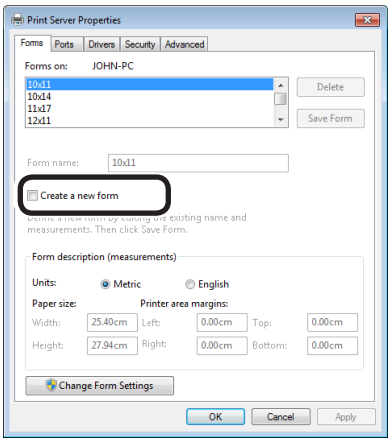
9 Specify the registered paper size to print.

■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Click [Start], and then select [Devices and printers].

2 Select [OKI (product name)(XPS)], and select "Print Server Properties" in the tool bar.

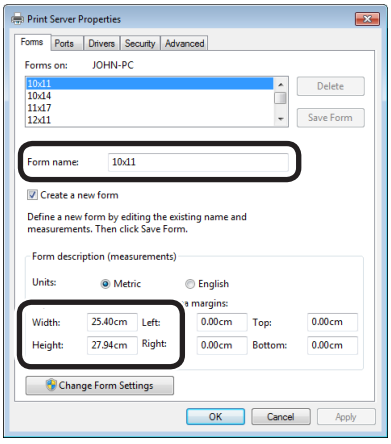
3 Enable the [Create a new form] check box in the [Forms] tab.



4 Enter the name and size.

(1) Enter the new size name in [Form name].

(2) Enter the [Width] and [Height] values.



5 Click [Save Form].

6 Click [Close].

7 Open the file to be printed.

8 Specify the registered paper size to print.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

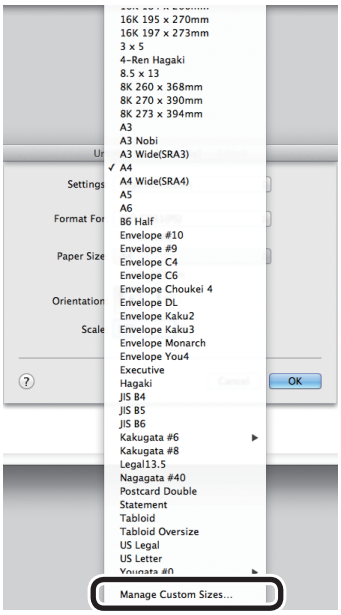
Note

- Custom sizes exceeding the printable range can be entered using Mac OS X, but printing will be incorrect. Set within the correct range.
- If a custom paper size with the same paper size as registered in the OS is specified, the paper may be handled as regular paper.

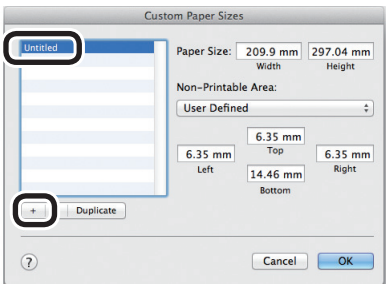
1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

3 Select [Manage Custom Sizes] in [Paper Size].



4 Click [+] in the "Custom Paper Sizes" screen. Double-click [Untitled], and enter a name in [Custom Paper Sizes]. Enter the [Width] and [Height] page sizes.



5 Click [OK].

The created paper will be displayed at the bottom of the [Paper Size] list in the [Page Properties] panel.

6 Printing will be implemented.

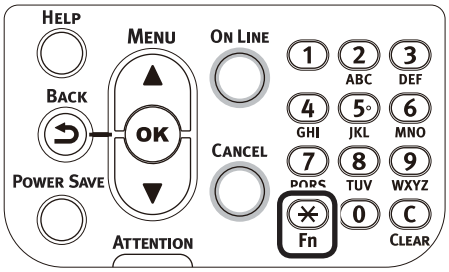
Using custom media

This setting is used in the following cases:

- If a lateral stripe stands out in Heavy media, it may be improved by setting [Custom media]. In this case, print speed will be slower.
- When you want to print on OKI TRANSPARENCY FILM.

1 Set the paper size and paper type using the control panel.

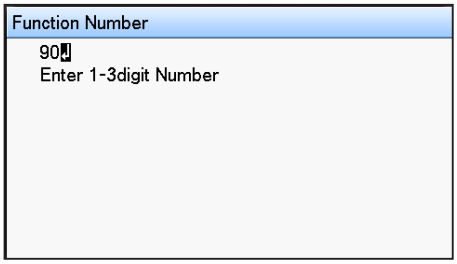
(1) Press the [Fn] key.
The number input screen appears.



(2) Input the number depending on the paper tray being used.

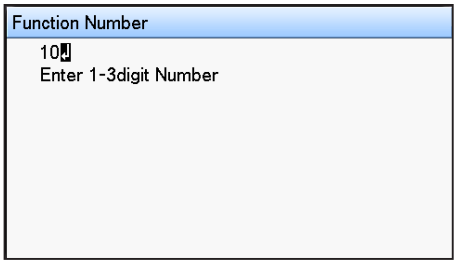
- For the multi-purpose tray

  Press [9] and [0], and press the [OK] button.

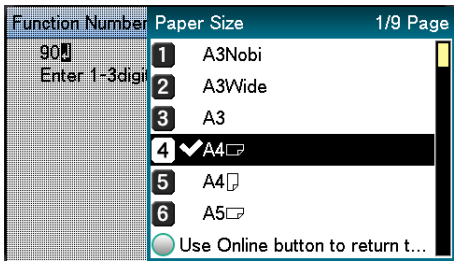


- For Tray1

  Press [1] and [0], and press the [OK] button.

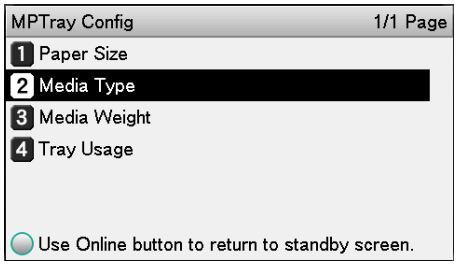


(3) Select the paper size, and press the [OK] button.

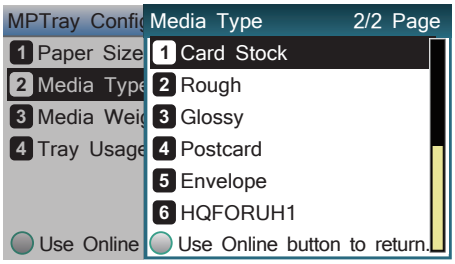


(4) Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the selected paper size, and press the [BACK] button.

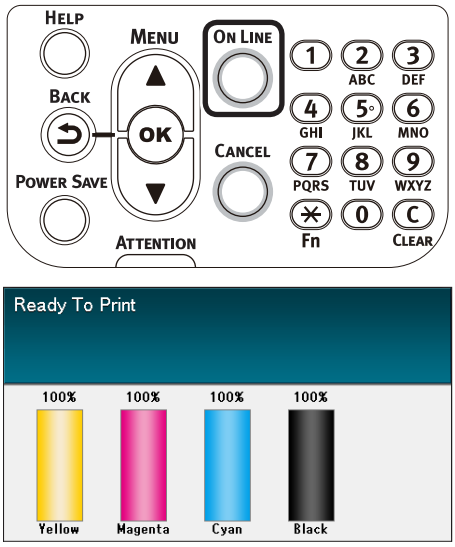
(5) Select [Media Type], and press the [OK] button.



(6) Select [HQFORUH1] - [HQFORUH5] or [OKITRANSFILM], and press the [OK] button.
Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the selected [HQFORUH].



(7) Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.



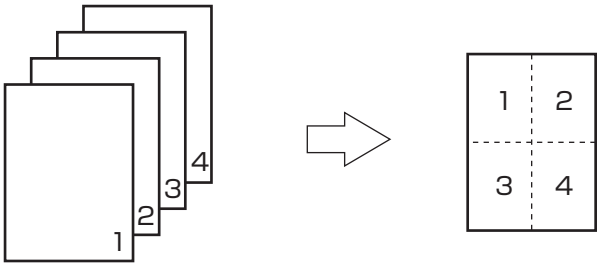
* In the default factory settings, paper types are set for [HQFORUH1] - [HQFORUH5] as shown in the following table.

Paper Type Name	Media Type	Media Weight
HQ_FOR_UH1	Plain	Ultra Heavy1
HQ_FOR_UH2	Plain	Ultra Heavy2
HQ_FOR_UH3	Plain	Ultra Heavy3
HQ_FOR_UH4	Plain	Ultra Heavy4
HQ_FOR_UH5	Plain	Ultra Heavy5
OKITRANSFILM	OKI Special setting	

Economy printing

Printing multiple pages on a single sheet (multi-page printing)

You can print by reducing data for multiple pages on a single sheet.

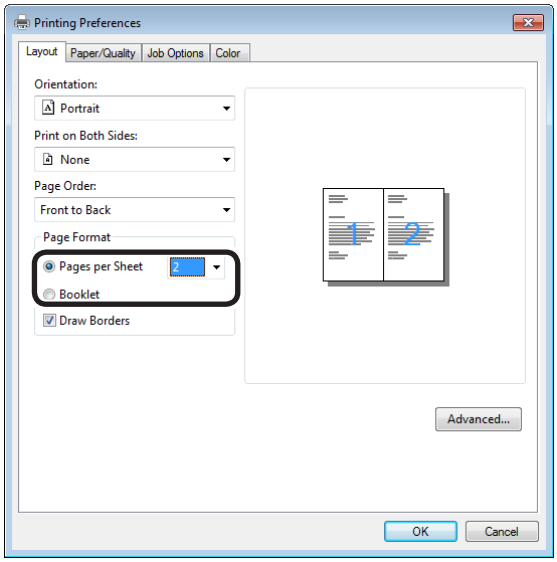


Note

- This function reduces the data to print, so the center of the paper may not be accurately aligned.
- Bind width can also be set using Windows PCL/XPS printer drivers.
- Not usable with some applications.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Select the number of pages to pr printed on a single page from [Pages per Sheet] in the [Layout] tab.



Memo

- If using Windows 8.1/Windows 8/Windows 7/Windows Vista/Windows Server 2012 R2/Windows Server 2012/ Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows Server 2008, make sure to set [Draw Borders] as necessary. Further, you can also change the page distribution using [Advanced]>[Page Layout per Sheet].

5. Printing will be implemented.

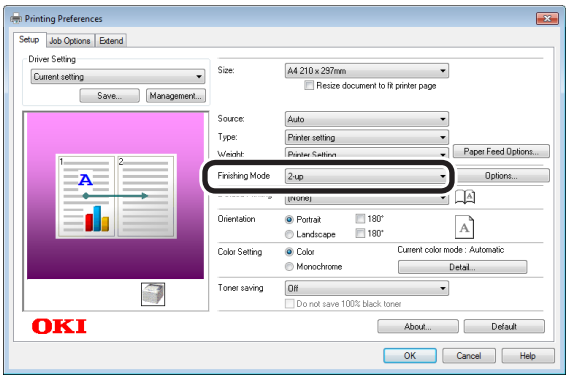
■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [n-up] (where n is the number of pages to be printed on 1 sheet) in [Finishing Mode] in the [Setup] tab.



5 Click [Options], and set [Page Borders], [Page layout], and [Bind Margin] as necessary. The bind width can be set from 0 to 30mm left and right.

6 Printing will be implemented.

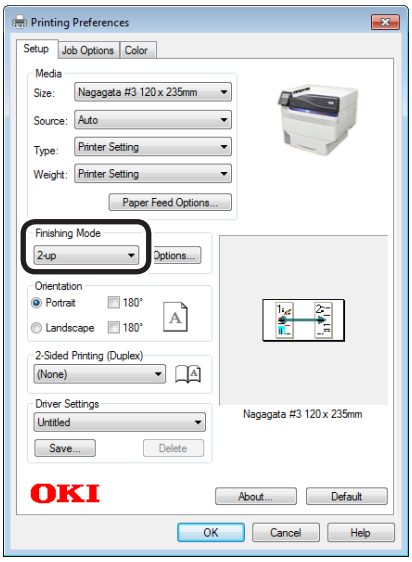
■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [n-up] (where n is the number of pages to be printed on 1 sheet) in [Finishing Mode] in the [Setup] tab.



5 Click [Options], and set [Page Borders], [Page layout], and [Bind Margin] as necessary. The bind width can be set from 0 to 30mm left and right.

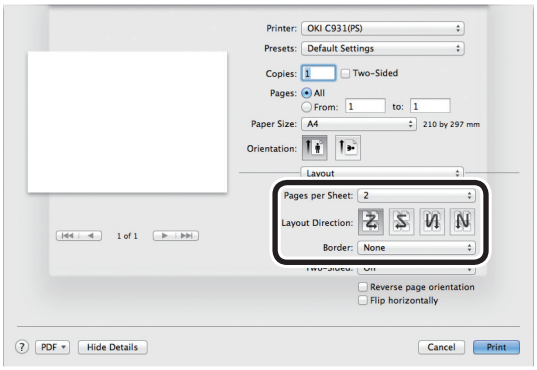
6 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

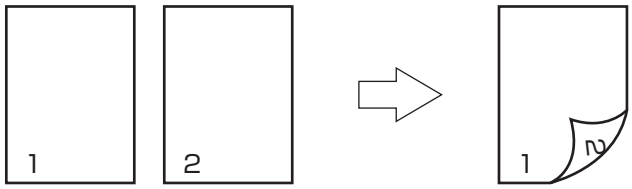
3 Select [Pages per Sheet], [Layout Direction], and [Border] in the [Layout] panel.



4 Printing will be implemented.

2-Sided Printing

You can print on both sides of the paper.



For the types of paper, thicknesses, and sizes that can be used in 2-sided printing, see "Usable paper types" in "Basic".

For the range of widths and lengths of custom sizes that can be used in 2-sided printing, see "Printing on user-selected paper sizes (custom pages and lengthy printing)" (P.47).

! Note

- Not usable with some applications.

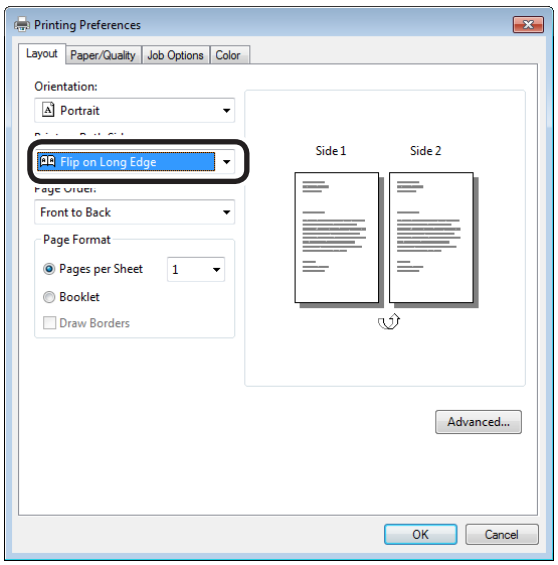
■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Flip on Long Edge] or [Flip on Short Edge] in [2-Sided Printing] in the [Layout] tab.



5 Printing will be implemented.

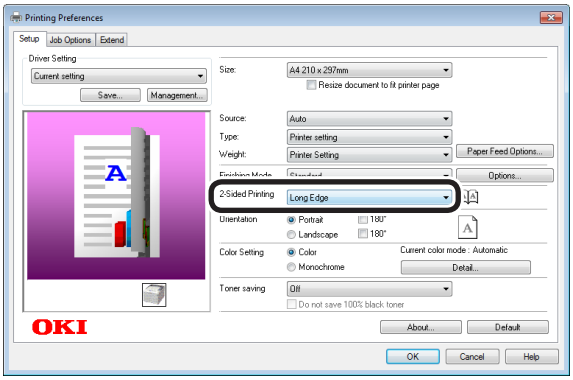
■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Long Edge] or [Short Edge] in [2-Sided Printing] in the [Setup] tab.



5 Printing will be implemented.

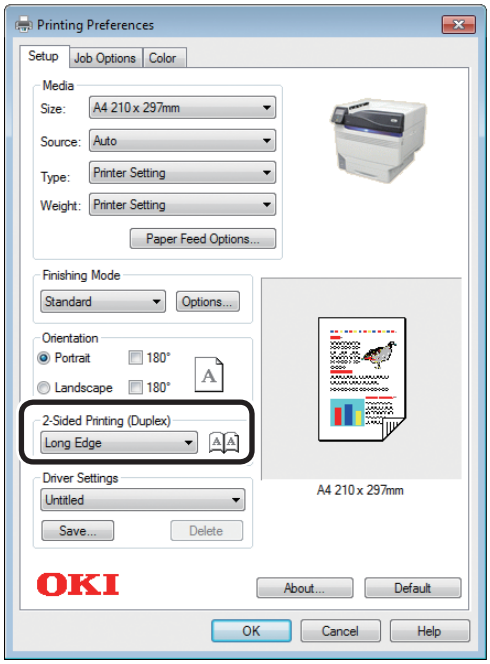
■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Long Edge] or [Short Edge] in [2-Sided Printing] in the [Setup] tab.



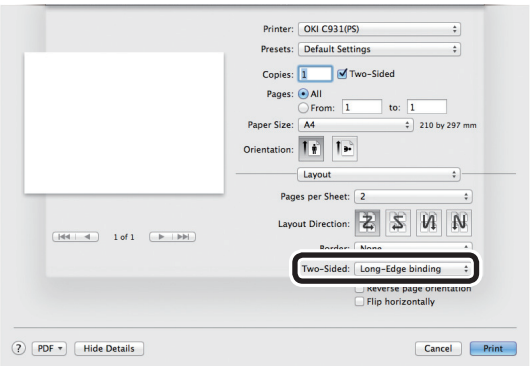
5 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

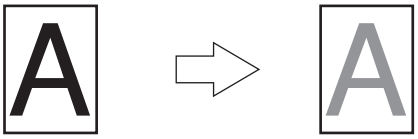
3 Select [Long-Edge binding] or [Short-Edge binding] in [Two-Sided] in the [Layout] tab.



4 Printing will be implemented.

Test printing with toner economy (toner economy mode)

You can print by economizing the toner consumption amount by reducing the page print density. Separately set whether to enable or disable toner economy mode over 100% black.



Memo

- You can suppress the amount of toner used by reducing the toner density by selecting one of the following four patterns as necessary.
  - Printer setup: Follows the device setup.
  - OFF: Prints using regular density without economizing the toner.
  - Save Level Low: Prints using medium light toner.
  - Save Level Middle: Prints using light toner.
  - Save Level High: Prints using considerably light toner.
- [Toner Save] is enabled only if the print quality is specified as [Normal].

! Note

- Toner save mode is not compatible with Spot Color printing.

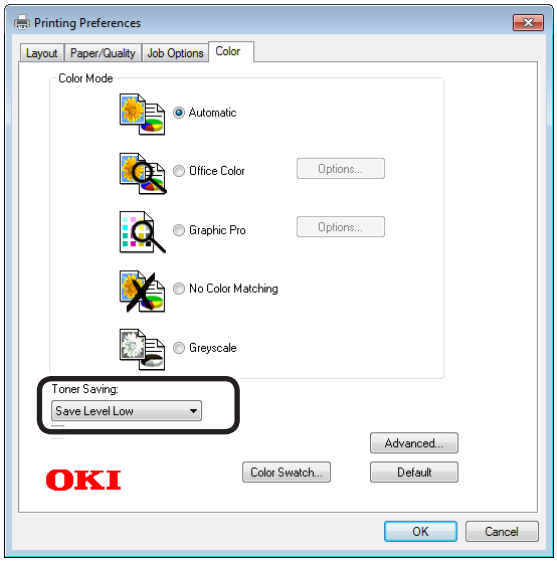
■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select the toner save amount from [Toner Saving] in the [Color] tab.



5 Printing will be implemented.

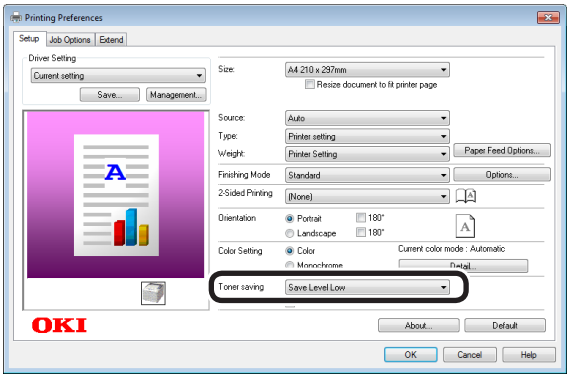
■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select the toner save amount from [Toner saving] in [Setup] tab.



5 Printing will be implemented.

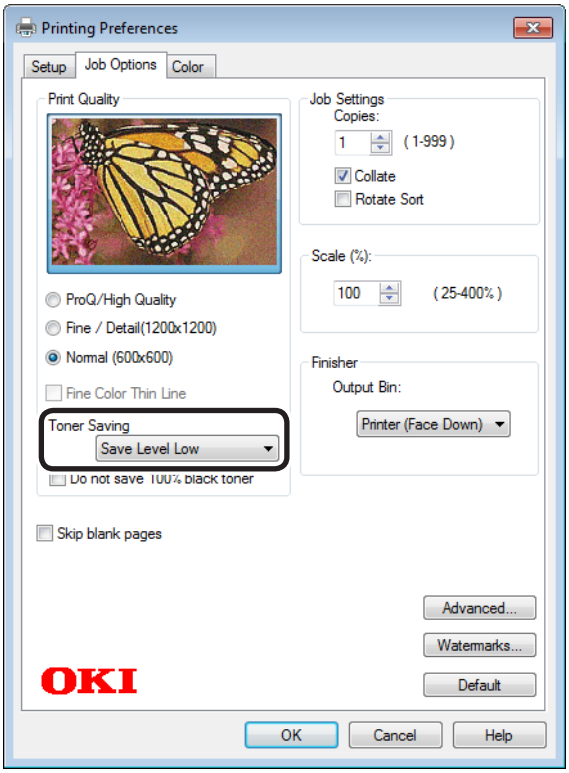
■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select the toner save amount from [Toner Saving] in [Job Options] tab.



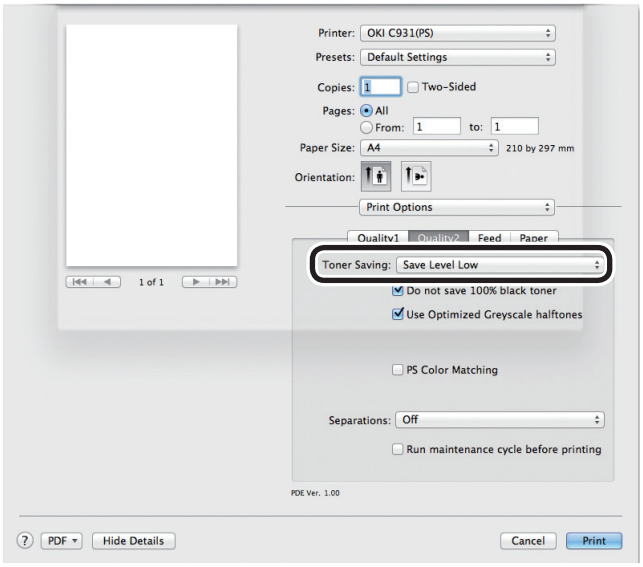
5 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click the [Quality 2] button in the [Print Options] panel, and select the toner save amount from [Toner Saving].

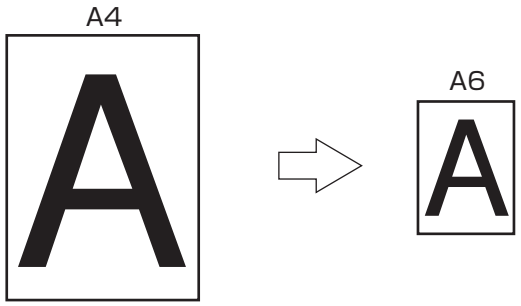


4 Printing will be implemented.

Changing sizes to print

Enlarging/reducing pages

You can print on different paper sizes without changing the print data.

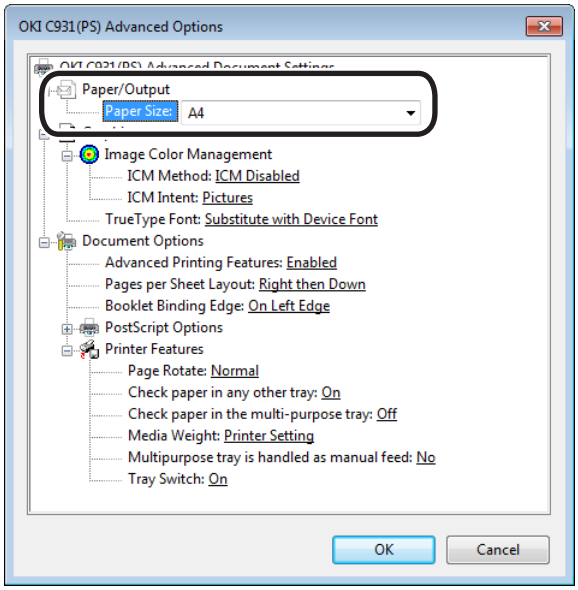


Note

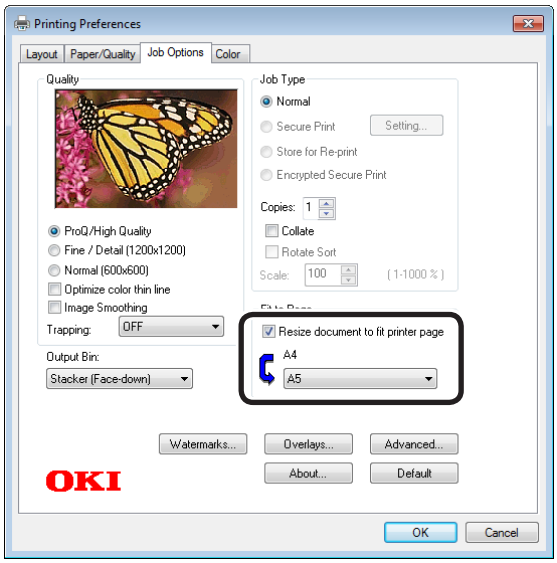
- Not normally operable with some applications.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Click [Advanced] in the [Paper/Quality] tab.
5. Select the paper size to be edited in [Paper Size].



6. Enable the [Resize document to fit printer page] check box in the [Job Options] tab, and select the paper size to be printed.



7. Printing will be implemented.

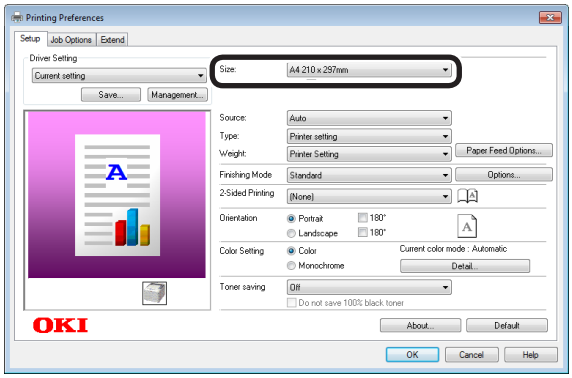
■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

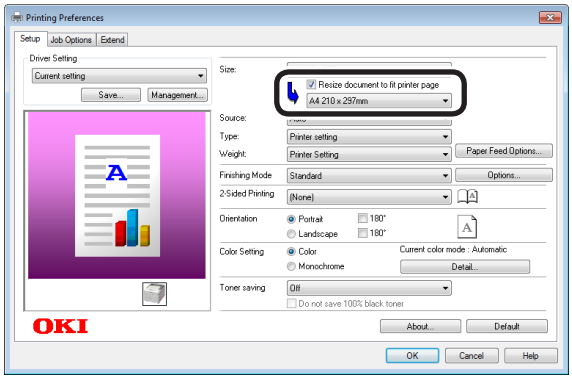
2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select the paper size to be edited in [Size] in the [Setup] tab.



5 Enable the [Resize document to fit printer page] check box, and select the paper size to be printed.



6 Printing will be implemented.

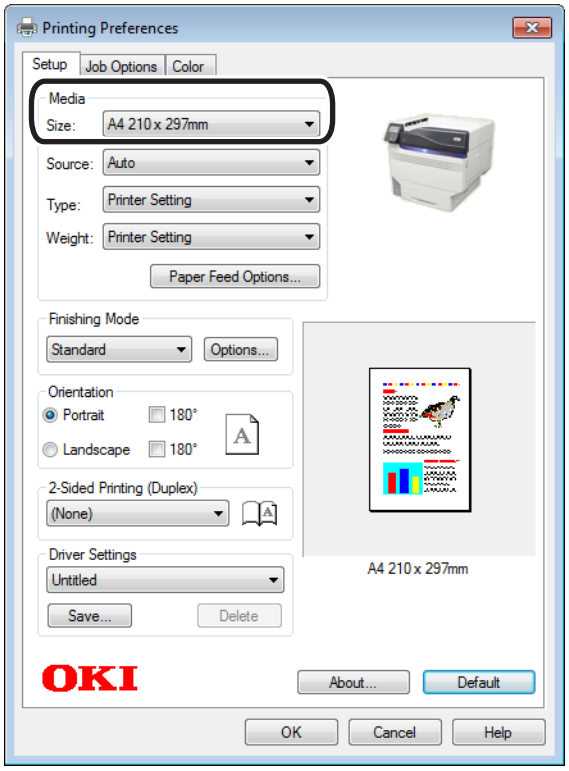
■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

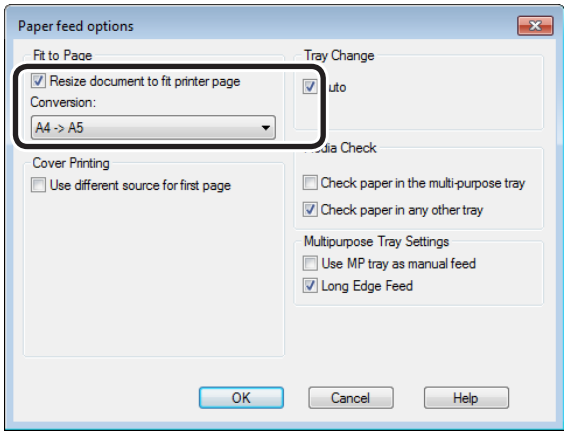
3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select the paper size to be edited in [Size] for [Media] in the [Setup] tab.



5 Click [Paper Feed Options].

6 Enable the [Resize document to fit printer page] check box, and select the paper size to be printed.



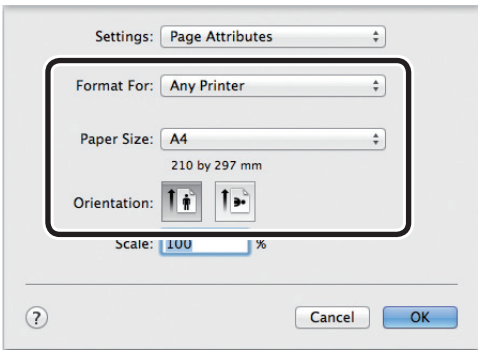
7 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

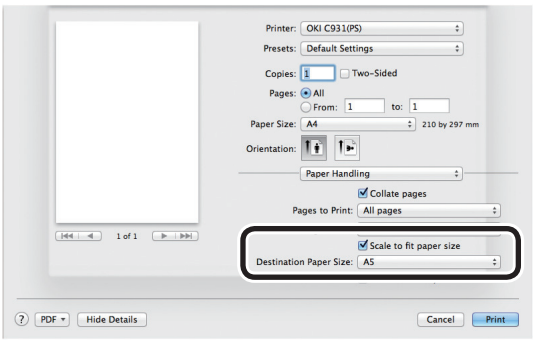
2 Select [Page Setup] in the [File] menu.

3 Select the printer model name in [Format For], and select the paper size to be edited in [Paper Size], and click [OK].



4 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

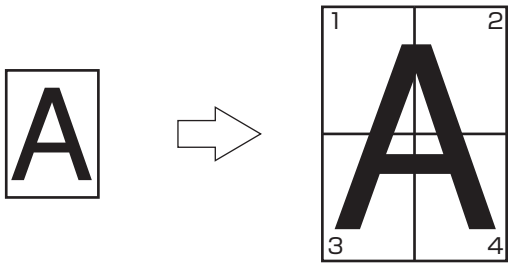
5 Enable the [Scale to fit paper size] in the [Paper Handling] panel, and select the paper size to be edited using "Destination Paper Size".



6 Printing will be implemented.

Enlarging and printing multiple sheets (poster printing)

You can enlarge the source data and print parts to multiple sheets of paper.



Note

- Cannot be used with Windows PS and Mac OS X printer drivers.
- Posters cannot be printed if printing using encrypted secure print functions from the client after creating the printer drivers using a shared network.
- If [Poster Print] is not operating, right-click the [OKI (printer name) (PCL6)] in the [Devices and Printers] folder, and select [Preferences]>[Advanced]>[Print Processor]>[OKX04ZPP].

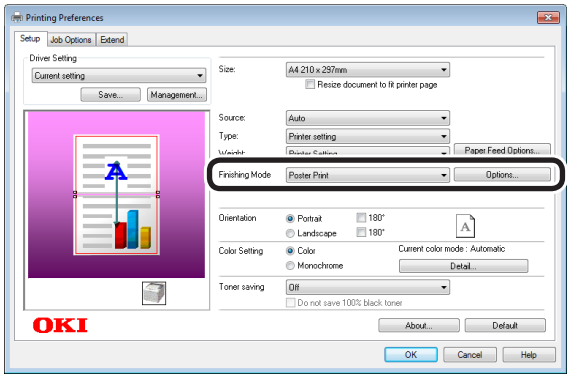
■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

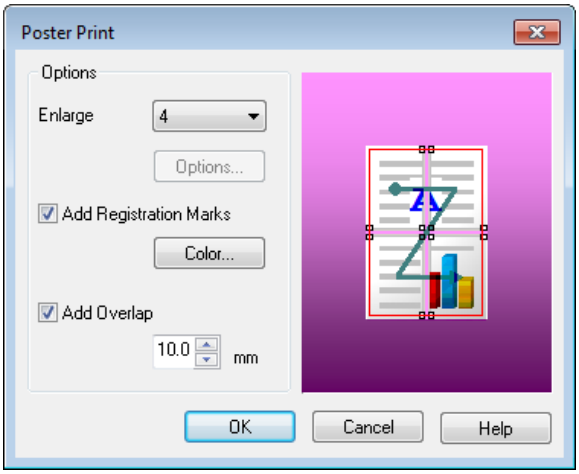
2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Poster Print] in [Finishing Mode] in the [Setup] tab.



5 Click [Options], and set [Enlarge], [Add Registrationg Marks], and [Add Overlap] as necessary.



6 Printing will be implemented.

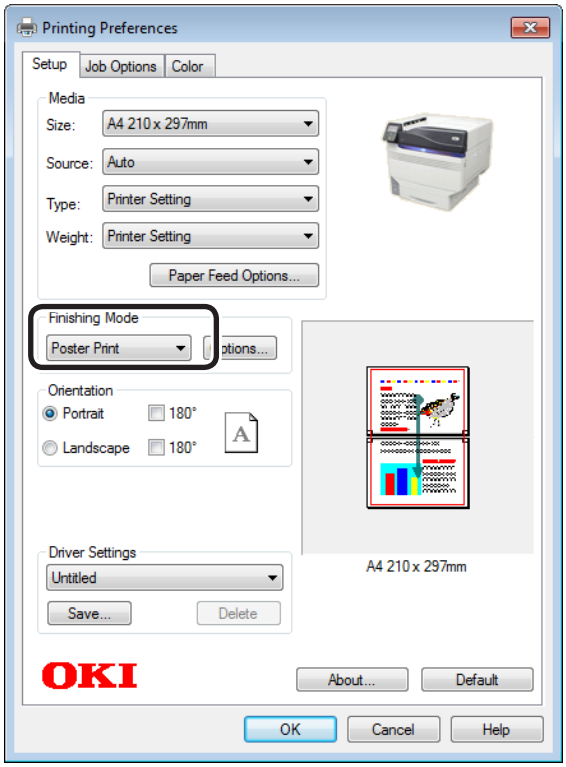
■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

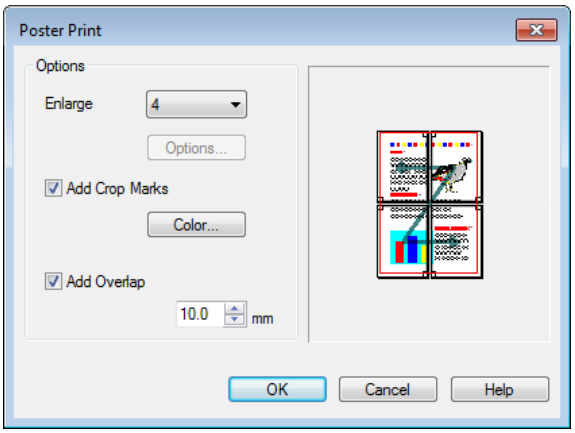
2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Poster Print] in [Finishing Mode] in the [Setup] tab.



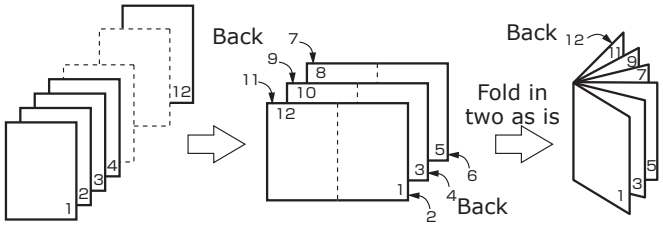
5 Click [Options], and set [Enlarge], [Add Crop Marks], and [Add Overlap] as necessary.



6 Printing will be implemented.

Sorting pages to print pamphlets (booklets)

You can create pamphlet-like booklets.



Note

- Not normally operable with some applications.
- Cannot be used with Mac OS X printer drivers.
- Watermarks cannot be printed correctly when using [Pamphlet] printing.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

Note

- If creating PostScript data using the application itself, pamphlets may not be specified correctly. Whether or not this method can be avoided depends on the publication. Check the manual for the application used. For example, with Adobe Acrobat Professional or Adobe Reader, enable the "Print as image" check box in the advanced setup for the print dialog box to implement pamphlet printing normally.
- If [Pamphlets] is not printing, right-click the [OKI (printer name) (PS)] in the [Devices and Printers] folder, and enable [Enable advanced print functions] in [Printer Properties]>[Job Options] tab.

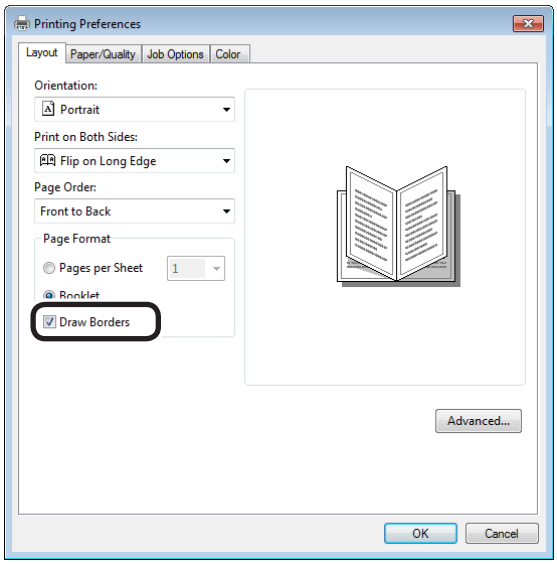
1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Booklet] in the [Layout] tab.

5 If using Windows 8.1/Windows 8/ Windows 7/Windows Vista/Windows Server 2012 R2/Windows Server 2012/ Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows Server 2008, make sure to set "Draw Borders" as necessary.



6 Click [Advanced], and select the paper size to be actually used in [Paper Size].

7 Printing will be implemented.

Memo

- E.g.: Creating A5 size pamphlets using A4 size paper
  - Select [A4] in [Paper Size] in [Job Options].
- If using Windows 8.1/Windows 8/Windows 7/Windows Vista/Windows Server 2012 R2/Windows Server 2012/ Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows Server 2008, and if creating pamphlets folded on the right (i.e., pamphlets with the binding on the right when the pages are face-up), select [Right] in [Pamphlet Binding] in [Job Options].

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

Note

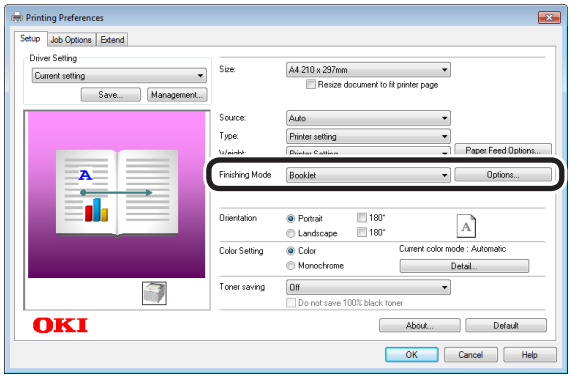
- Pamphlets cannot be printed if printing using encrypted secure print functions from the client after creating the printer drivers using a shared network.
- If [Booklet] cannot be printed, right-click the [OKI (printer name) (PCL6)] in the [Devices and Printers] folder, and select [Preferences]>[Advanced]>[Print Processor]>[OKX04ZPP].

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Booklet] in [Finishing Mode] in the [Setup] tab, and click [Options].



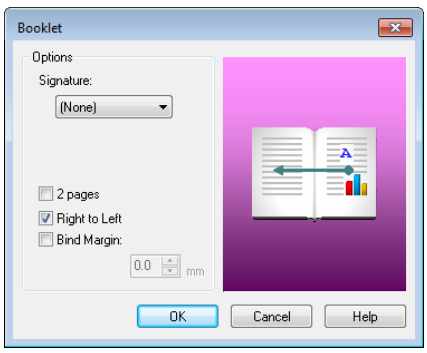
5 Set [Signature], [2 pages], [Right to Left], and [Bind Margin] as necessary in "Booklet".

- Signature

This is the page unit for booklets.

- Right to Left

Prints so that the pamphlet opens on the right.



Memo

- E.g.: If creating A5 size booklets using A4 size paper, select [A4] in [Paper Size] in the [Setup] tab.

6 Printing will be implemented.

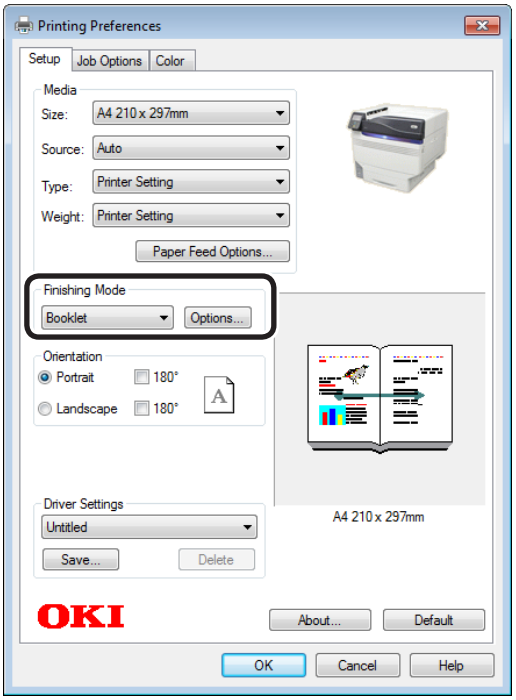
■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

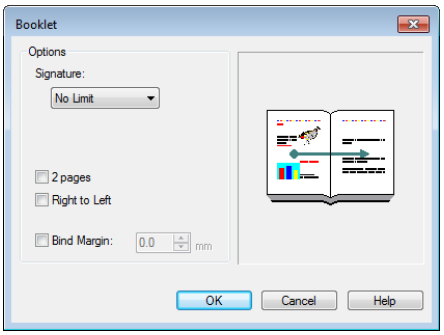
2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Booklet] in [Finishing Mode] in the [Setup] tab, and click [Options].



5 Set [Signature], [2 pages], [Right to Left], and [Bind Margin], etc. as necessary in "Booklet".



6 Printing will be implemented.

Clean printing

Changing print quality (resolution)

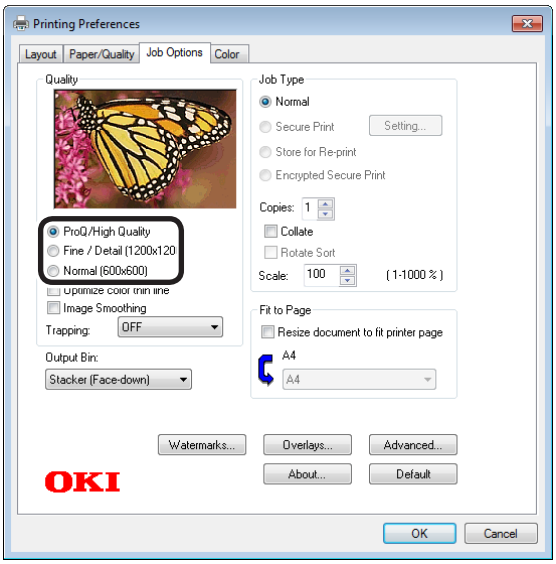
Set [Quality] by aligning to the environment used.

Memo

- If printing is incorrect using large size paper from the PS printer drivers, you can correct the printing by setting "Normal" in [Quality].
- Select [ProQ / High Quality] to print using the highest printer quality.
  - Select [Normal (600x600 dpi)] to print at low resolution. This mode prioritizes print speed.
  - [Fine/Detail(1200x1200 dpi)] is an intermediate mode between [ProQ / High Quality] and [Normal (600x600 dpi)].
- By selecting [Optimize color thin line], characters and/or lines with color will be printed sharply.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

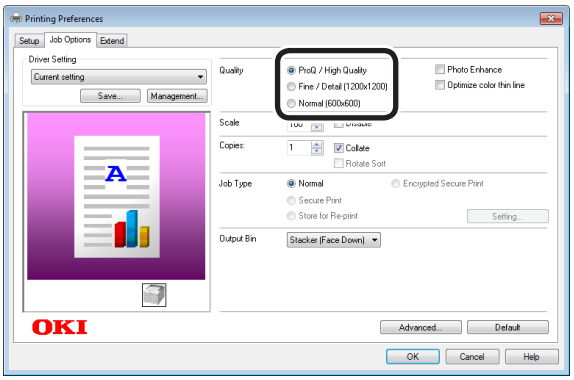
1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Change [Quality] in the [Job Options] tab.



5. Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Change [Quality] in the [Job Options] tab.



5. Printing will be implemented.

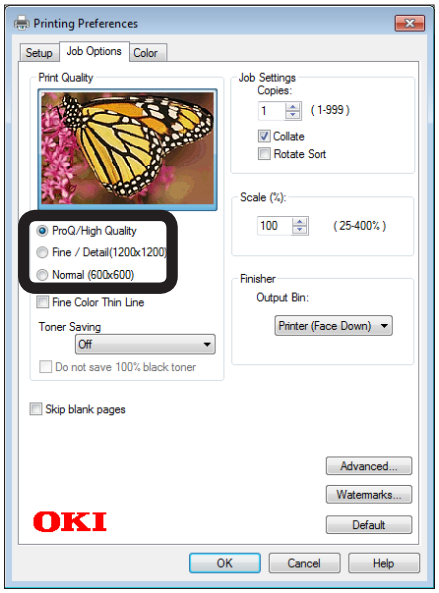
■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Change [Print Quality] in the [Job Options] tab.



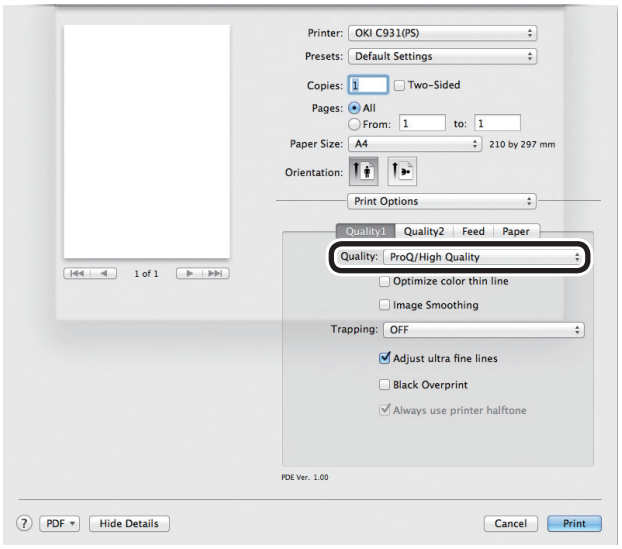
5 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click the [Quality 1] button in the [Print Options] panel, and change [Quality].



4 Printing will be implemented.

Printing sharper photos (photo mode)

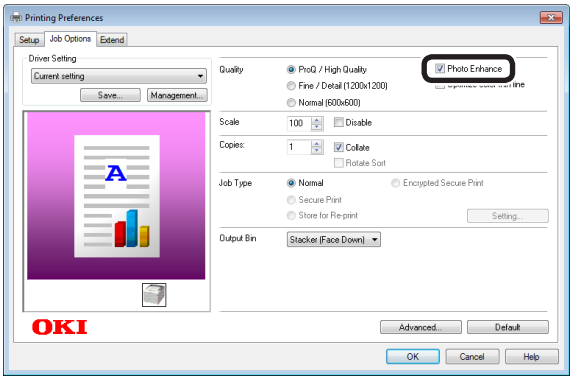
You can print more naturally vividly images such as photos, etc.

Note

- Cannot be used with Windows PS, Windows XPS, and Mac OS X printer drivers.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Select [Photo Enhance] in [Quality] in the [Job Options] tab, and click [OK].



5. Printing will be implemented.

Printign text and lines sharply

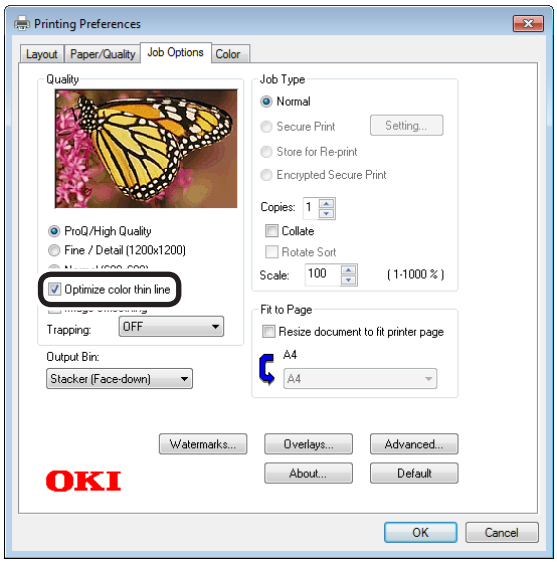
Print colored text and lines sharply.

Memo

- Not suitable for photo printing.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Select [Optimize color thin line] in the [Job Options] tab, and click [OK].



5. Printing will be implemented.

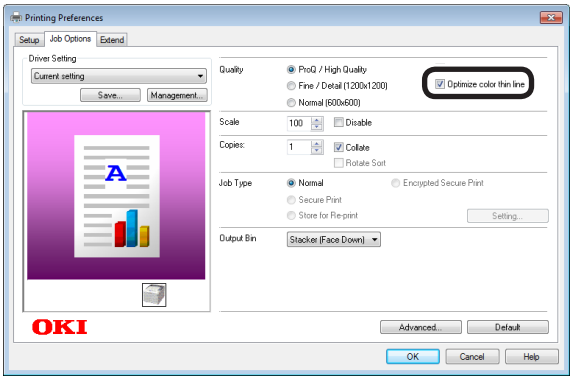
■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select the [Optimize color thin line] in the [Job Options] tab, and click [OK].



5 Printing will be implemented.

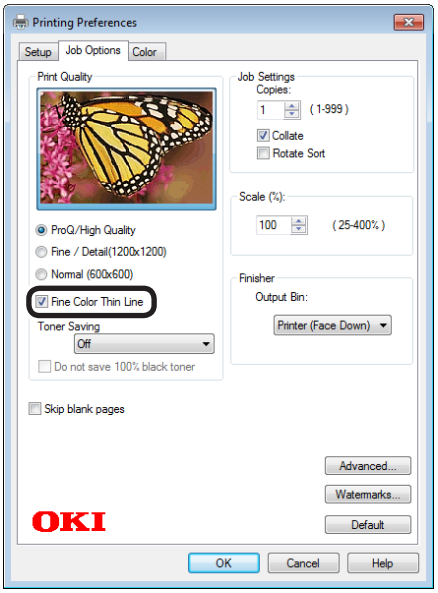
■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Fine Color Thin Line] in the [Job Options] tab, and click [OK].



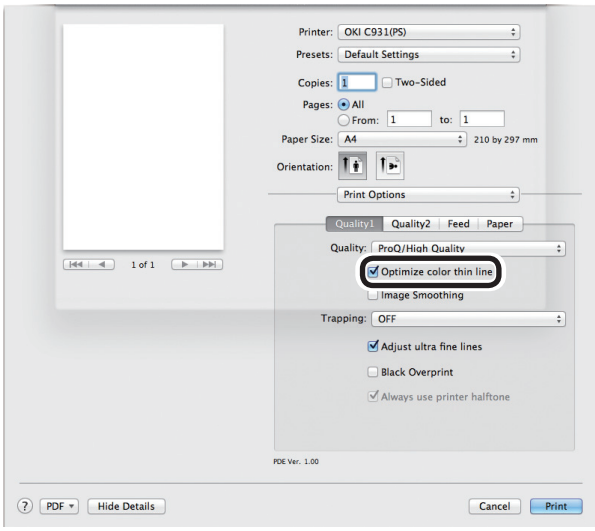
5 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Quality 1] in the [Print Options] panel, and enable the [Optimize color thin line] check box.



4 Printing will be implemented.

Compensating fine lines

You can prevent misaligned lines being printed when ultra-fine lines are specified from the application. This function is normally ON.

Memo

- Depending on the application, bar code and other intervals will narrow. In this case, turn OFF the function.

Note

- Cannot be used with Windows XPS printer drivers.

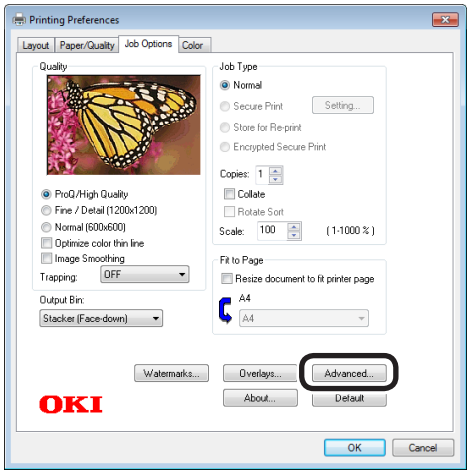
■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

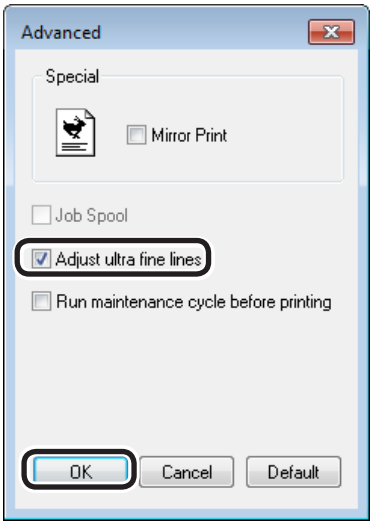
2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Click [Advanced] in the [Job Options] tab.



5 Enable the [Adjust ultra fine lines] check box, and click [OK].



6 Printing will be implemented.

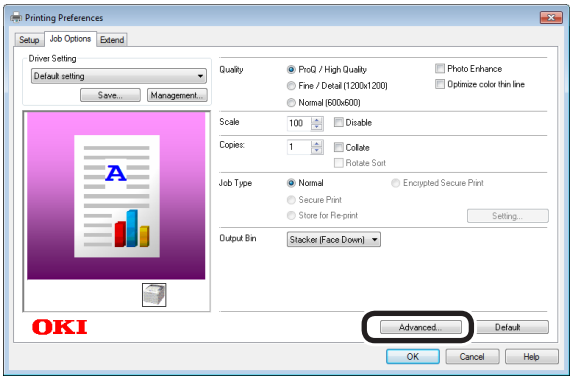
■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

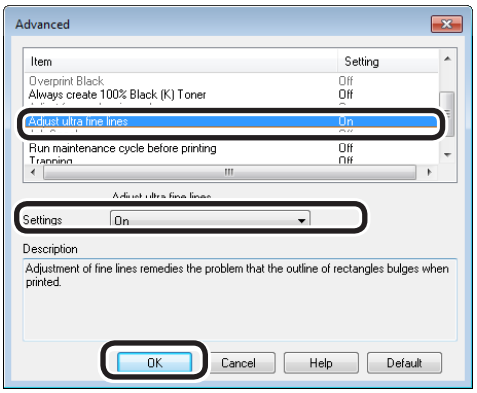
2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Click [Advanced] in the [Job Options] tab.



5 Select [Adjust ultra fine lines], and then select [On] in [Settings], and click [OK].



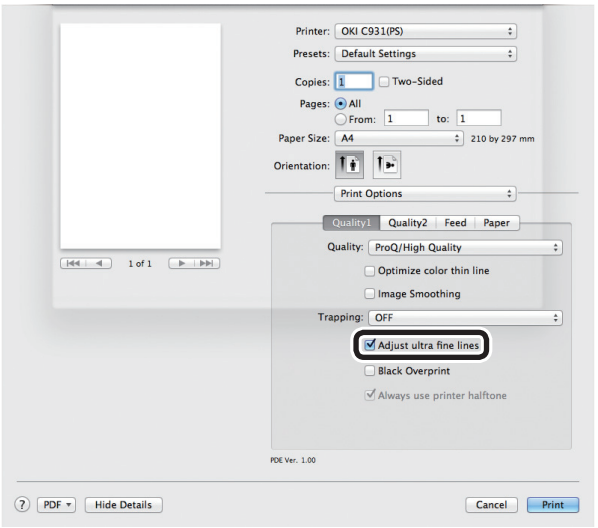
6 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Quality 1] in the [Print Options] panel, and enable the [Adjust ultra fine lines] check box.



4 Printing will be implemented.

Using printer fonts

You can print by replacing the TrueType fonts with the fonts stored in the device.

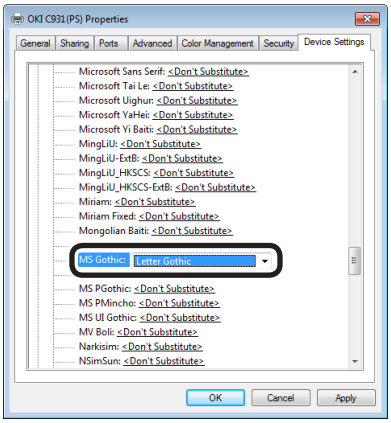
Note

- The font replacement function stores the document fonts, but font designs cannot be reproduced. If it is necessary to print font designs accurately, disable the font replacement function.
- Some of the applications that use unique printer drivers cannot use the font replacement function easily.
- If using Windows PS printer drivers, PC administrator privileges are required.
- Cannot be used with Windows XPS and Mac OS X printer drivers.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1. Click [Start], and then select [Devices and Printers].
2. Right-click the [OKI (product name) (PS)] icon, and select [Printer Properties].
3. Select the [Device Settings] tab.
4. Specify the printer font to be used instead of TrueType fonts in [Font Substitution Table].

   To specify a font, click the TrueType font, and select the replacement printer font from the drop-down list.



5. Click [OK].
6. Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
7. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
8. Click [Advanced] in the [Layout] tab.
9. Select [Substitute with Device Font] in [TrueType Font].
10. Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

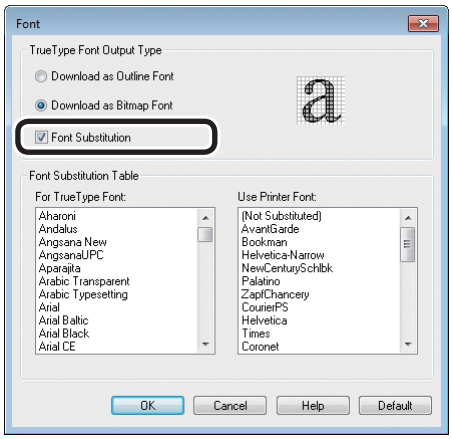
1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Click [Fonts] in the [Extend] tab.

5 Enable the [Font Substitution] check box in the [Font] screen.



6 Specify the printer font to replace the TrueType font in [Font Substitution Table].

7 Printing will be implemented.

Using PC fonts

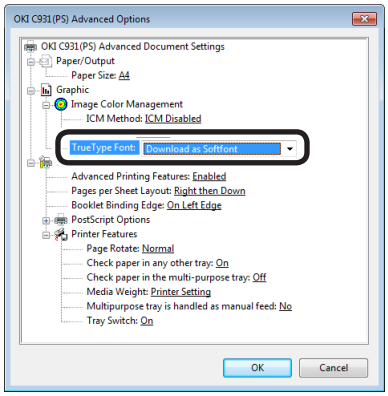
You can output TrueType fonts to the screen display as is.

Note

- Print time may be longer.
- Cannot be used with Windows XPS and Mac OS X printer drivers.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Click [Advanced] in the [Layout] tab.
5. Select [Download as Softfont] in [TrueType Font].

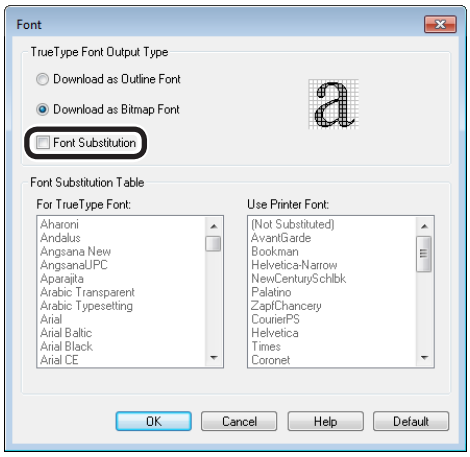


6. Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Click [Font] in the [Extend] tab.
5. Disable the [Font Substitution] check box in the [Font] screen.

- Download as outline font
  Creates font images using the printer.
- Download as bitmap font
  Creates font images using the printer drivers.



6. Printing will be implemented.

Printing print results so that people cannot see them

Entering passwords to print (Secure Print)

You can save print jobs to the device HDD, and enter a password in the control panel to print.

To use this function, it is necessary to mount the (optional) HDD to the device.

Note

- If there is insufficient space on the option built-in HDD storing the print jobs, "File system is full" will be displayed, and printing will be disabled.
- Cannot be used with Windows XPS and Mac OS X printer drivers.

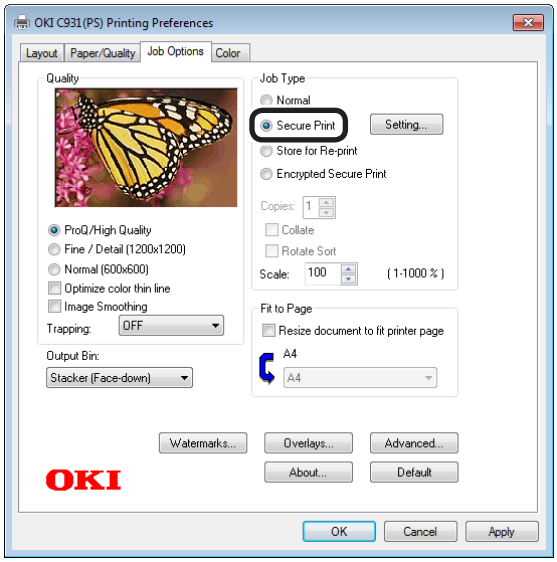
1 Open the file to be printed, and specify [Secure Print].

(1) Open the file to be printed.

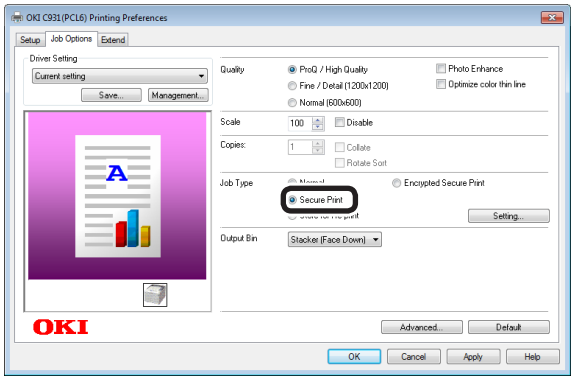
(2) Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

(3) Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

(4) If using PS printer drivers, select [Secure Print] in [Job Type] in the [Job Options] tab.
If using PCL printer drivers, select [Secure Print] in [Job Type] in the [Job Options] tab.



(Windows 7 PS printer driver screen)



(Windows 7 PCL printer driver screen)

(5) Input the "Job Name" and "Job Password" in the "JOB PIN" screen, and click [OK].

- Request Job Name for each print job

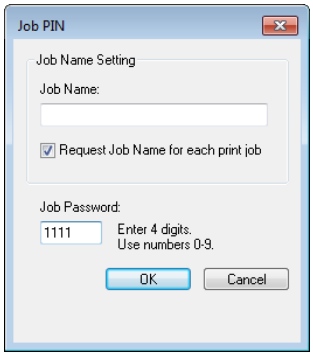
  When implementing printing, the screen to enter the job name will be displayed.

- Job Password

  Set using 4-digit figures.

- Job Name

  Set using up to 16 single-byte alphanumeric characters.



(6) Printing will be implemented.

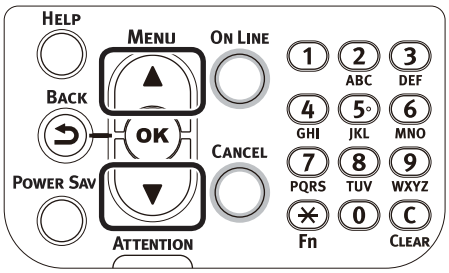
If [Request Job Name for each print job] is enabled, enter the "Job Name" in the "Enter Job Name" screen, and click [OK].

Note

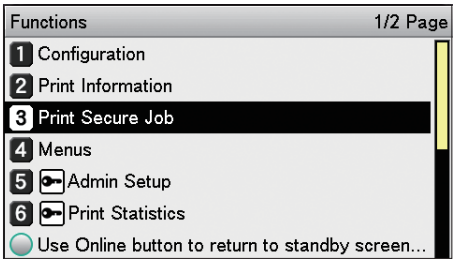
- If the user who started the secure print job has forgotten that the job exists, or has forgotten the password, the job will remain stored on the device HDD. Use the Configuration Tool to delete secure print jobs that have been left on the HDD. For details, see "Deleting unnecessary jobs from the HDD" (P.186).

2 Enter the password from the control panel to print.

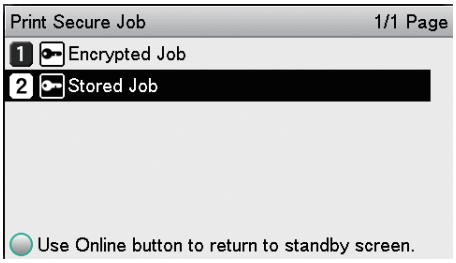
(1) Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



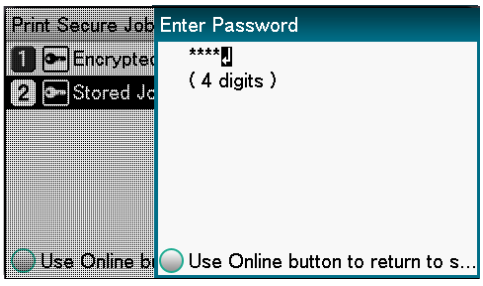
(2) Select [Print Secure Job], and press the [OK] button.



(3) Select [Stored Job], and press the [OK] button.



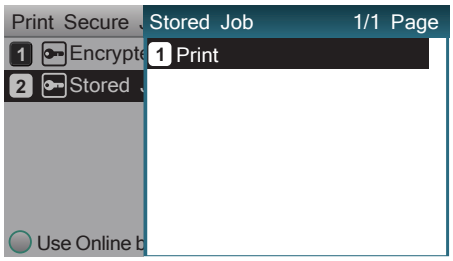
(4) Use the 10-key pad to enter the 4-digit password for the job to be printed to start the search.



Memo

- If the password is entered incorrectly, press the [BACK] button, and reset.
- Press the [CANCEL] button to cancel the search.

(5) Select [Print], and press the [OK] button.



Memo

- Select [Delete], and press the [OK] button to delete a job.

(6) Use 10-key pad or the scroll buttons ▲ or ▼ to enter the print quantity, and press the [OK] button.

Reference

- You can use the Configuration Tool to delete the secure print job. For details, see "Deleting unnecessary jobs from the HDD" (P.186).

Printing secret text (encrypted secure print)

The print job is encrypted before being sent to the device. Consequently, leaks regarding the print details can still be prevented even if print data is stolen from the HDD or the device communications process. Further, to strengthen security even more, print jobs spooled on the HDD are either printed, or deleted after a fixed period of time has elapsed.

To print, it is necessary to enter the password using the control panel, so theft of the printed matter can also be prevented.

To use this function, it is necessary to mount the (optional) HDD to the device.

Note

- Cannot be used with Windows XPS and Mac OS X printer drivers.
- If using Windows PCL printer drivers to create a print server on a shared network, and printing uses encrypted secure print from the client, printing posters and booklets will be disabled.
- If there is insufficient space on the built-in HDD storing the print jobs, "File system is full" will be displayed, and printing will be disabled.
- If using Encrypted Secure Print, disable "Job Spool". For details, see "Using the printer buffer" (P.106).
- The [Print only encrypted secure print jobs] from the [Device Settings] tab in Windows 8.1/Windows 8/Windows 7/Windows Vista/Windows Server 2012 R2/Windows Server 2012/Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows Server 2008 with Windows PS printer drivers will be disabled.

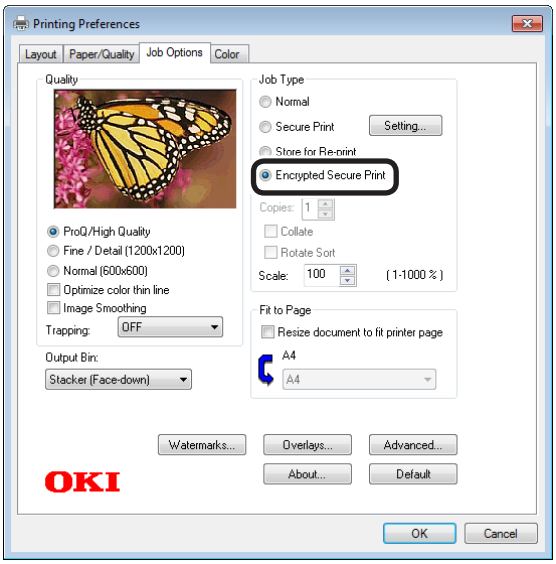
1 Open the file to be printed, and specify [Encrypted Secure Print].

(1) Open the file to be printed.

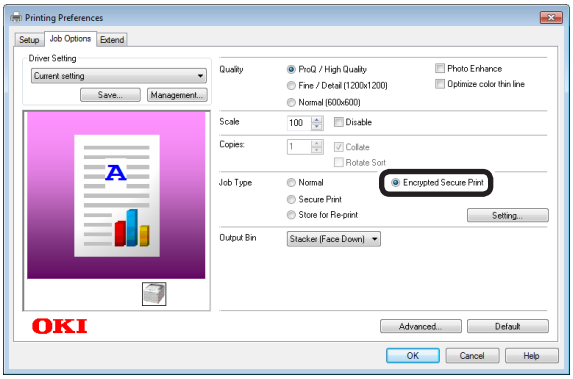
(2) Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

(3) Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

(4) If using PS printer drivers, select [Encrypted Secure Print] in [Job Type] in the [Job Options] tab.
If using PCL printer drivers, select [Encrypted Secure Print] in [Job Type] in the [Job Options] tab.

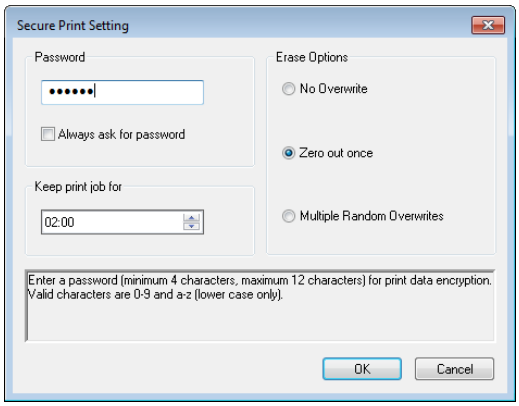


(Windows 7 PS printer driver screen)



(Windows 7 PCL printer driver screen)

(5) Input the "Password" in the "Secure Print Setting" screen, and click [OK].



(Windows 7 PS printer driver screen)

- Password

  Set using 4 to 12 alphanumeric characters.

- Always ask for password

  When implementing printing, the screen to enter the password will be displayed.

  Note

  - This check box is disabled in Windows 8.1/ Windows 8/Windows 7/Windows Vista/Windows Server 2012 R2/Windows Server 2012/Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows Server 2008. Enter the password in the "JOB PIN" screen displayed when [JOB PIN] is clicked.

- Keep print job for

  Set the period in which the print job is stored on the device HDD from 5 mins, to 23 hours 59 mins. Print jobs that exceed the storage period are deleted from the HDD automatically.

- Erase Options

  Specify the method when deleting print jobs from the HDD.

  – Easy method: Delete the print job from the file system. This deletion method risks the print job being recovered from the HDD, but it will delete in the shortest time.

  – Overwrite using 0x00: After overwriting the specified data once, the print job is deleted. This is a safer method compared to easy deletion, but there is a risk that print jobs will be recovered using special methods.

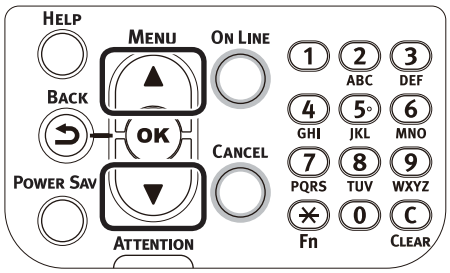
  – Overwrite 3 times: Overwrites the print job data 3 times before deleting. This is the safest deletion method, but deletion takes time.

(6) Printing will be implemented.

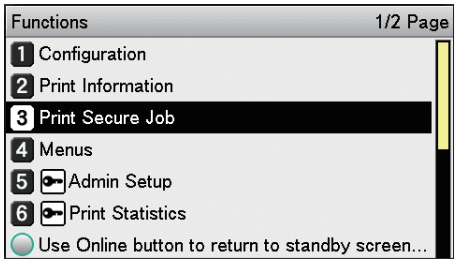
If [Always ask for password] is enabled, enter the "Password" in the "Secure Print Setting" screen, and click [OK].

2 Enter the password from the control panel to print.

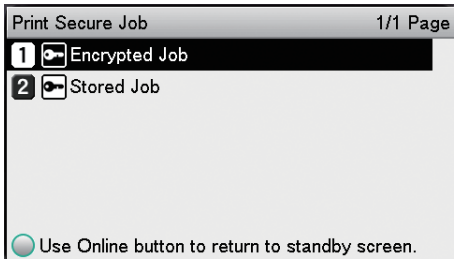
(1) Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



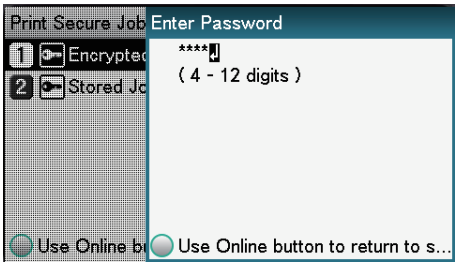
(2) Select [Print Secure Job], and press the [OK] button.



(3) Select [Encrypted Job], and press the [OK] button.



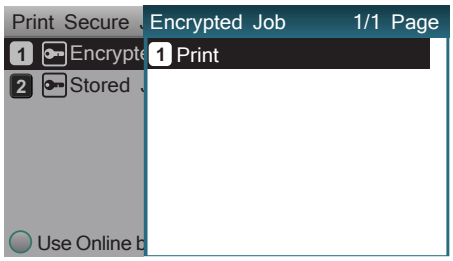
(4) Enter the print job password using either the 10-key pad or the input screen, and click the [OK] button to start the search.



Memo

- If the password is entered incorrectly, press the [BACK] button, and reset.
- Press the [CANCEL] button to cancel the search.

(5) Select [Print], and press the [OK] button.



Memo

- Select [Delete], and press the [OK] button to delete a job.
- All jobs that match the password will be printed in the order they are received by the device.

Memo

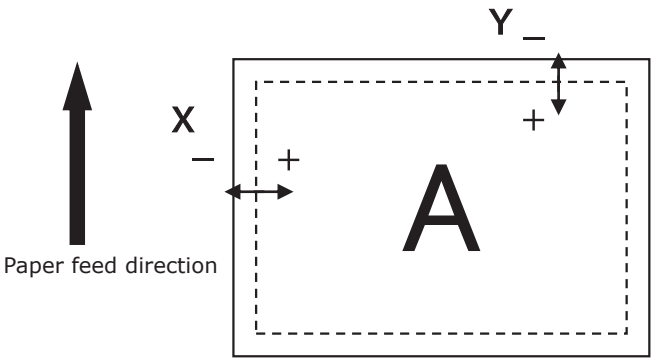
- After implementing Encrypted Secure Print, the files used in printing are deleted using the specified deletion method. While a file is being deleted, the message "Deleting Encrypted Job" will be displayed.
- If data is lost during transfer or data falsification is detected, the message [To turn off the display, press OK] will be displayed.

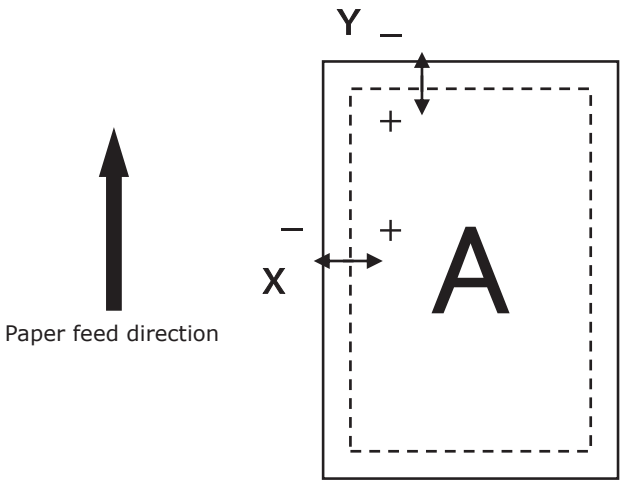
Correcting the Print Position on the Paper Using the Control Panel

Correcting the print start position

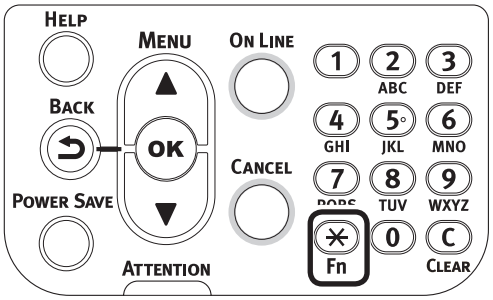
You can correct the print start position vertically and horizontally on the paper for each tray.

Please refer to the following procedure.

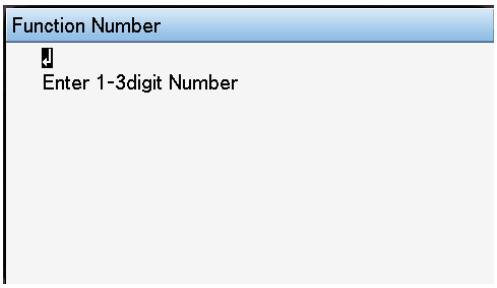




1 Press the [Fn] key.
The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



2 Press the function number of the tray you want to correct, and press the [OK] button.

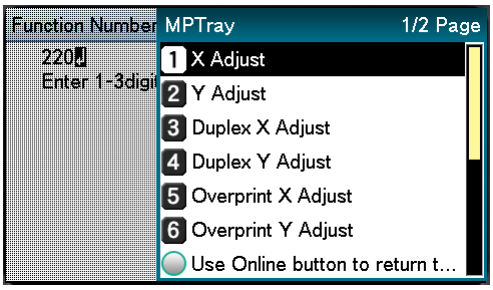


Memo

- The corresponding function numbers for each tray are listed below.

Target Tray	Function No.
MPTray	220
Tray1	221
Tray2	222
Tray3	223
Tray4	224
Tray5	225

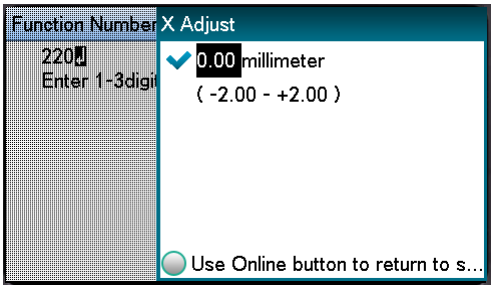
3 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼ to select the item to correct.



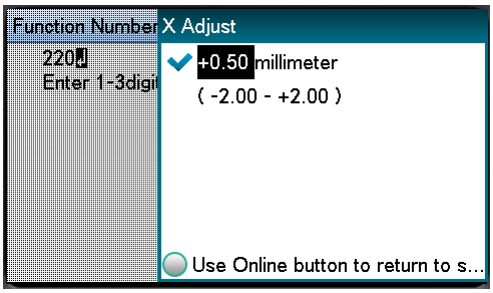
Memo

- Only C941/ES9541/Pro9541 will be displayed for [Overprint X Adjust] and [Overprint Y Adjust].

4 Press the [OK] button.



5 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼ to select the adjustment amount, and press the [OK] button. Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the selected value.



6 Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.

Note

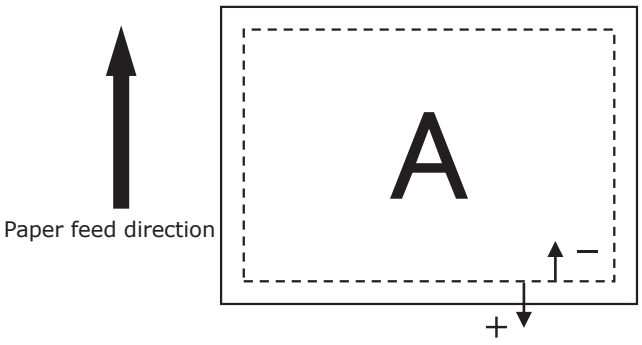
- Y describes the paper feed direction and X describes its orthogonal position.
- Correct with [+] to widen the blank space in the X direction, and [+] to widen the blank space in the Y direction.
- Readjustment might be necessary depending on the usage conditions (temperature and humidity/media type).
- This function corrects the position and does not improve the writing start position (±2mm).

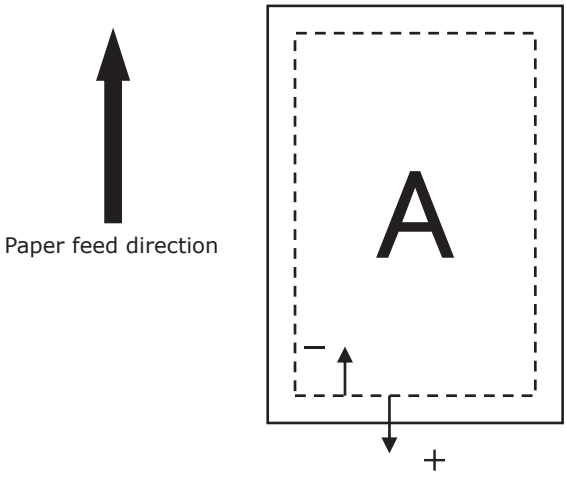
Adjusting the Image Stretch (Print Length) Using the Control Panel

Adjusting the stretch of print results

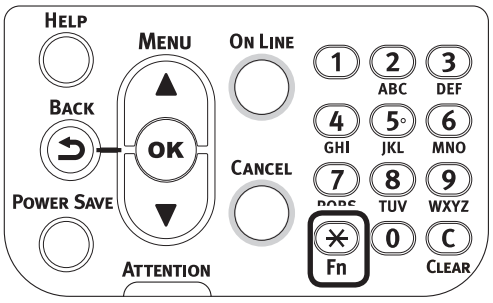
You can adjust the stretch of print results on the paper feed direction.

Please refer to the following procedure.

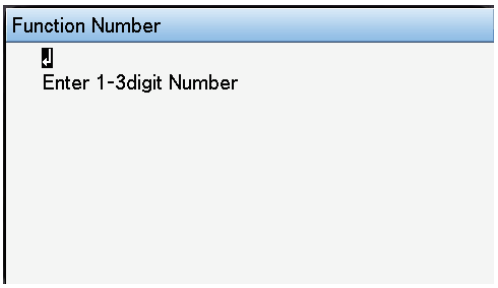




1 Press the [Fn] key.
The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



2 Press the function number of the tray you want to adjust, and press the [OK] button.

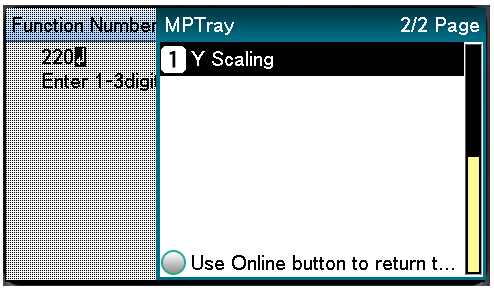


Memo

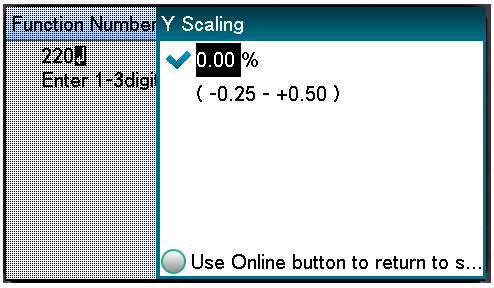
- The corresponding function numbers for each tray are listed below.

Tray	Function No.
MPTray	220
Tray1	221
Tray2	222
Tray3	223
Tray4	224
Tray5	225

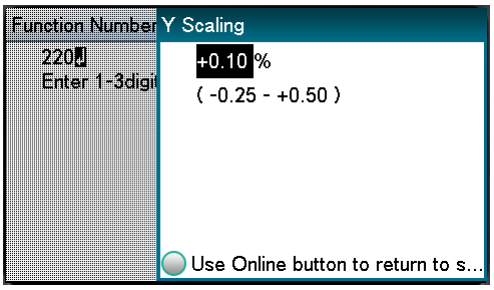
3 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼ to select [Y Scaling].



4 Press the [OK] button.



5 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼ to select the adjustment amount, and press the [OK] button. Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the selected value.



6 Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.

Note

- Adjust with [+] to enlarge the print result on the feed direction of the paper and [-] to reduce.
- Refer to "Correcting the print start position" (P.81) for correcting the print start position of the paper edge.
- Readjustment might be necessary depending on the usage conditions (temperature and humidity/media type).
- This function adjusts the scale of image and does not improve the image scale precision (±1mm/100mm).
- Over-enlarging the print result may stain the back of the paper.

Advanced print functions

Setting the page order

Extracts in page order when printing documents with multiple pages.

There are two methods.

Printing documents in page order

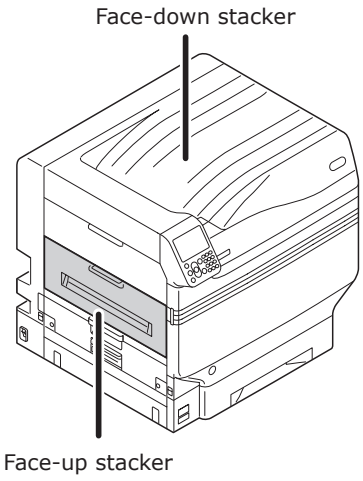
The printed documents are output face-down.

1 Open the document to be printed.

2 Specify the face-down stacker as the Output Bin to print.

Note

- For paper weights with GSM 320 to 360g/m^2 (ream weight 275 to 310kg), custom size paper with a length less than 147mm, envelopes, labels, and transparencies, make sure to open the face-up stacker and output the documents face-up.



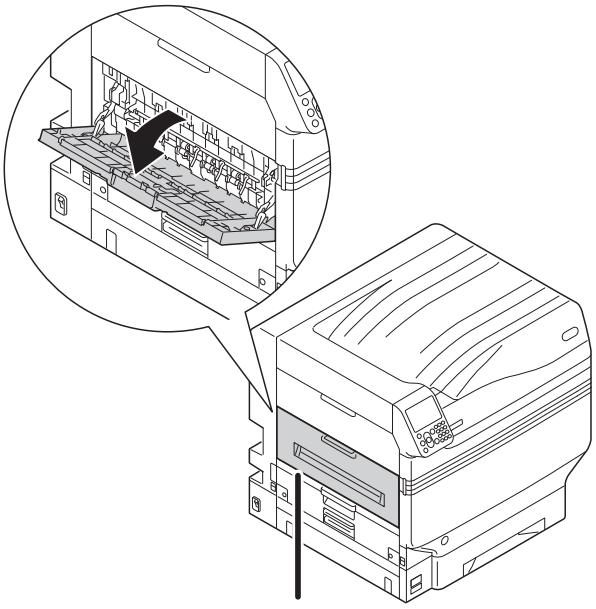
Printing documents in reverse page order

The printed documents are output face-up.

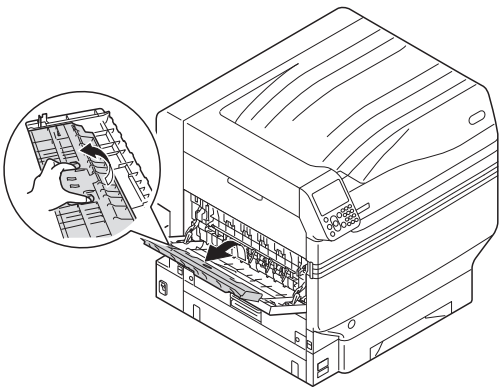
Note

- Cannot be used with Windows PCL and Windows XPS printer drivers.

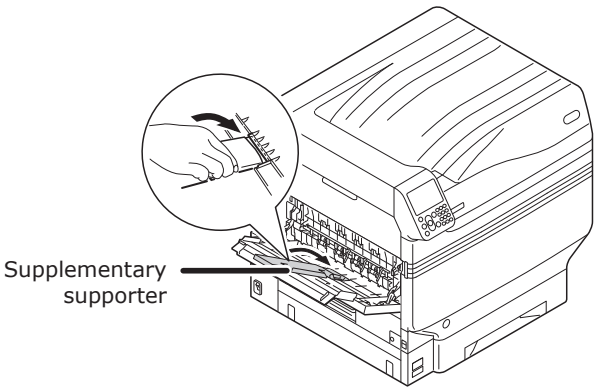
1 Open the face-up stacker at the back of the device.



2 Open the paper supporter.



3 Rotate the auxiliary supporter in the direction of the arrow into the lock position.



■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

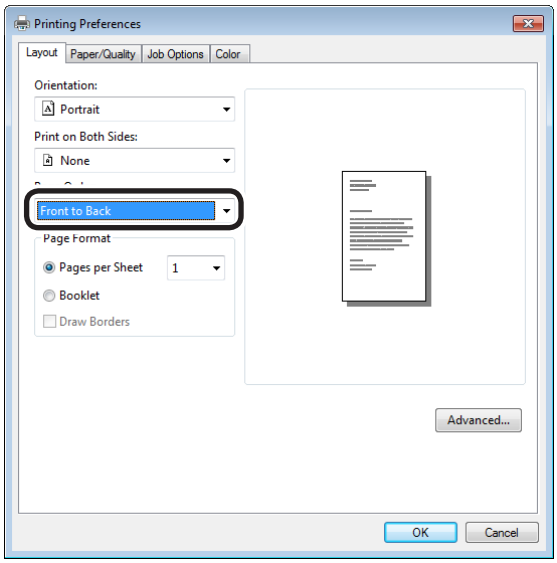
1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Stacker (Face-up)] in [Output Bin] in the [Job Options] tab.

5 Select [Front to Back] in [Page Order] in the [Layout] tab.



6 Printing will be implemented.

Note

- If the [Page Order] item is not displayed, right-click the [OKI (printer name) (PS)] in the [Devices and Printers] folder, and enable [Enable advanced printing features] in [Printer Properties]>[Advanced] tab.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

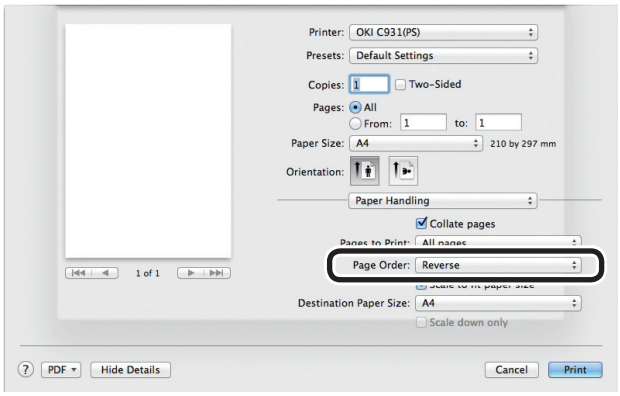
1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click the [Paper] button on the [Print Options] panel.

4 Select [Stacker (Face-up)] in [Output Bin].

5 Select [Reverse] in [Page Order] in the [Paper Handling] panel.



6 Printing will be implemented.

Printing single sheets manually

You can print single pages individually by setting the paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray. A message to set the paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray will be displayed on the control panel screen for each page to be printed. To continue printing, select [Restart print].

1 Set the paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray.

2 Open the file to be printed.

3 Set the manual printing using the printer drivers, and press the [OK] button on the control panel to print.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

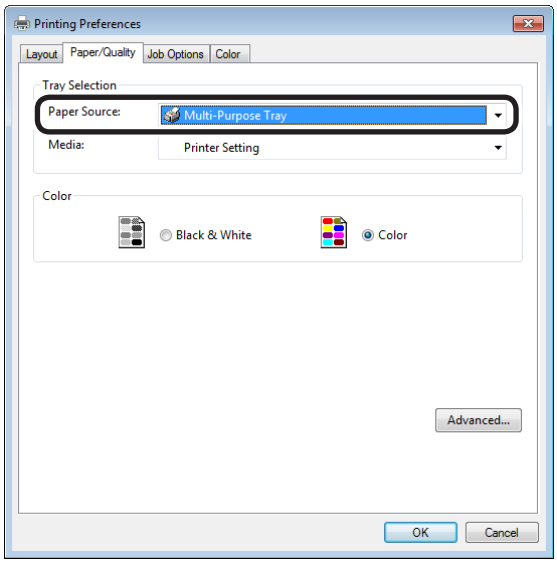
1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

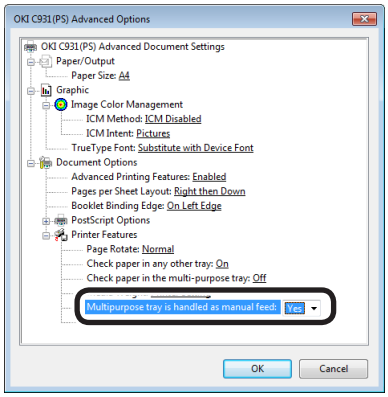
4 Select the [Paper/Quality] tab.

5 Select [Multi-Purpose Tray] from [Paper Source].



6 Click [Advanced].

7 Click [Multipurpose tray is handled as manual feed], and select [Yes] from the drop-down list.



8 Click [OK].

9 Make other settings as necessary to print.

10 When a message to set the paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray is displayed in the control panel LCD, set a single sheet, and press the [OK] button.

When printing multiple-page documents, the same message will be displayed for each page.

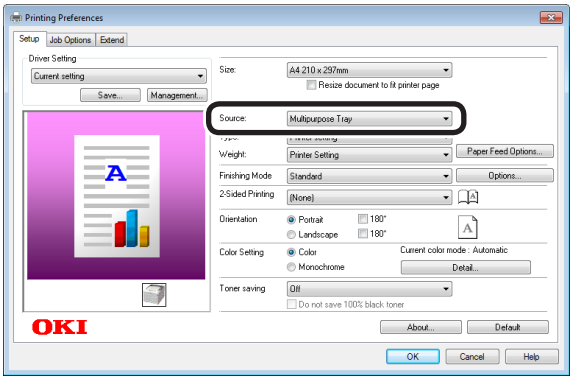
■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

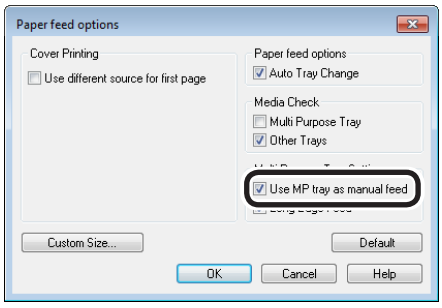
3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Multipurpose Tray] from [Source] in the [Setup] tab.



5 Click [Paper Feed Options].

6 Enable [Use MP tray as manual feed] in [Multi Purpose Tray Settings], click [OK].



7 Make other settings as necessary to print.

8 When a message to set the paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray is displayed in the control panel LCD, set a single sheet, and press the [OK] button.

When printing multiple-page documents, the same message will be displayed for each page.

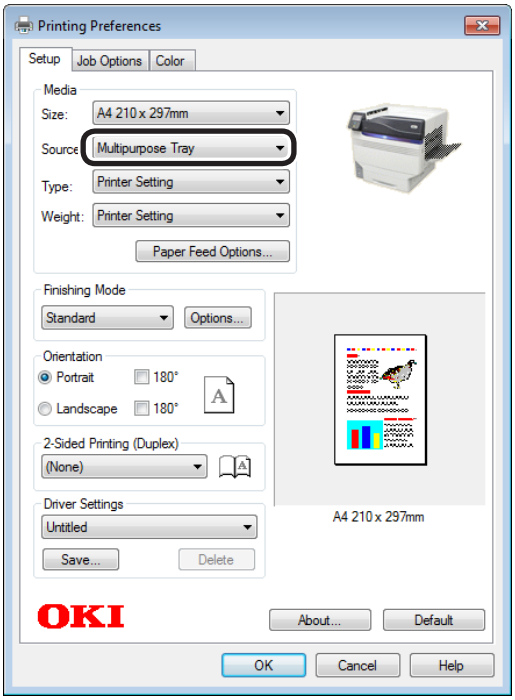
■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

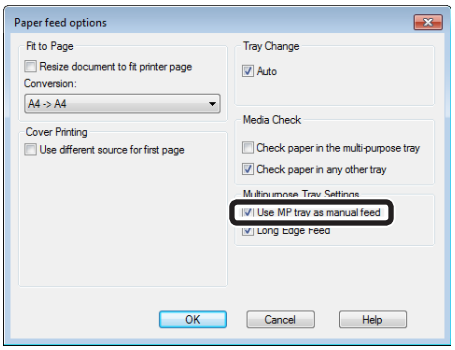
3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Multipurpose Tray] from [Source] in the [Setup] tab.



5 Click [Paper Feed Options].

6 Enable [Use MP tray as manual feed] in [Multipurpose Tray Settings], click [OK].



7 Make other settings as necessary to print.

8 When a message to set the paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray is displayed in the control panel LCD, set a single sheet, and press the [OK] button.

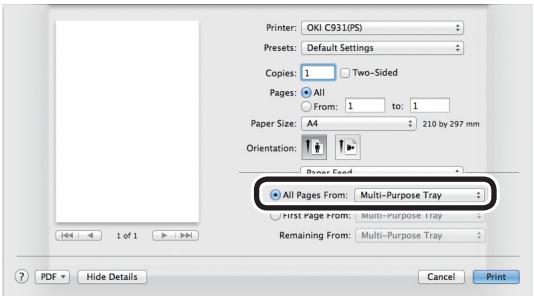
When printing multiple-page documents, the same message will be displayed for each page.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

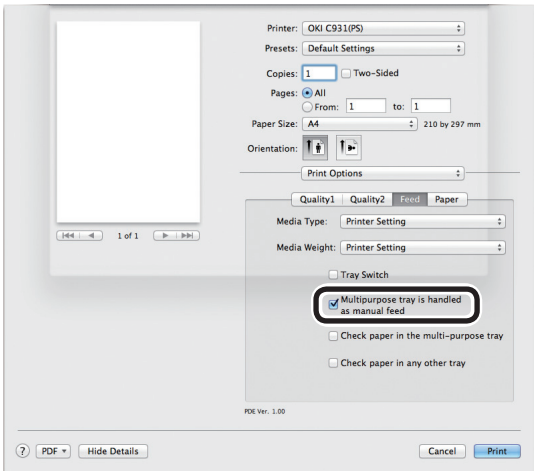
1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Open the [Paper Feed] panel, and select [Multi-Purpose Tray] in [All Pages From].



4 Click the [Feed] button in the [Print Options] panel, and enable [Multipurpose tray is handled as manual feed].



5 Make other settings as necessary to print.

6 When a message to set the paper in the Multi-Purpose Tray is displayed in the control panel LCD, set a single sheet, and press the [OK] button.

When printing multiple-page documents, the same message will be displayed for each page.

Automatically selecting trays

The tray matching the paper size set using the printer drivers (tray 1, (optional) trays 2 to 5, or Multi-Purpose Tray) will be selected automatically for printing.

Note

- Set the paper size and paper type for tray 1, (optional) trays 2 to 5, and the Multi-Purpose Tray using the control panel. For detailed, see "Setting paper" in "Basic".

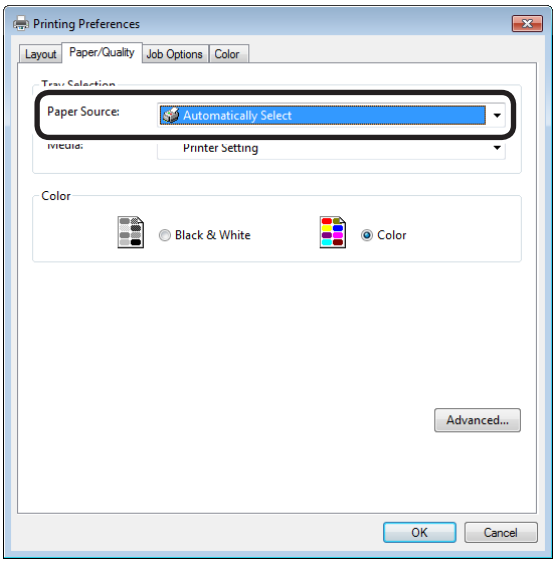
■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Automatically Select] in [Paper Source] in the [Paper/Quality] tab.



5 Printing will be implemented.

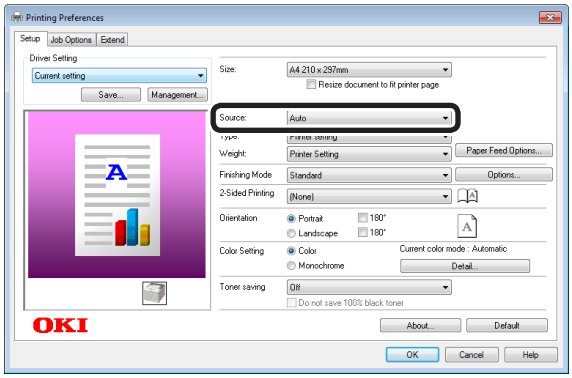
■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Auto] in [Source] in the [Setup] tab.



5 Printing will be implemented.

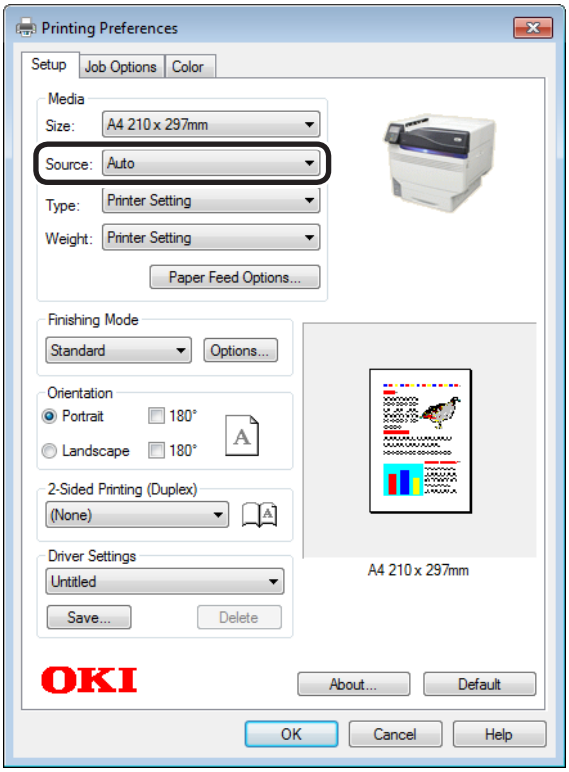
■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Auto] in [Source] in the [Setup] tab.



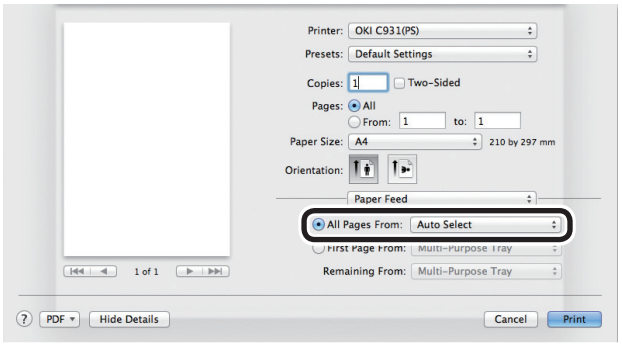
5 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Select [Auto Select] in [All Pages From] in the [Paper Feed] panel.



4 Printing will be implemented.

Printing only covers from a separate tray (cover printing)

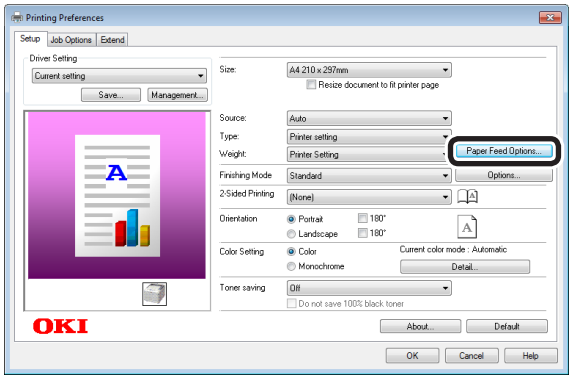
When printing multiple-page documents, you can print just the 1st page from a separate tray. Use to create covers by changing the paper color and weight of the 1st page.

Note

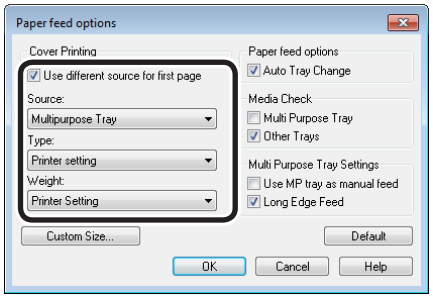
- Cannot be used with Windows PS printer drivers.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Click [Paper Feed Options] in the [Setup] tab.



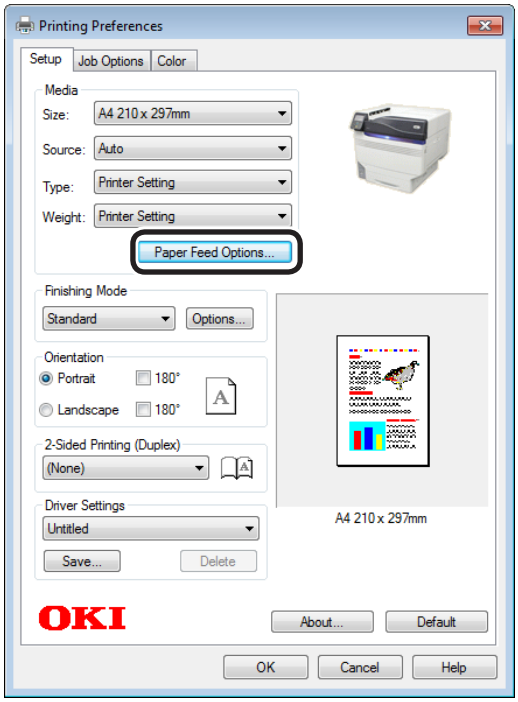
5. Enable the [Use different source for first page] in [Cover Printing], and select the paper feed method for the 1st page from [Paper feed options]. Set the paper type and paper weight as necessary, and click [OK].



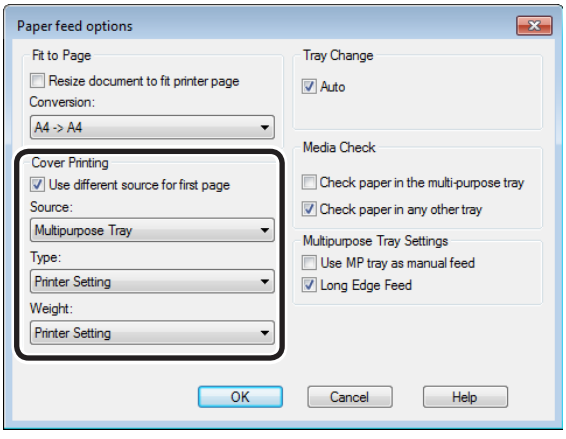
6. Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Click [Paper Feed Options] in the [Setup] tab.



5. Enable the [Use different source for first page] in [Cover Printing], and select the paper feed method for the 1st page from [Paper feed options]. Set the [Type] and [Weight] as necessary.



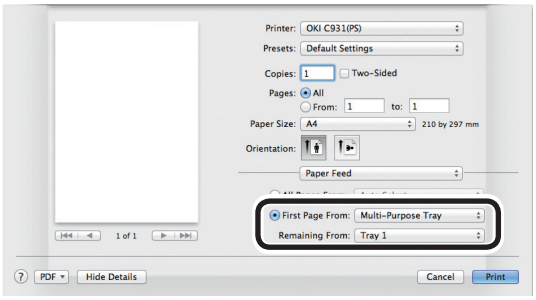
6. Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

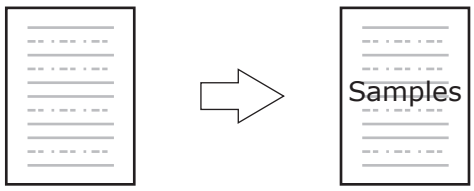
3 Enable the [First Page From] in the [Paper Feed] panel, and select each paper feed method from [First Page From] and [Remaining From].



4 Printing will be implemented.

Stamping and printing (watermarks)

The details to be printed from the application can be independently printed overlaying [Samples], [Confidential], etc.



Note

- Cannot be used with Mac OS X printer drivers.
- Watermarks cannot be printed correctly when using pamphlet printing.

■ Using Windows printer drivers

Note

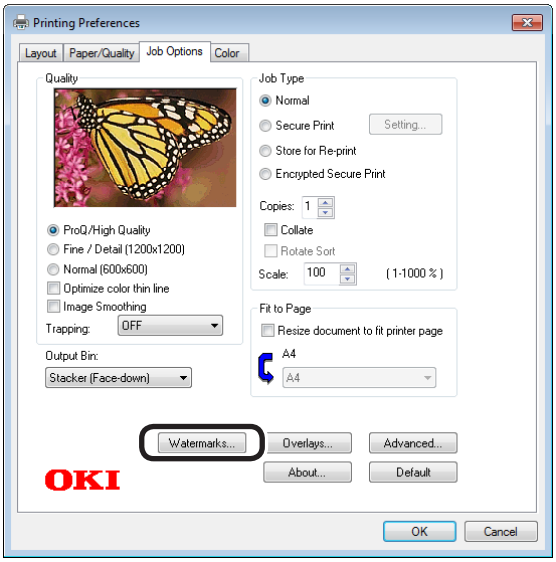
- With PS printer drivers, the default settings print by overlaying watermarks on the text and diagrams in the document. To print watermarks under the text and diagrams, enable the [Background] check box in the [Watermarks] dialog box.
- Enable the [Background] check box to not print watermarks depending on the application. In this case, disable the [background] check box.

1 Open the file to be printed.

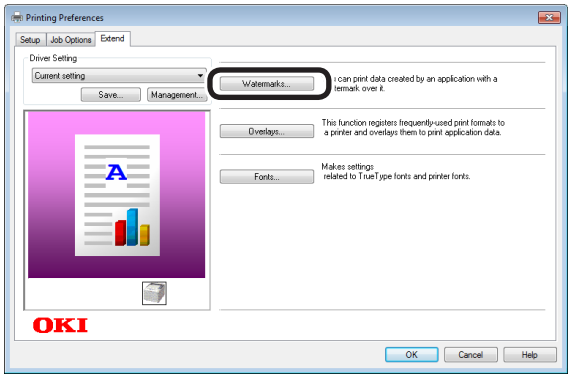
2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

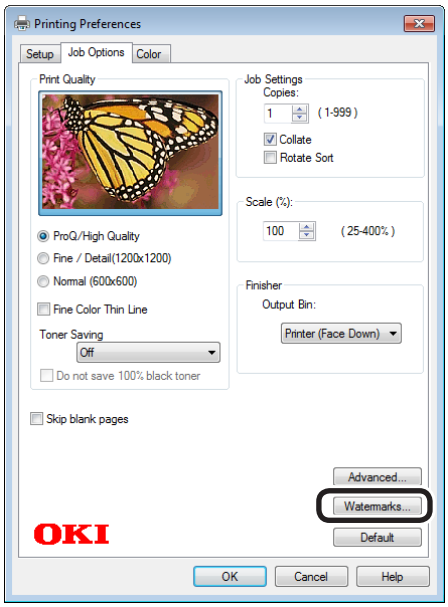
4 If using PS or XPS printer drivers, click [Watermarks] in the [Job Options] tab. If using PCL printer drivers, select [Watermarks] in [Extend] tab.



(Windows 7 PS printer driver screen)

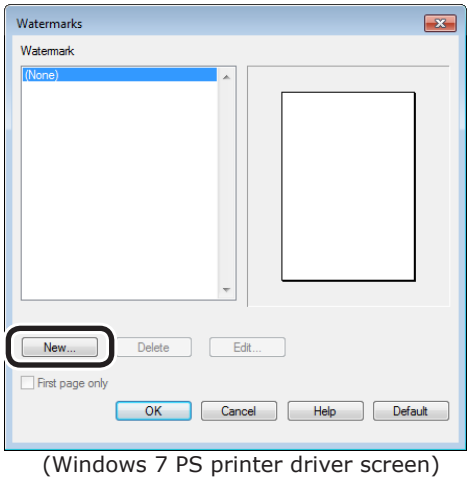


(Windows 7 PCL printer driver screen)



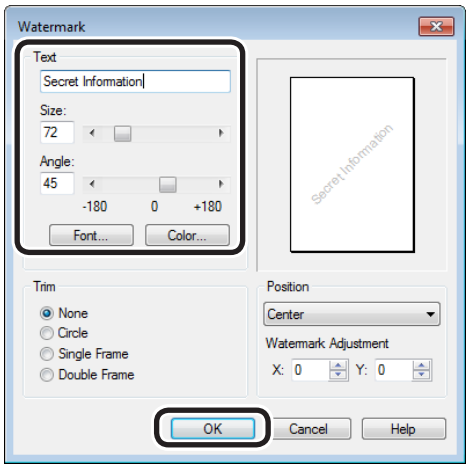
(Windows 7 XPS printer driver screen)

5 Click [New].



(Windows 7 PS printer driver screen)

6 Enter [Text] in the "Watermarks" screen, and set another [Size].



(Windows 7 PS printer driver screen)

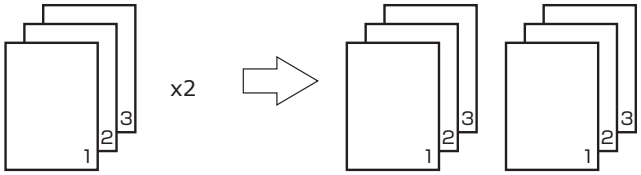
7 Click [OK].

8 Printing will be implemented.

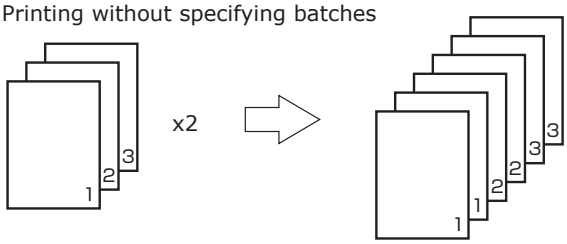
Collate (sort printing)

You can store print jobs in the device memory and collate the printing.

Printing by specifying batches



Printing without specifying batches



Note

- Not usable with some applications.

■ Using Windows printer drivers

Note

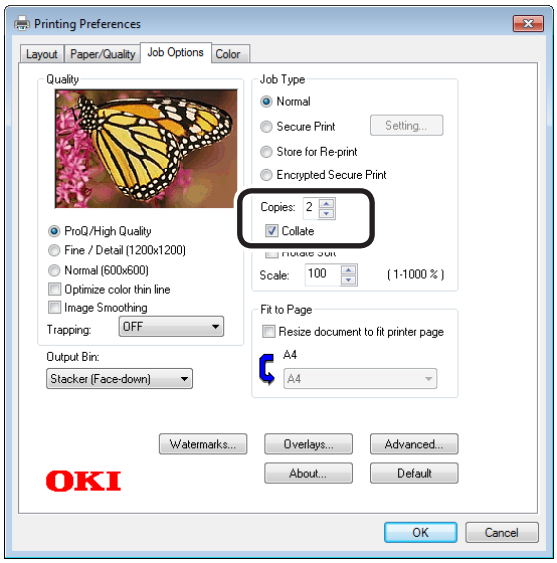
- If using PS printer drivers, turn OFF the batch printing function in the application.

1 Open the file to be printed.

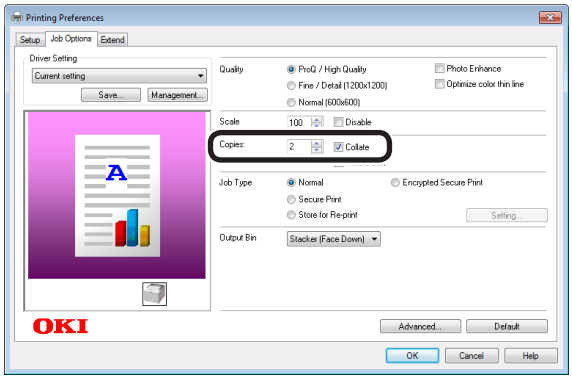
2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

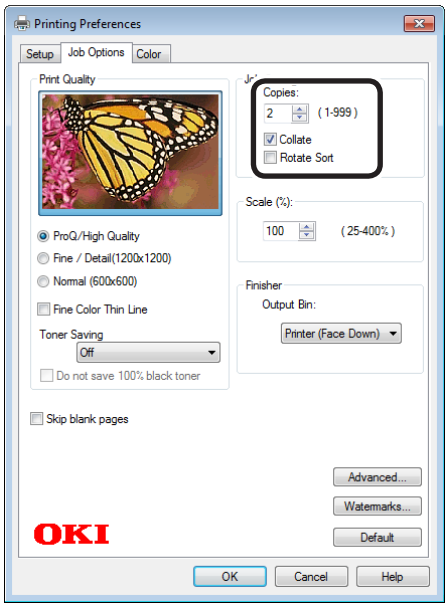
4 If using PS or XPS printer drivers, enter the print quantity in [Copies] in the [Job Options] tab, and enable the [Collate] check box.
If using PCL printer drivers, enter the print quantity in [Copies] in the [Job Options] tab, and enable the [Collate] check box.



(Windows 7 PS printer driver screen)



(Windows 7 PCL printer driver screen)



(Windows 7 XPS printer driver screen)

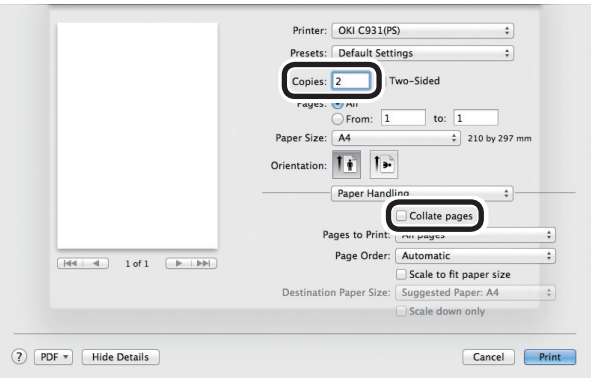
5 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

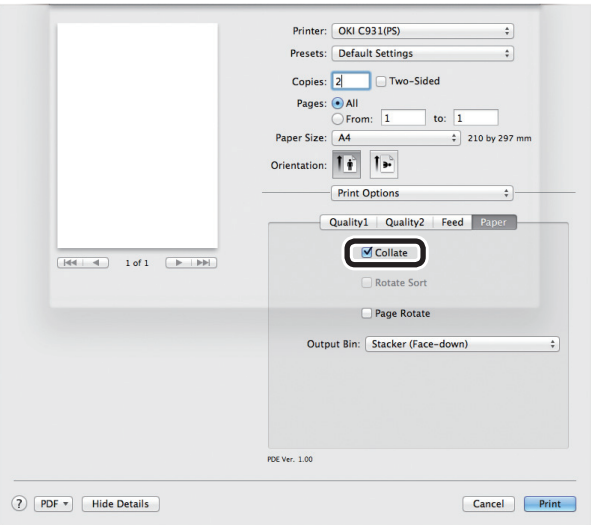
1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Disable [Collate pages] in the [Paper Handling] panel or print dialog box, and enter the print quantity in [Copies].



4 Click the [Paper] button in the [Print Options] panel, and enable the [Collate] check box.



Memo

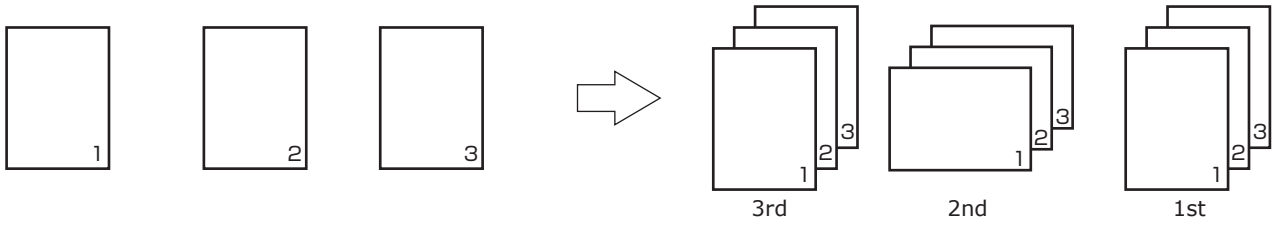
- If [Collate pages] is enabled in the [Print Handling] panel, do not use the device memory when printing.

5 Printing will be implemented.

Outputting portrait and landscape alternately using batch printing

When outputting for each batch, you can output the pages in portrait and landscape orientations alternately.

As you can output portrait and landscape alternately, it is easy to arrange print jobs with multiple pages.



Memo

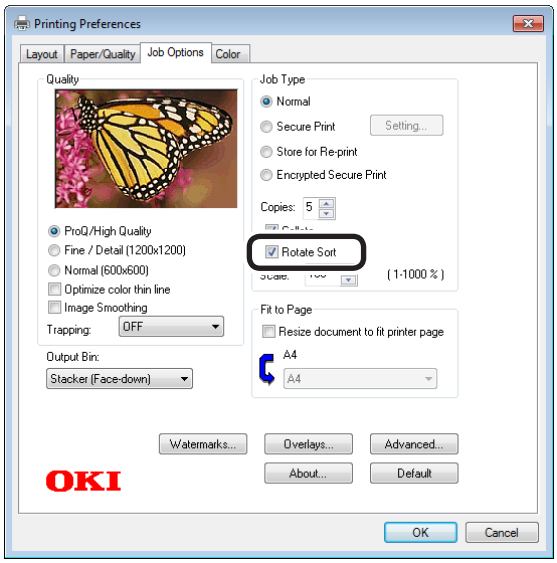
- To use the portrait and landscape output function, it is necessary to mount the (optional) HDD to the device.
- Prepare the paper for portrait and landscape in the paper feed tray beforehand.
- The usable paper sizes are described below.
  - A4Wide, A4, A5, B5, letter, 16K (184 x 260mm), 16K (195 x 270mm), 16K (197 x 273mm)

Note

- Cannot be used with Mac OS X 10.4.11 or earlier printer drivers.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

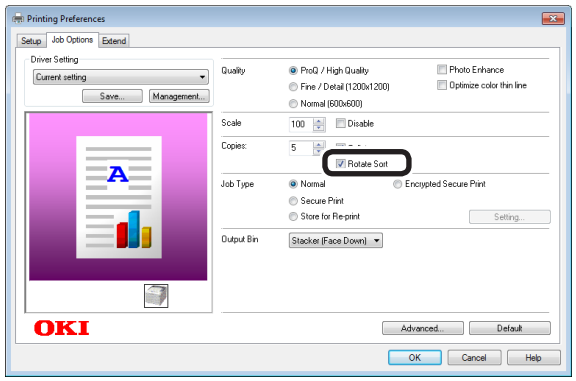
1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Enter the print quantity in [Copies] in [Job Options], and enable the [Collate] check box.
5. Enable the [Rotate Sort] check box.



6. Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Enter the print quantity in [Copies] in the [Job Options] tab, and enable the [Collate] check box.
5. Enable the [Rotate Sort] check box.



6. Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

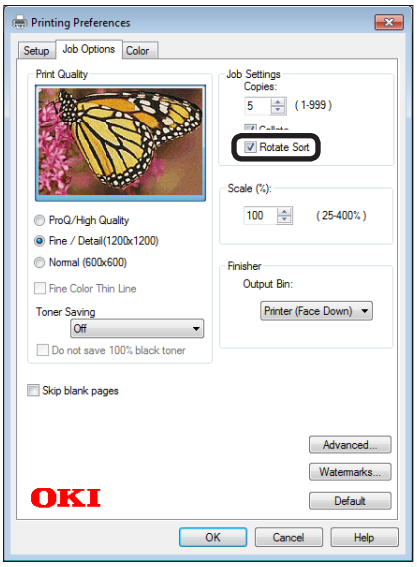
1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Enter the print quantity in [Copies] in [Job Options], and enable the [Collate] check box.

5 Enable the [Rotate Sort] check box.



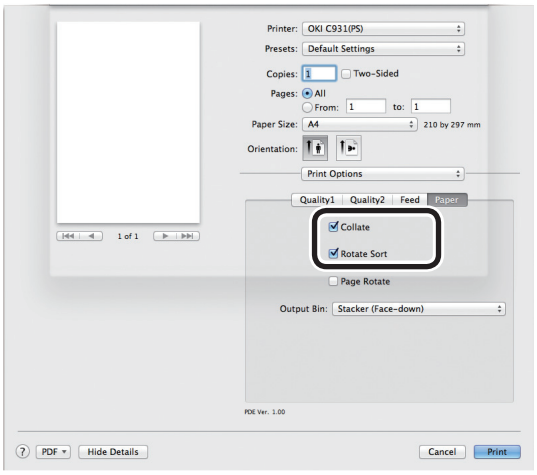
6 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Enter the print quantity in the print quantity, and then click the [Paper] button in the [Print Options] panel, and enable the [Collate] and [Rotate Sort] check boxes.



4 Printing will be implemented.

Saving data for repeat printing

You can save print data to the device HDD, and enter a password in the control panel to repeat printing several times.

Note

- If there is insufficient space on the built-in HDD storing the print jobs, "File system is full" will be displayed, and printing will be disabled.
- Cannot be used with Windows XPS and Mac OS X printer drivers.

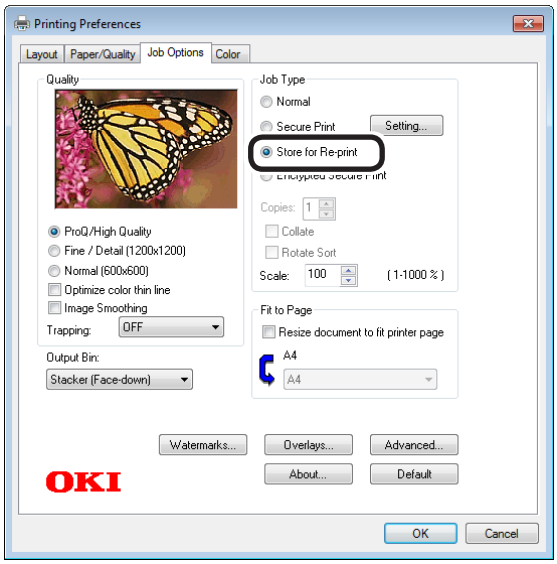
1 Save the job to the printer.

(1) Open the file to be printed.

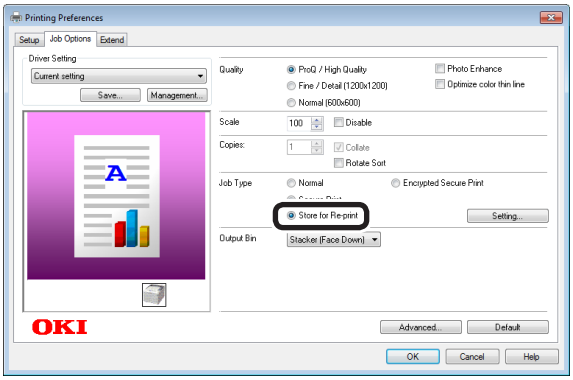
(2) Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

(3) Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

(4) If using PS printer drivers, select [Store for Re-print] in [Job Type] in the [Job Options] tab. If using PCL printer drivers, select [Store for Re-print] in [Job Type] in the [Job Options] tab.



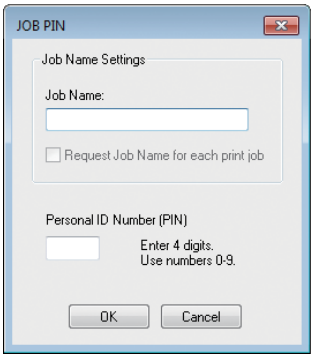
(Windows 7 PS printer driver screen)



(Windows 7 PCL printer driver screen)

(5) Input the "Job Name" and "Personal ID Number" in the "JOB PIN" screen, and click [OK].

- Request Job Name for each job
  When printing is implemented, a screen to enter the job name will be displayed.
- Personal ID Number
  Set using 4 digits.
- Job Name
  Set using up to 16 single-byte alphanumeric characters.

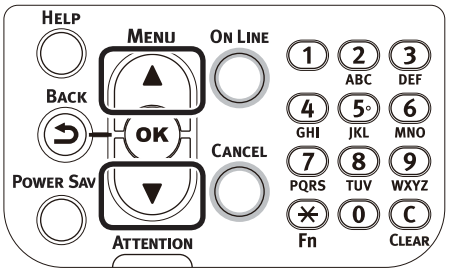


(6) Printing will be implemented.

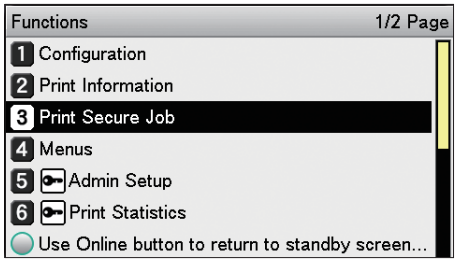
If [Request Job Name for each print job] is enabled, enter the "Job Name" in the "Job PIN" screen, and click [OK].

2 Enter the password to print.

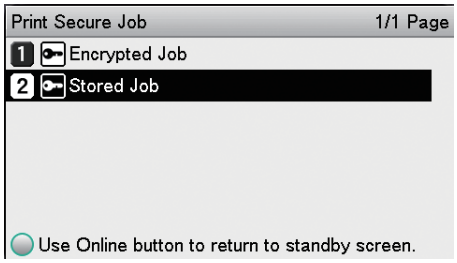
(1) Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



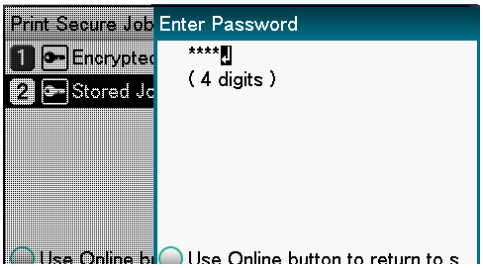
(2) Select [Print Secure Job], and press the [OK] button.



(3) Select [Stored Job], and press the [OK] button.



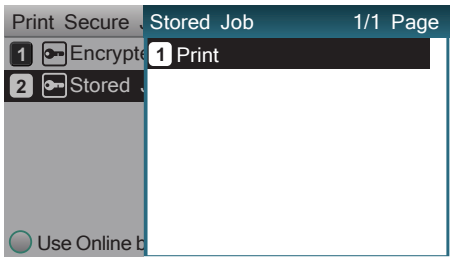
(4) Use the 10-key pad to enter the 4-digit password for the job to be printed to start the search.



Memo

- If the password is entered incorrectly, press the [BACK] button, and reset.

(5) Select [Print], and press the [OK] button.



Memo

- Select [Delete], and press the [OK] button to delete a job.

(6) Use 10-key pad or the scroll buttons ▲ or ▼ to enter the print quantity, and press the [OK] button.

Reference

- You can use the Configuration Tool to delete the secure print job. For details, see "Deleting unnecessary jobs from the HDD" (P.186).

Printing using registered forms (overlay printing)

You can register forms, logos, etc., as forms to the device, and overlay for printing.

Note

- Cannot be used with Windows XPS and Mac OS X printer drivers.
- For how to set up the Configuration Tool, see "Configuration Tool" (P.180).
- If using Windows PS printer drivers, PC administrator privileges are required.

Memo

- Overlay is the form group. You can register 3 forms to 1 overlay. Forms and overlays are overlaid in the order of registration.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1 Create and register the form to the device.

For details, see "Registering forms (form overlay)" (P.185).

2 Register the form to the printer drivers to print.

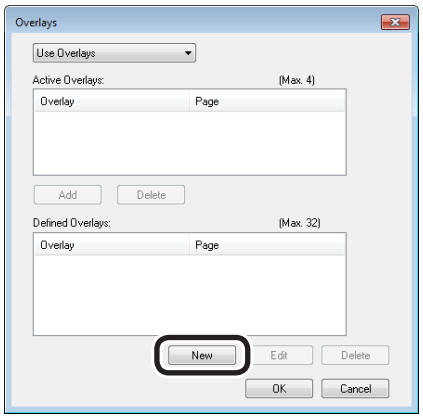
(1) Click [Start], and then select [Devices and Printers].

(2) Right-click the [OKI (product name) (PS)] icon, and select [Printing Preferences]>[OKI (product name) (PS)].

(3) Select the [Job Options] tab.

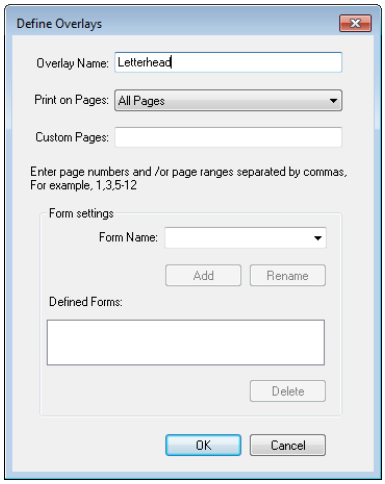
(4) Click [Overlays].

(5) Select [Use Overlays] from the drop-down list, and click [New].



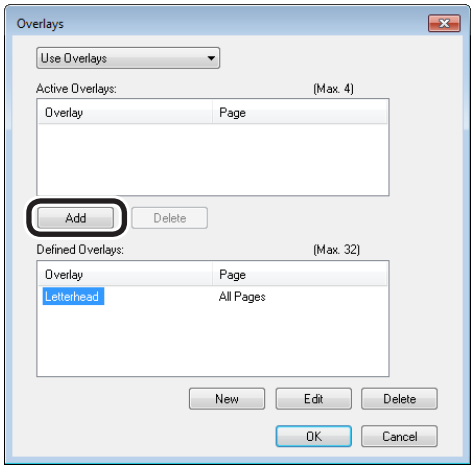
(6) Enter the form name registered using the Configuration Tool in [Form Name], and click [Add].

(7) Enter the [Overlay Name], and select the page to which the overlay will be applied using [Print on Pages]. If specifying the page to be applied, select "Form Name", and enter the pages for application in [Custom Pages].



(8) Click [OK].

(9) Select the overlay to be used from the [Defined Overlays] list, and click [Add].



(10) Click [OK].

(11) Click [OK] to close the print setup dialog box.

(12) Open the file to be printed from the application.

(13) Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Create and register the form to the device.

For details, see "Registering forms (form overlay)" (P.185).

2 Register the form to the printer drivers to print.

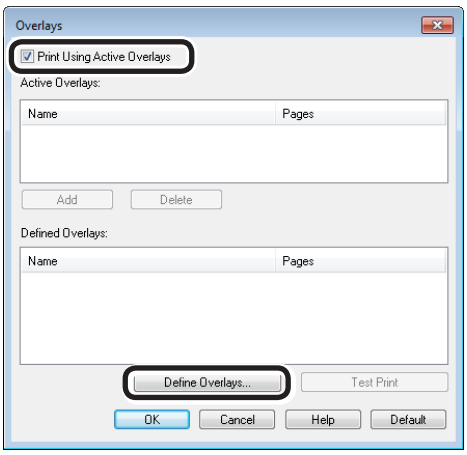
(1) Open the file to be printed.

(2) Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

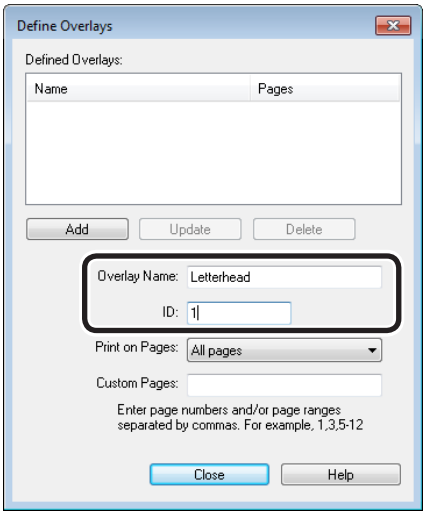
(3) Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

(4) Click [Overlays] in the [Advanced] tab.

(5) Enable [Print Using Active Overlays] in the [Overlays] screen, and click [Define Overlays].



(6) Enter the [Overlay Name], and enter the form ID registered using the Configuration Tool in [ID].

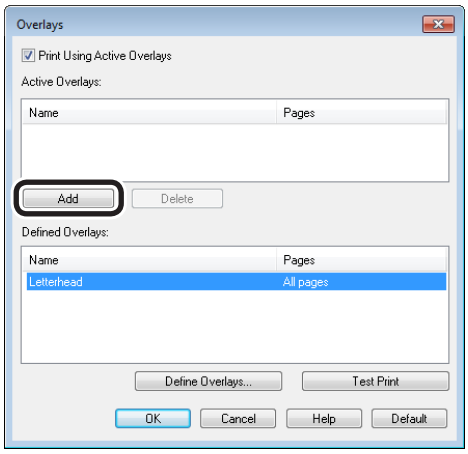


(7) Select the page to which the overlay will be applied using [Print on Pages]. If specifying the page to be applied, select "Custom", and enter the pages for application in [Custom Pages].

(8) Click [Add].

(9) Click [Close].

(10) Select the overlay to be used in printing from the defined overlays, and click [Add].



(11) Printing will be implemented.

Automatically switching trays

If the same paper is set in tray 1, (optional) trays 2 to 5, and the Multi-Purpose Tray, you can print continuously from other trays if paper in the current print tray runs out.

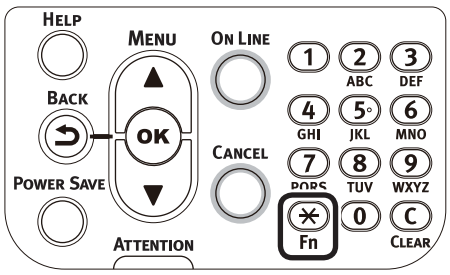
Note

- Match the paper tray paper weight, paper type, and the Multi-Purpose Tray paper size, paper weight, and paper type using the control panel. For detailed, see "Setting Paper" in "Basic".

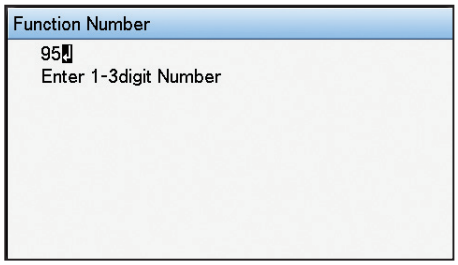
1 Set how to use the Multi-Purpose Tray using the control panel.

(1) Press the [Fn] key.

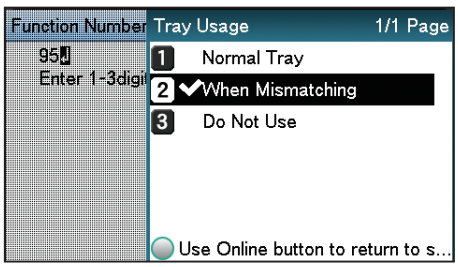
The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



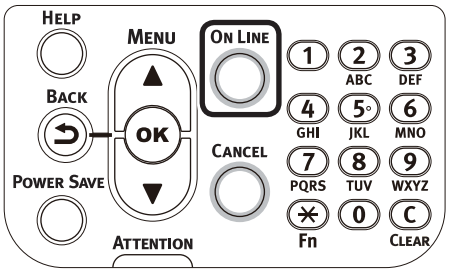
(2) Press functions numbers [9], [5], and press the [OK] button.

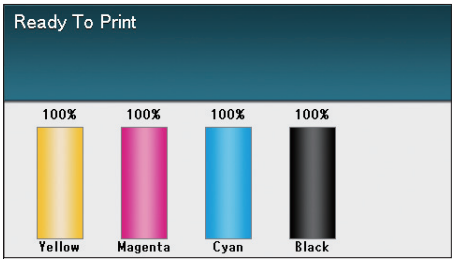


(3) Select [When Mismatching], and press the [OK] button. Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of [When Mismatching].



(4) Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.

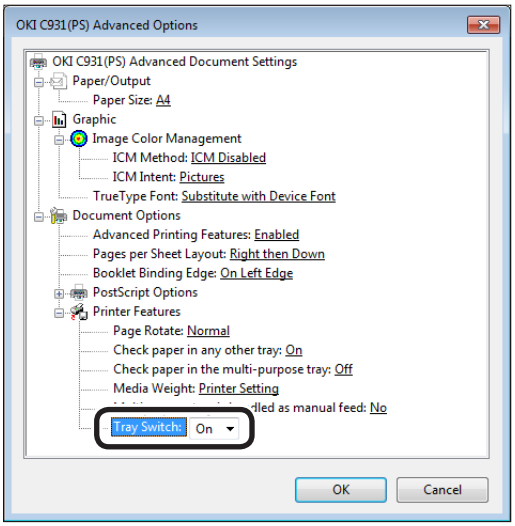




2 Set [Auto Tray Switch] in the printer overlay.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

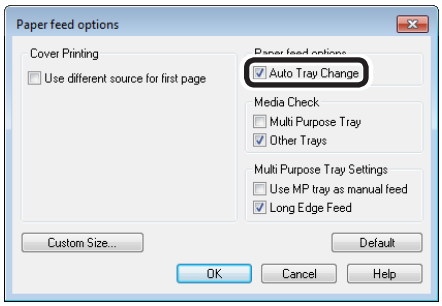
1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Click [Advanced Options] in the [Layout] tab.
5. Select [On] in [Tray Switch].



6. Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Click [Paper feed options] in the [Setup] tab.
5. Enable [Auto Tray Change] in the [Paper feed options] check box, and click [OK].



6. Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

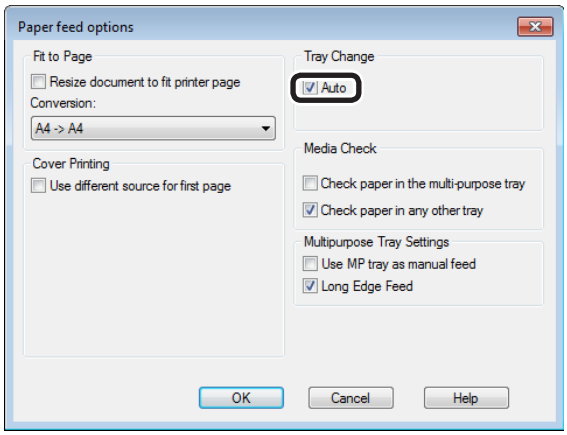
1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Click [Options] in the [Settings] tab.

5 Enable [Auto] in the [Paper feed options] check box, and click [OK].



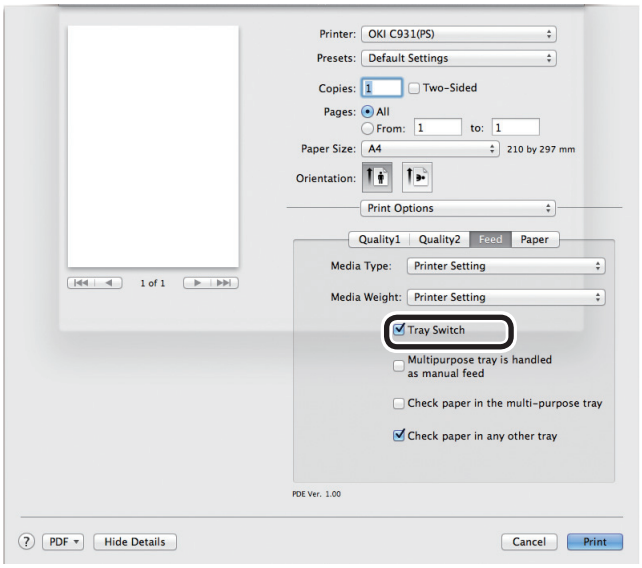
6 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click the [Feed] button in the [Print Options] panel, and enable the [Tray Switch] check box.



4 Printing will be implemented.

Using the printer buffer

You can quickly free the printer from large-quantity jobs and complex jobs by saving print jobs to the device HDD.

Note

- If there is insufficient space on the option built-in HDD storing the print jobs, "File system is full" will be displayed, and printing will be disabled.
- The time to print completion will be slower than if not spooling.
- Cannot be used with Windows XPS and Mac OS X printer drivers.

Memo

- If the device is in print standby, print without using the printer buffer.

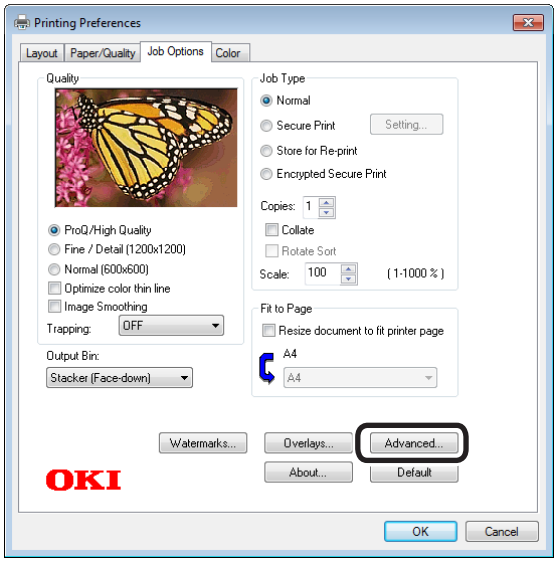
■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

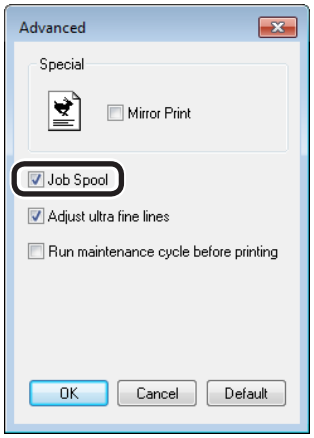
2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Click [Advanced] in the [Job Options] tab.



5 Enable the [Job Spool] check box.



6 Printing will be implemented.

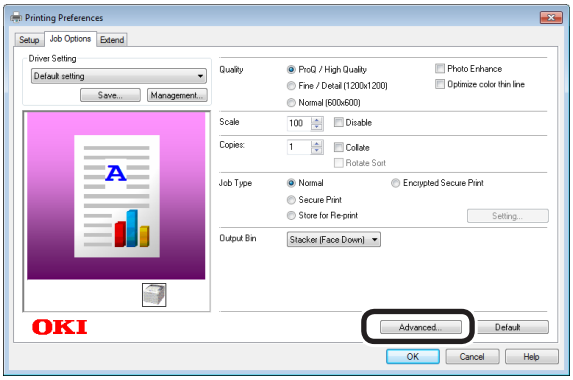
■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

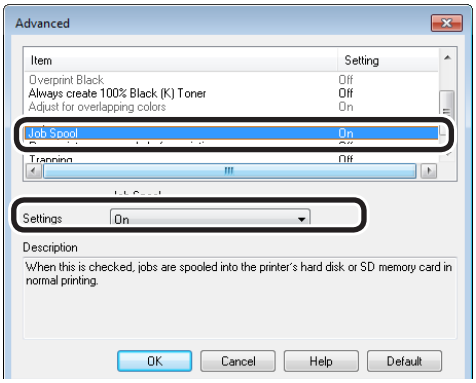
2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Click [Advanced] in the [Job Options] tab.



5 Select [Job Spool], and then select [On] to change the settings, and click [OK].



6 Printing will be implemented.

Outputting to file without printing

You can write and save to a file without printing the print data.

! Note

- PC administrator privileges are required.

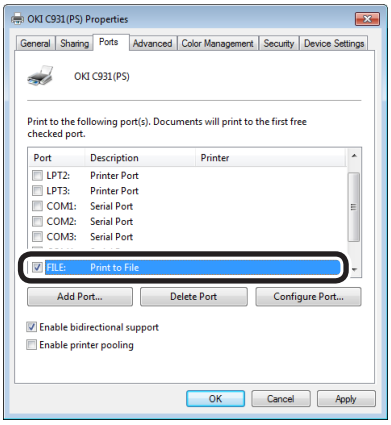
■ Using Windows printer drivers

1 Click [Start], and then select [Devices and Printers].

2 Right-click the [OKI (product name) (**)] icon (** describes the printer driver type: PS, PCL6, or XPS), and select [Printing Preferences]>[OKI (product name)(**)].

3 Select the [Ports] tab.

4 Select [FILE:] from the port table, and click [OK].



5 Printing will be implemented.

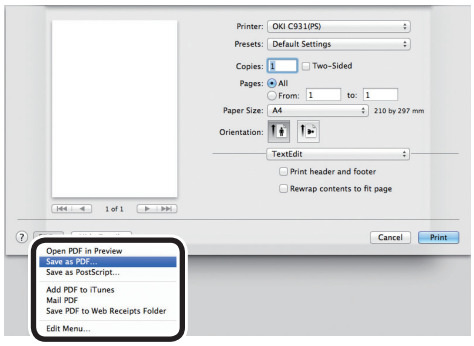
6 Enter the file name, and click [OK].

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [PDF], and select the save method.



4 Enter the file name to be saved in [Name], and select the save destination, and click [Save].

5 Printing will be implemented.

Downloading PostScript files

PostScript files can be downloaded to the device and printed.

! Note

- This function cannot be used when using TCP/IP networks only.

1 Start the OKI LPR utility.

2 Select [Download] from the [Remote print] menu.

3 Select the file to be downloaded, and click [Open].

When the download has finished, the PostScript file will be printed.

Printing PostScript errors

You can print the error details if a PostScript error occurs.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

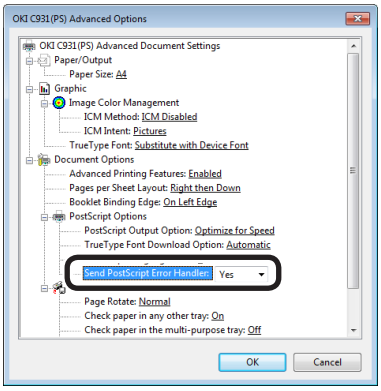
1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Click [Advanced] in the [Layout] tab.

5 Select [Yes] in [PostScript Options]>[Send PostScript Error Handler].

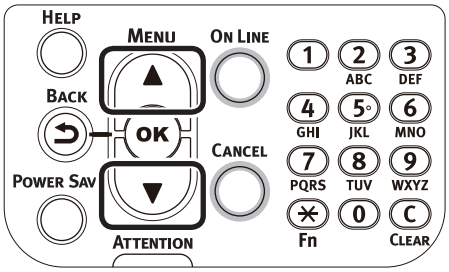


6 Printing will be implemented.

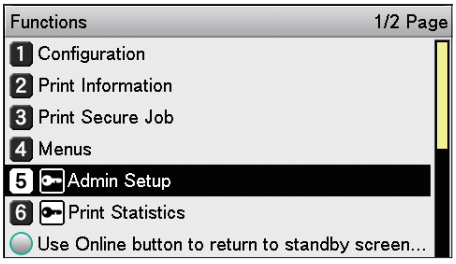
Changing emulation modes

You can select the emulation mode to be used.

1 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



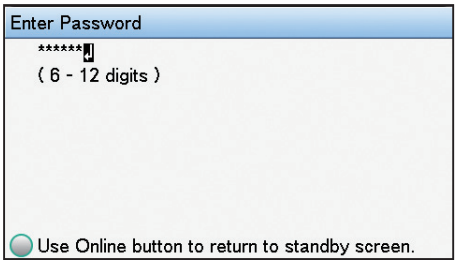
2 Select [Admin Setup], and press the [OK] button.



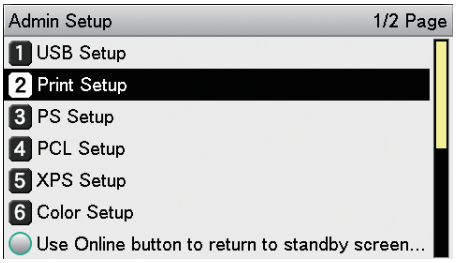
3 Enter the administrator password, and press the [OK] button.

Memo

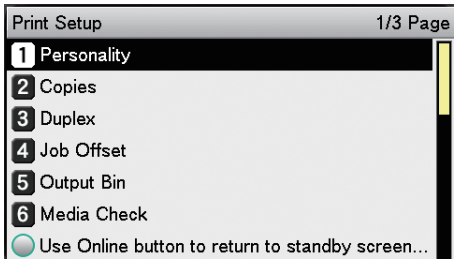
- In the default factory settings, the administrator password is [aaaaaa].



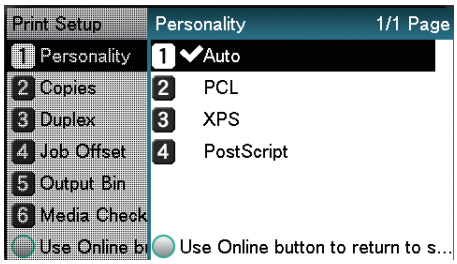
4 Select [Print Setup], and press the [OK] button.



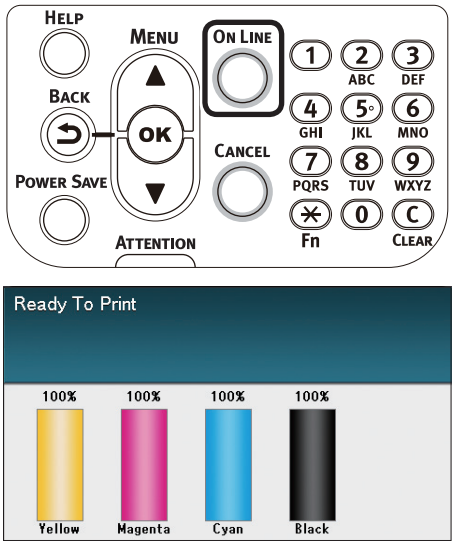
5 Select [Personality], and press the [OK] button.



6 Select the operations mode, and press the [OK] button. Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the selected operations mode.



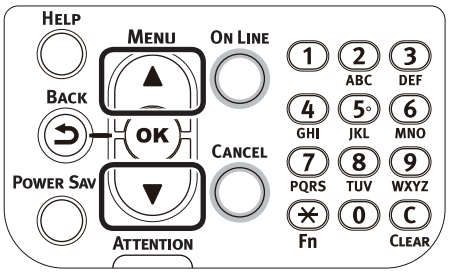
7 Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.



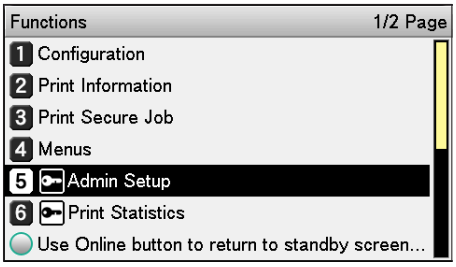
Changing settings for mono printing

You can select a mono printing mode you want to use.

1 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



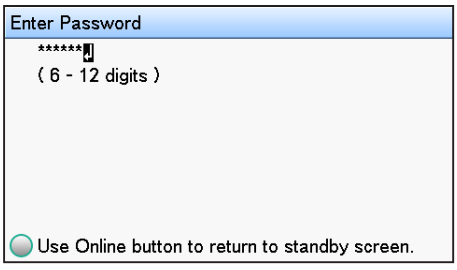
2 Select [Admin Setup], and press the [OK] button.



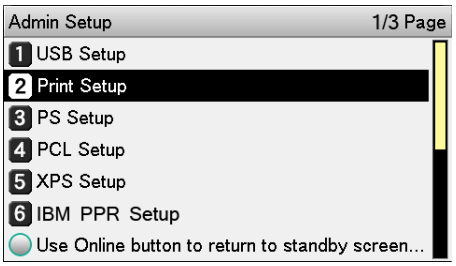
3 Enter the administrator password, and press the [OK] button.

Memo

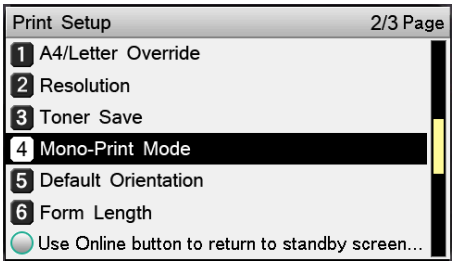
- In the default factory settings, the administrator password is [aaaaaa].



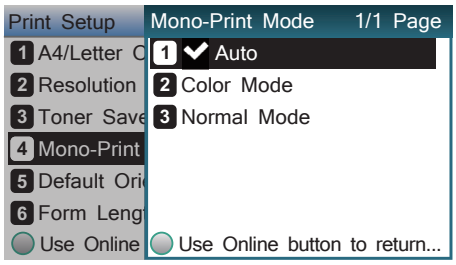
4 Select [Print Setup], and press the [OK] button.



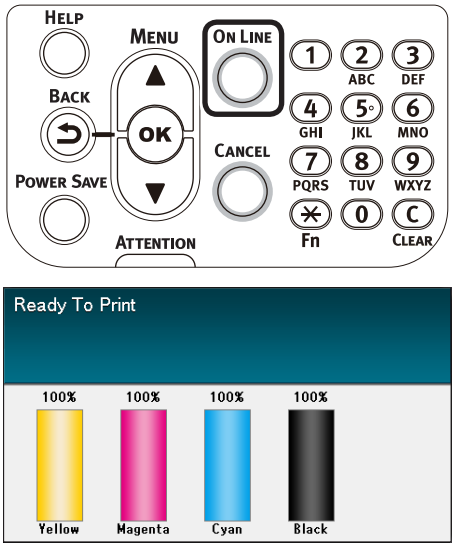
5 Select [Mono-Print Mode], and press the [OK] button.



6 Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the selected mode.



7 Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.



Saving the printer driver settings

You can save the details set using the printer drivers.

When details that change multiple settings are saved, the settings for multiple locations will be changed automatically to the saved details only for the specified driver settings from the next time.

! Note

- This function cannot be used with Windows PCL printer drivers only.
  Cannot be used with Windows PS and Mac OS X printer drivers.

Saving settings

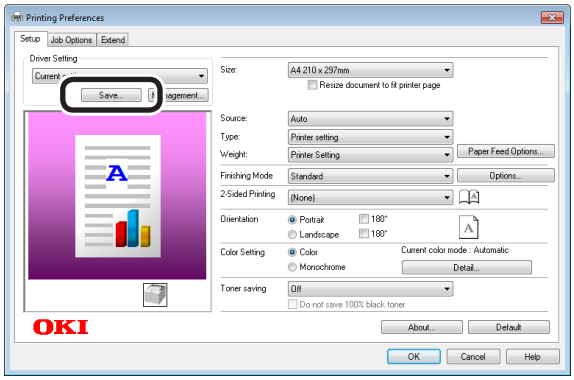
■ Using Windows PCL and Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Click [Start], and then select [Devices and Printers].

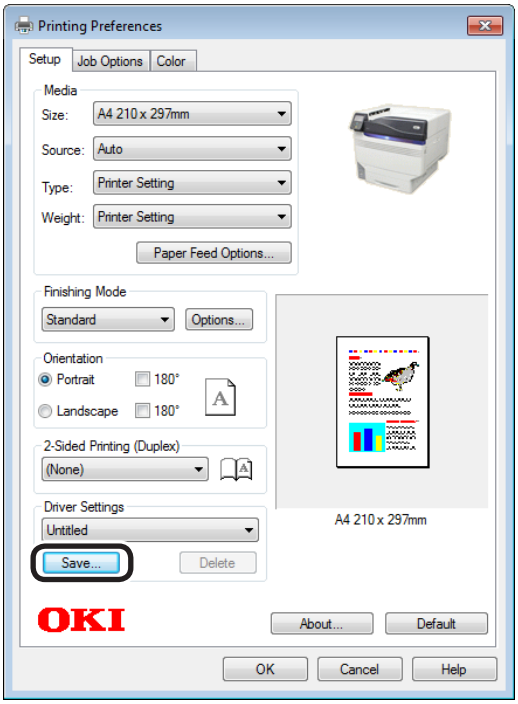
2 Right-click the [OKI (product name) (PCL6)] icon, and select [Printing Preferences]>[OKI (product name) (PCL6)].

3 Make the printer settings to be saved.

4 With PCL printer drivers, click [Save] in [Driver Setting] in the [Setup] tab.



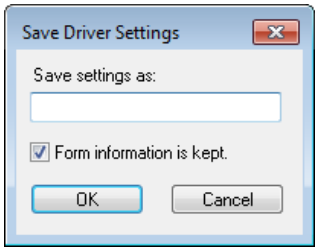
With XPS printer drivers, click [Save] in [Driver Settings] in the [Setup] tab.



5 Enter a name for the settings in [Save settings as], and click [OK].

Memo

- Enable the "Form information is kept" check box to also save the paper settings in the [Setup] tab.
- You can save up to 14 settings max.



6 Click [OK] to close the print setup dialog box.

Calling and using saved settings

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 With PCL printer drivers, select the settings to be used from [Driver Settings] in the [Setup] tab.

With XPS printer drivers, select the settings to be used from [Driver Settings] in the [Setup] tab.

5 Printing will be implemented.

Changing the default printer driver settings

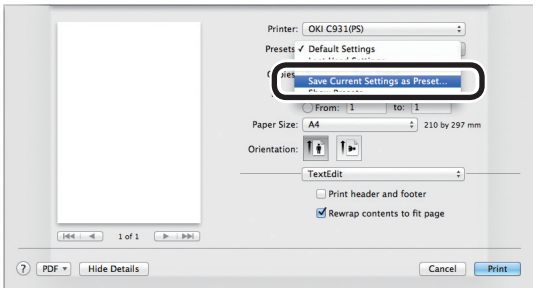
It is convenient to set frequently used settings as the default settings.

■ Using Windows printer drivers

1. Click [Start], and then select [Devices and Printers].
2. Right-click the [OKI (product name) (**)] icon (** describes the printer driver type: PS, PCL6, or XPS), and select [Printing Preferences]>[OKI (product name)(**)].
3. Check the settings, and click [OK].

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Change the settings.
4. Select [Save Current Settings as Preset] in [Presets], and enter a suitable settings name in the "Save Preset" window, and click [OK].



5. Click [Cancel].

Note

- Select the settings name saved in [Preset] to print.

Deleting or updating printer drivers

Deleting the printer drivers

■ Using Windows

Note

- PC administrator privileges are required.
- When Windows starts, restart the PC.

1 Click [Start], and then select [Devices and Printers].

2 Right-click the [OKI (product name)(**)] icon (** describes the printer driver type: PS, PCL6, or XPS), and select [Delete Device].

Note

- If any print queues remain, select [Delete Print Queue]>[OKI (product name) (**)].

3 If a verification message is displayed, click [Yes].

Note

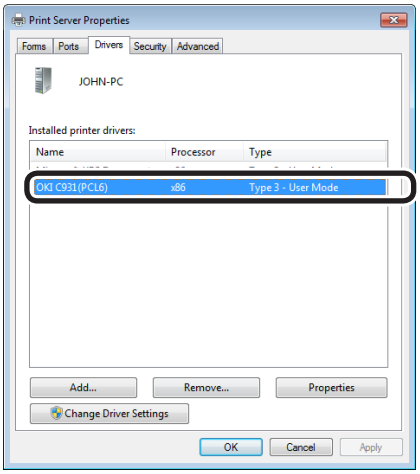
- If a message is displayed while the device is in use, restart the PC, and implement Steps 1 and 2 again.

4 Select one of the icons in [Devices and Printers], and click [Print Server Properties] in the top bar.

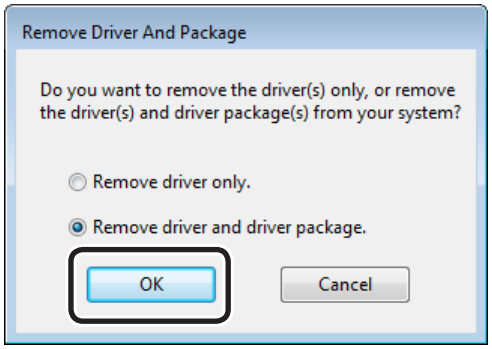
5 Select the [Drivers] tab.

6 Click if [Change Driver Settings] is displayed.

7 Select the driver to be deleted, and click [Remove].



8 If a message asking whether to delete the drivers only, or the drivers and packages from the system, select to delete drivers and packages, and click [OK].



9 If a verification message is displayed, click [Yes].

10 If the [Remove driver and driver package] dialog box is displayed, click [Cancel]>[OK].

Note

- To cancel deletion, restart the PC, and implement Steps 4 and 10 again.

11 Click [Close] in the [Print Server Properties] dialog box.

12 Restart the PC.

Note

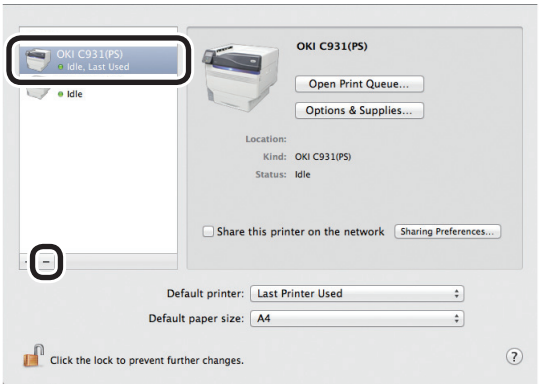
- The Network Extension and color swatch utility installed together with the printer drivers are not deleted even if the printer drivers are deleted.
  If deleting the Network Extension and color swatch utility, delete from [Control Panel]>[Uninstall Program].

■ Using Mac OS X

1 Delete the printer name from the printer list.

(1) Select [Apple Menu]>[System Preferences].

(2) Click [Print & Scan]. Select the printer name, and click [-].



(3) Close [System Preferences].

2 Delete (uninstall) using the installer.

(1) Set the "Software DVD-ROM" in your Macintosh.

(2) Double-click the [OKI] icon.

(3) Open the [Driver] folder.

(4) Double-click [Uninstaller].

(5) Follow the on-screen instructions to enter the administrator password, and click [OK] until the uninstaller closes.



(6) Click [Finish].

(7) Remove the "Software DVD-ROM" from the computer.

Updating the printer drivers

■ Using Windows

! Note

- PC administrator privileges are required.
- When Windows starts, restart the PC.

❑ Network connections

1 Set the "AutoPlay".

2 When the "play automatically" window is displayed, click [Run Setup.exe].

3 When the "User Account Control" window is displayed, click the [Yes] button.

4 Read the "Software License Agreement", and click the [Agree] button.

5 Read the "Environmental advice for Users", and click the [Next] button.

6 Select the printer to be used, and then click the [Next] button.

7 Select [USB connection], and click the [Next] button.

8 Click [Custom Install].

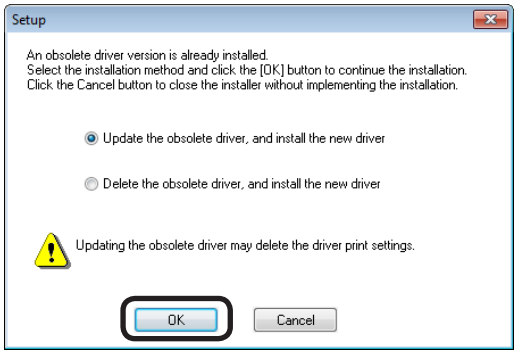
9 Click [Switch to separate screen.].

10 Click the driver to be installed.

11 Click [Next] in the "Check before install" screen.

12 If the "Check installation" screen is displayed, select the printer to be installed, and click [Next].

13 Select the installation method, and click the [OK] button.



- Updating obsolete drivers, and installing new drivers
  Update the obsolete printer drivers, and then install the new printer drivers. A new printer icon will be created as "Copy 1" in addition to the icon for the obsolete printer drivers.
- Deleting obsolete drivers, and installing new drivers
  Delete the obsolete printer drivers and printer icons, and then install the new printer drivers.

! Note

- If multiple printer drivers have been installed, delete all the printer drivers. If installing multiple printer drivers, reinstall.

14 Click [Next] in the "Finish installation" screen.

❑ USB connections

1 Set the "AutoPlay".

2 When the "play automatically" window is displayed, click [Run setup.exe].

3 When the "User Account Control" window is displayed, click the [Yes] button.

4 Read the "Software License Agreement", and click the [Agree] button.

5 Read the "Environmental advice for Users", and click the [Next] button.

6 Select the printer to be used, and then click the [Next] button.

7 Select [USB connection], and click the [Next] button.

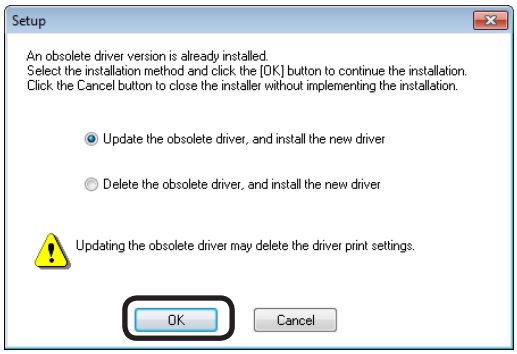
8 Click [Custom Install].

9 Click [Switch to separate screen.].

10 Click the driver to be installed.

11 Click [Next] in the "Check before install" screen.

12 Select the installation method, and click the [OK] button.



- Updating obsolete drivers, and installing new drivers
  Update the obsolete printer drivers, and then install the new printer drivers. A new printer icon will be created as "Copy 1" in addition to the icon for the obsolete printer drivers.
- Deleting obsolete drivers, and installing new drivers
  Delete the obsolete printer drivers and printer icons, and then install the new printer drivers.

! Note

- If multiple printer drivers have been installed, delete all the printer drivers. If installing multiple printer drivers, reinstall.

13 Connect the printer to the PC. If a screen prompting you to turn ON the printer power supply is displayed, connect the device and PC using a USB cable, and turn ON the device.

14 Click [Finish] in the "Install completed" screen.

■ Using Mac OS X

1 Delete the device from the [Printer List], and uninstall the printer software using the installer. For details, see "Deleting the printer drivers" (P.114).

2 Reinstall the printer software. See the "Basic" for details.

■ Memo

2
Matching Colors

Matching colors using the control panel... 120

Matching Colors Using the Printer Drivers ... 128

Matching Colors Using Utilities 150

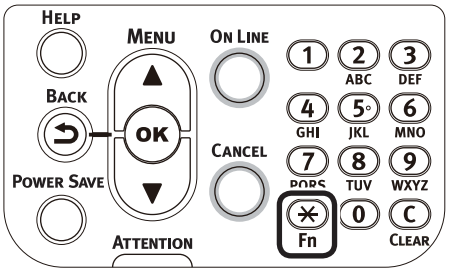
Matching colors using the control panel

Manually compensating color drift

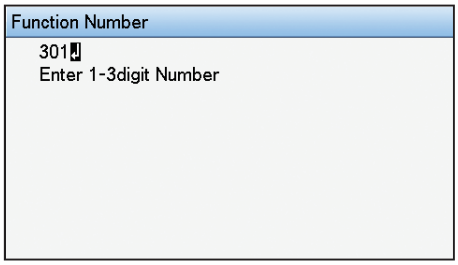
The printer compensates color drift automatically according to the conditions of use. If the color drift is a nuisance, you can also implement compensation manually.

1 Press the [Fn] key.

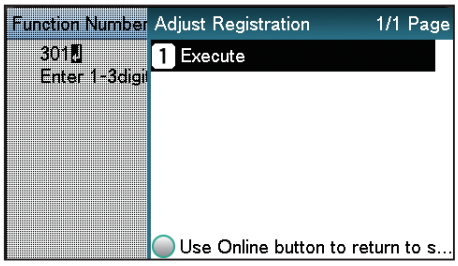
The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



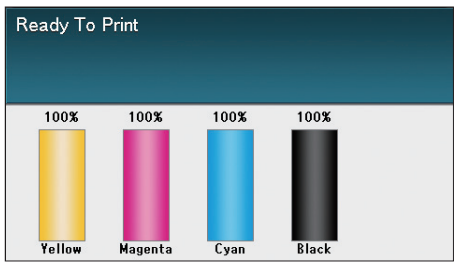
2 Press [3], [0], [1], and then press the [OK] button.



3 Check that [Execute] has been selected, and press the [OK] button.



4 The display will return to the standby screen.

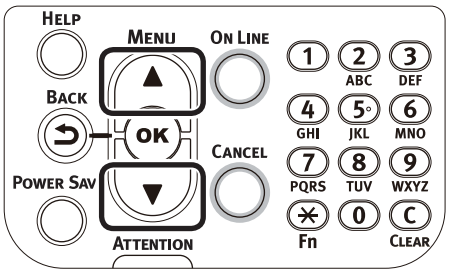


Automatically compensating density and gradation

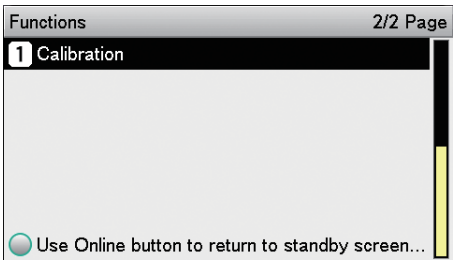
The printer compensates density automatically according to the conditions of use. To compensate automatically, turn [On] the density compensating matching setting.

In the default factory settings, density compensating matching is implemented automatically.

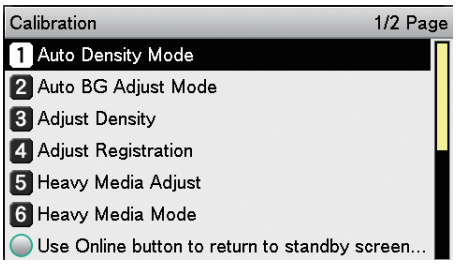
1 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



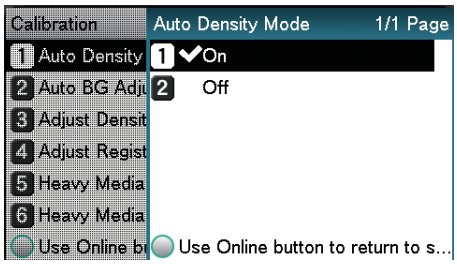
2 Select [Calibration], and press the [OK] button.



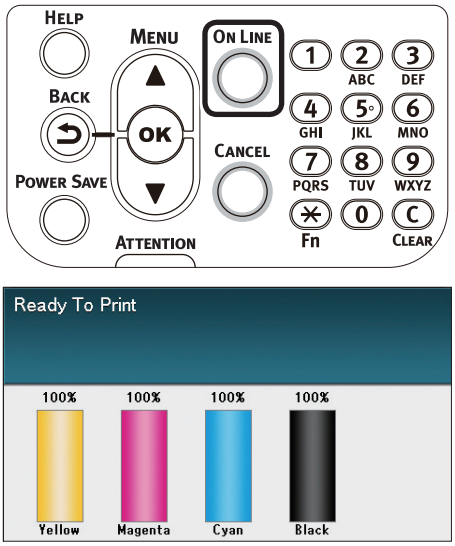
3 Select [Auto Density Mode], and press the [OK] button.



4 Select [On], and press the [OK] button. Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of [On].



5 Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.



Manually compensating density

The printer can implement compensation periodically using auto density compensation mode, but if the print density is a nuisance, it can also be compensated manually.

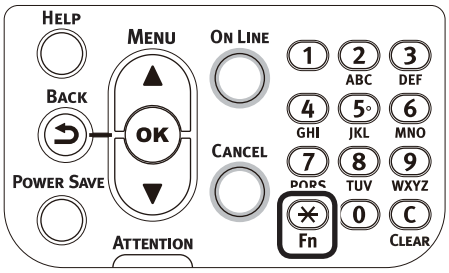
Memo

- The density compensation adjustment values are set using [Cyan density], [Magenta density], [Yellow density], [Black density], [White density][*1], and [Clear density][*2] on the control panel.

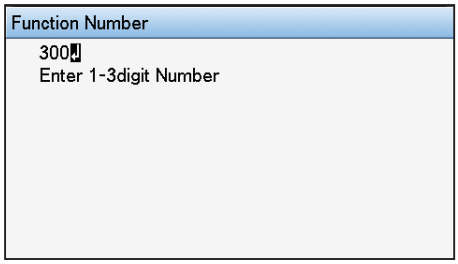
*1: C941/C942/ES9541/ES9542/Pro9541/Pro9542 only
*2: C941/ES9541/Pro9541 only

1 Press the [Fn] key.

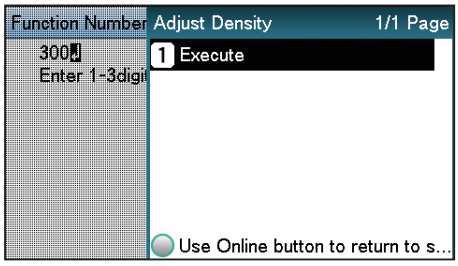
The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



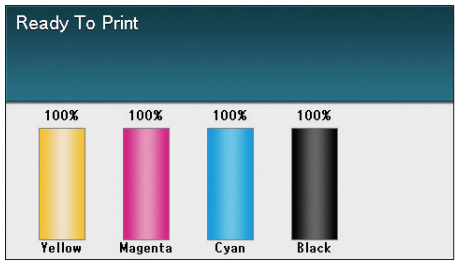
2 Press [3], [0], [0], and press the [OK] button.



3 Check that [Execute] has been selected, and press the [OK] button.



4 The display will return to the standby screen.



Watermark adjustment for density compensation

You can adjust the watermarks for the density based on the density compensation.

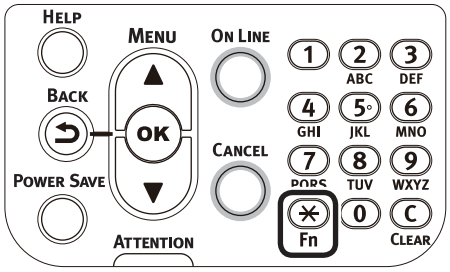
Adjust each color separately for the parts where the density is a nuisance from the print results.

This section explains the procedure for adjusting the cyan watermarks. Use the same adjustment procedure also for other colors that you wish to adjust.

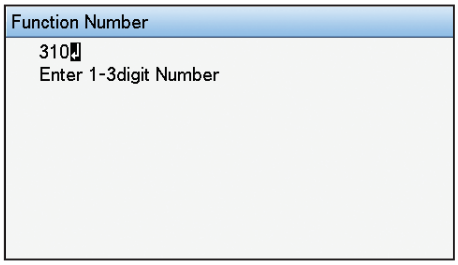
- Increasing cyan after checking the print results

1 Press the [Fn] key.

The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



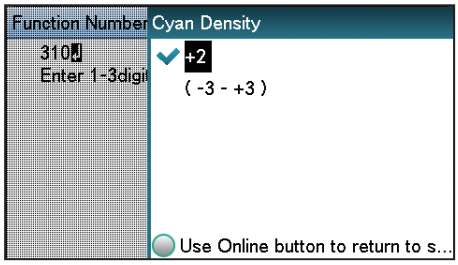
2 Press [3], [1], [0], and press the [OK] button.



Memo

- The procedures for adjusting magenta, yellow, and black are described below.
  - To adjust magenta, press the [Fn] key, [3], [1], [1], and [OK] buttons.
  - To adjust yellow, press the [Fn] key, [3], [1], [2], and [OK] buttons.
  - To adjust black, press the [Fn] key, [3], [1], [3], and [OK] buttons.

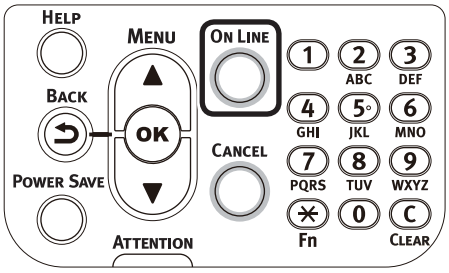
3 Specify a larger value than the current value, and press the [OK] button.

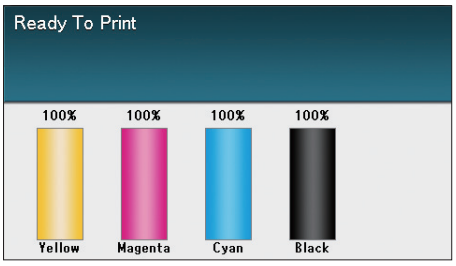


Memo

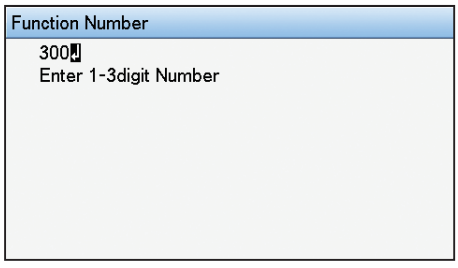
- To increase the density, select +1 to +3, and to decrease the density select -1 to -3.

4 Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.

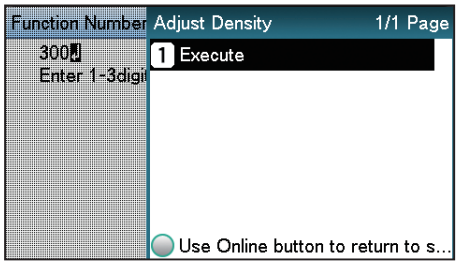




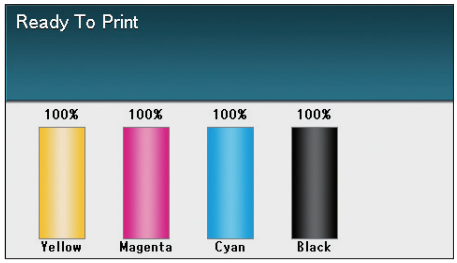
5 Press the [Fn] key, [3], [0], [0], and press the [OK] button.



6 Check that [Execute] has been selected, and press the [OK] button.



7 The display will return to the standby screen.



8 Printing will be implemented.

If the density is still incorrect, repeat steps 1 to 6.

Adjusting the color balance (density)

The printer can implement compensation periodically using auto density compensation mode, but implement this adjustment to adjust the color balance in the intervals where auto density compensation is insufficient.

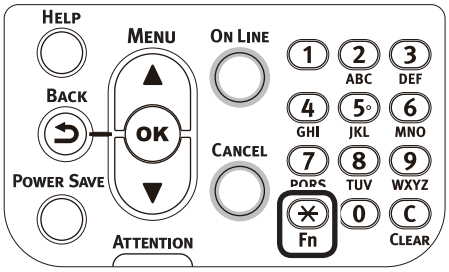
! Note

- The densities of each color are mutually dependent, so it is necessary to repeat the adjustments several times until the correct color balance is reached.
- The results of the basic [Base Color Tuning] are reflected in the settings in [Fine Color Tuning]. Consequently, if the [Fine Color Tuning] are adjusted manually, these settings will be reset, so be careful. The [Black Tuning] settings, however, are not reset.
- Printing is disabled if [Local print] in the (optional) print job accounting is set to [Disable printing] or [Disable color printing].

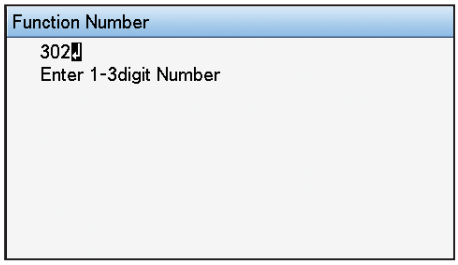
1 Printing color matching patterns.

(1) Press the [Fn] key.

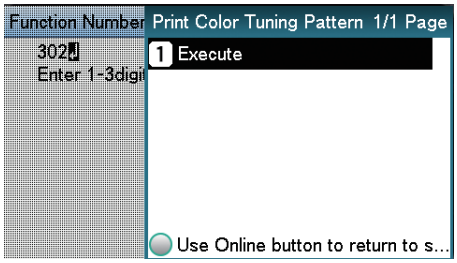
The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



(2) Press [3], [0], [2], and press the [OK] button.

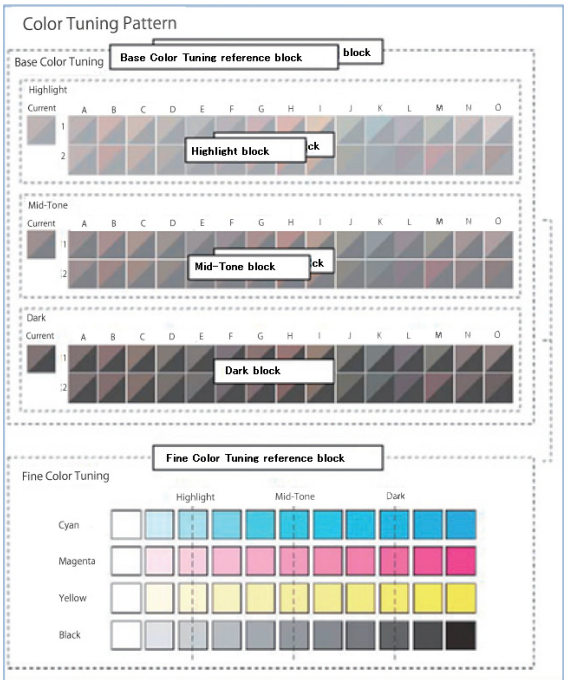


(3) Check that [Execute] has been selected, and press the [OK] button.



(4) The color matching pattern will be printed.

2 Use the print results for the color matching pattern to check the current color balance.



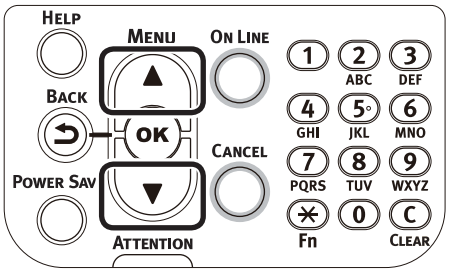
(1) Check the numbers (A-1,2 to O-1,2) of the pattern that seems the most similar to the adjacent CMY mixed colors part and single color K part from among the patterns distributed in the "Highlight", "Mid-Tone", or "Dark" areas.

Memo

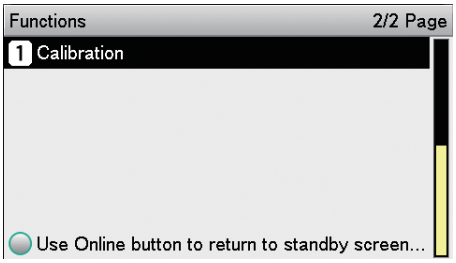
- If the pattern that seems most similar to the adjacent CMY mixed colors part and single color K part in the "Highlight", "Mid-Tone", or "Dark" areas matches the "Current" on the left or the color matching pattern, the color balance is normal and does not require adjustment.

3 Use the print results for the color matching pattern to adjust the color balance.

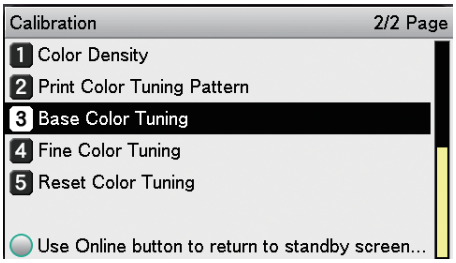
(1) Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



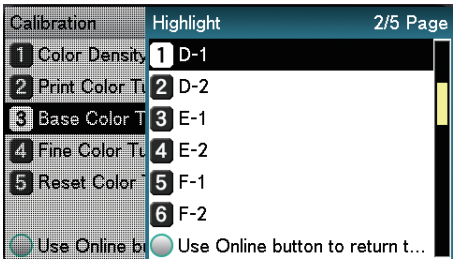
(2) Select [Calibration], and press the [OK] button.



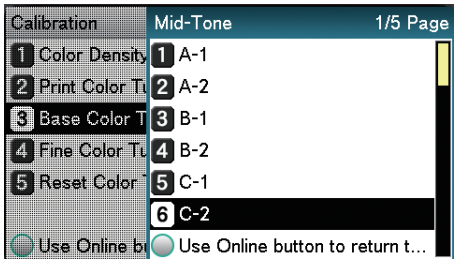
(3) Select [Base Color Tuning], and press the [OK] button.



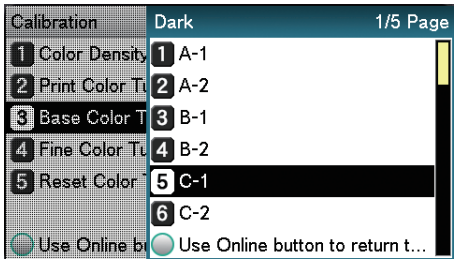
(4) Specify the number of the pattern checked in the "Highlight" area, and press the [OK] button.



(5) Specify the number of the pattern checked in the "Mid-Tone" area, and press the [OK] button.

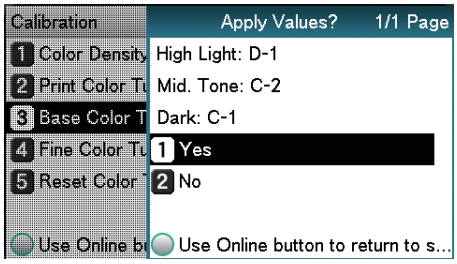


(6) Specify the number of the pattern checked in the "Dark" area, and press the [OK] button.



(7) The pattern number specified in each area will be displayed.

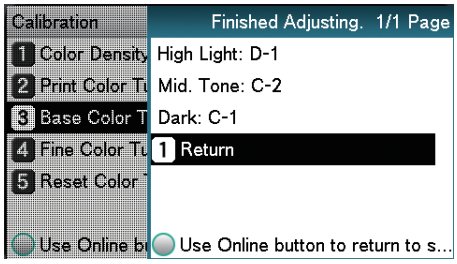
If the pattern number is correct, select [Yes], and press the [OK] button.



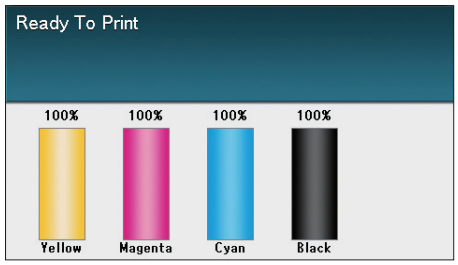
Memo

- To respecify the pattern number select [No] to return to the "Calibration" screen.

(8) Select [Return], and press the [OK] button.



(9) The display will return to the standby screen.



Memo

- If the desired color balance is not obtained even after implementing [Base Color Tuning], adjust the CMY color balance watermarks manually using [Adjusting the color balance]. For color balance watermark adjustments, see "Adjusting the color balance" (P.126).
- If the overall tone is still too bright or too dark even after implementing [Base Color Tuning], adjust the black tone manually using [Fine Color Tuning], and then implement [Basic color Tuning] again. To brighten the overall tone, adjust the black tone in [Fine Color Tuning] in the - direction, and to darken the overall tone, adjust the black tone in [Fine Color Tuning] in the + direction.

4 Check the color balance adjustment results.

(1) Print the color matching patterns.

(2) Use the print results for the color matching pattern to check the adjusted results.

If the pattern that seems most similar to the adjacent CMY mixed colors part and single color K part in the "Highlight", "Mid-Tone", or "Dark" areas matches the "Current" on the left or the color matching pattern, the color balance adjustment is complete.

Repeat Steps 1 to 3 according to the checked results.

Adjusting the color balance

The printer can implement compensation periodically using auto density compensation mode, but implement this adjustment to adjust the color balance watermarks in the intervals where auto density compensation is insufficient.

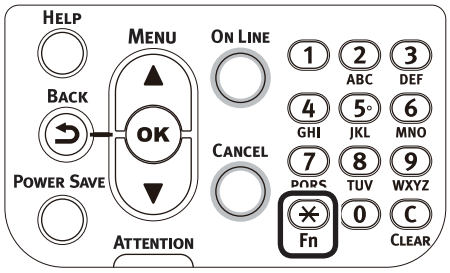
Note

- The densities of each color are mutually dependent, so it is necessary to repeat the adjustments several times until the correct color balance is reached.
- Printing is disabled if [Local print] in the (optional) print job accounting is set to [Disable printing] or [Disable color printing].

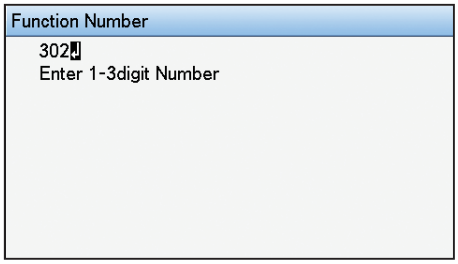
1 Print the color matching patterns.

(1) Press the [Fn] key.

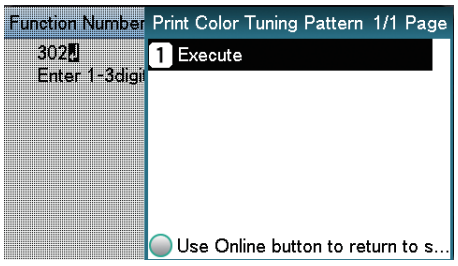
The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



(2) Press [3], [0], [2], and press the [OK] button.

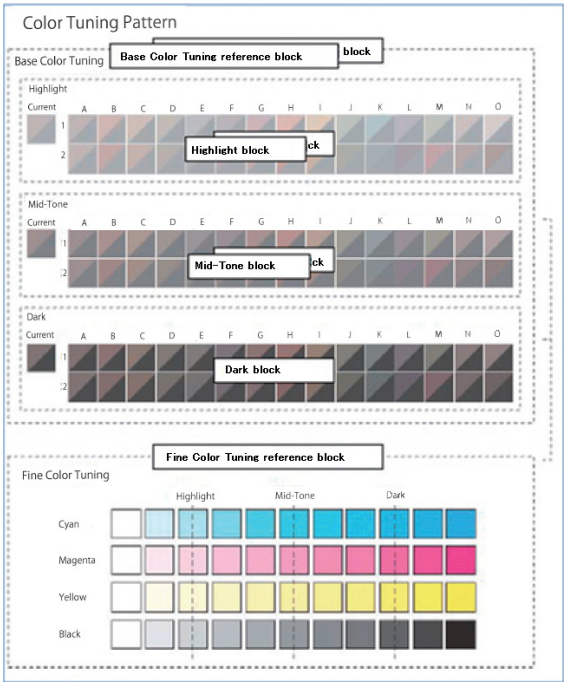


(3) Check that [Execute] has been selected, and press the [OK] button.



(4) The color matching pattern will be printed.

2 Use the print results for the color matching pattern to check the current color balance.



(1) Check the area to be referenced using "Fine Color Tuning".

The color matching pattern frames are arranged in four vertical columns and 11 horizontal rows. The four vertical columns represent from the top cyan, magenta, yellow, and black, and are printed as [Cyan], [Magenta], [Yellow] and [Black].

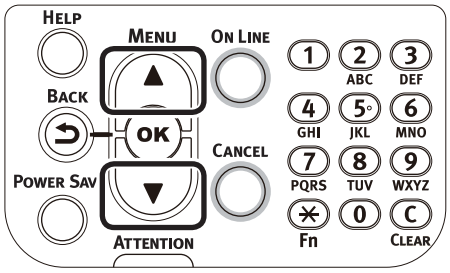
The 11 horizontal rows represent the color tone, and dotted lines are printed under each text for [Highlight], [Mid-Tone], and [Dark].

3 Use the print results for the color matching pattern to adjust the color balance watermarks.

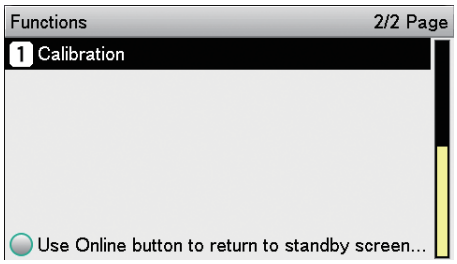
If adjusting the color balance, use the control panel to specify the shade (Highlight, Dark, and Mid-Tone) of each color.

This section explains the procedure for slightly darkening the cyan highlights. Adjust the watermarks for colors other than cyan in the same way.

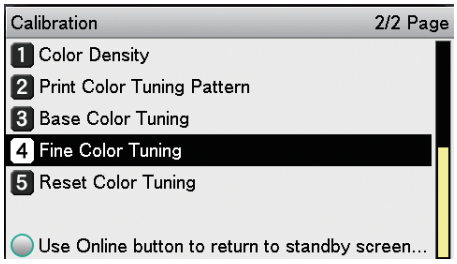
(1) Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



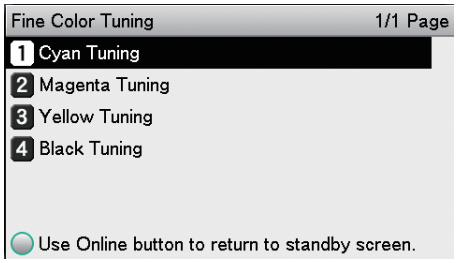
(2) Select [Calibration], and press the [OK] button.



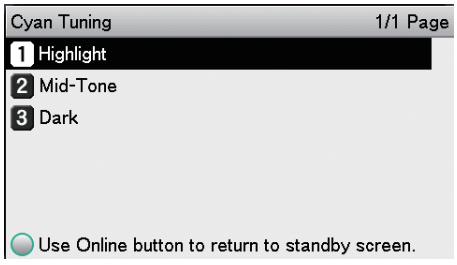
(3) Select [Fine Color Tuning], and press the [OK] button.



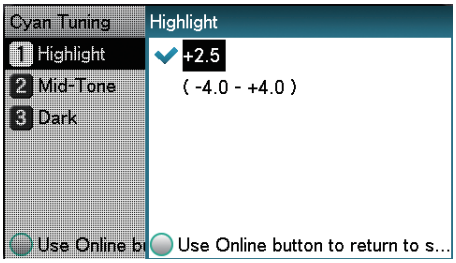
(4) Select [Cyan Tuning], and press the [OK] button.



(5) Select [Highlight], and press the [OK] button.



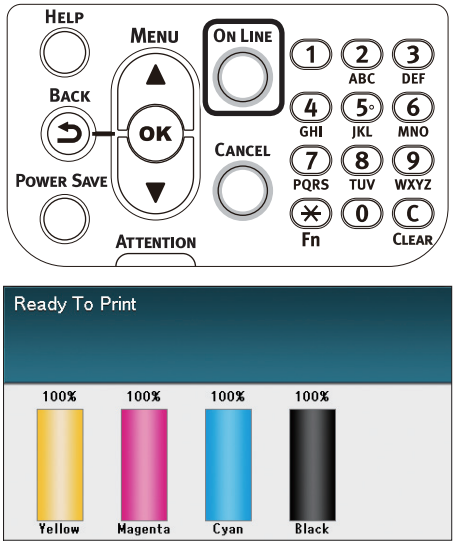
(6) Specify a larger value than the current set value, and press the [OK] button. Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the specified value.



Memo

- To slightly increase the darkness, select +0.1 to +4.0, and to slightly decrease the darkness select -0.1 to -4.0. The black adjustment range, however, is +0.1 to +3.0 and -0.1 to -3.0.

(7) Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.



4 Check the color balance adjustment results.

(1) Print the color matching patterns.

(2) Use the print results for the color matching pattern to check the adjusted results.

Repeat Steps 1 to 3 according to the checked results.

Matching Colors Using the Printer Drivers

Color matching

What is color matching?

It is important to manage the work processes from data creation to output based on methods with color consistency. For example, scanners, digital cameras, and monitors, etc., express the blending ratio to which the light of the three colors "red", "blue", and "green" have been added against the black as values over the RGB color space (Additive mixture of colors).

Meanwhile, printers express the blending ratio of the four toner colors "Cyan", "Magenta", "Yellow", and "black" over white (white light) with the three reflected colors "red", "blue", and "green" excluded as values over the CMYK color space. (Subtractive mixture of colors.).

The RGB color space and CMYK color space are color spaces dependent on the printer used, and so when converting the color spaces, the colors will be different from the reproduced colors unless consideration is given to the individual printer characteristics.

To maintain color consistency from data creation to output, it is necessary to consider the color differences by device when converting colors. This process is called "color matching". The program that implements the color matching is called the "color management system" (CMS).

The printer can use either printer driver color matching or application color matching.

Note

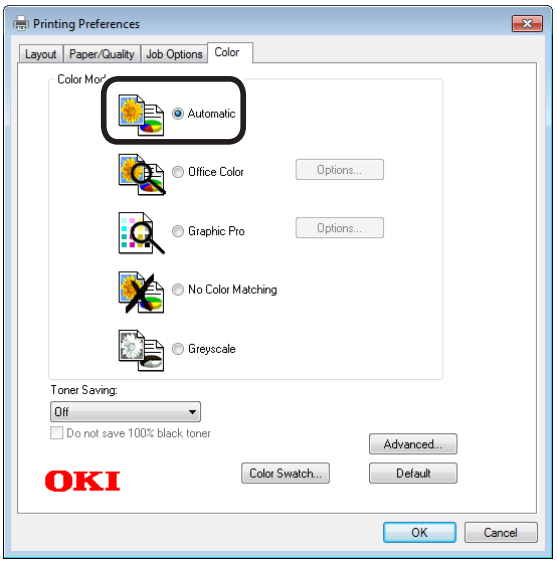
- Even if using color matching, the printed colors may appear dark compared to the colors on the monitor. This is because the range of colors that can be reproduced by the device is narrower than the range of colors that can be reproduced by the monitor, so even if color matching is used, the vivid colors on the monitor cannot be reproduced.

Color matching (recommended)

Implementing color matching is recommended for general documents. In general, use this setting.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Select [Automatic] in [Color Mode] in the [Color] tab, and then click [OK].



5. Printing will be implemented.

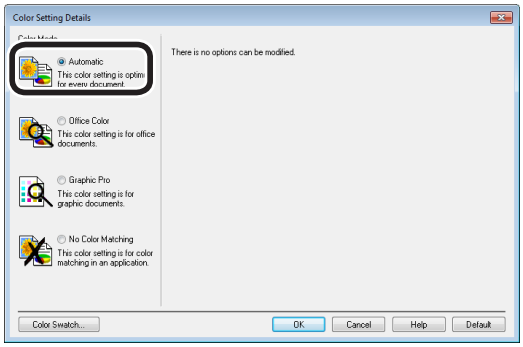
■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Click [Detail] in the [Setup] tab, and select [Automatic] and click [OK].



5 Printing will be implemented.

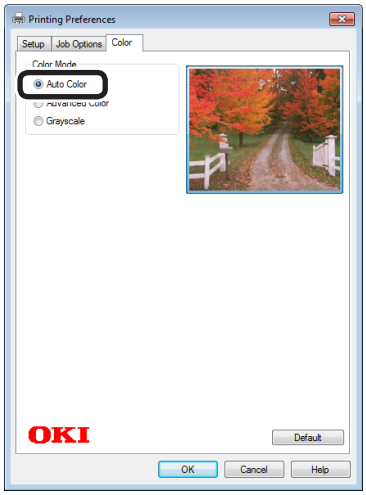
■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Auto Color] in [Color Mode] in the [Color] tab, and then click [OK].



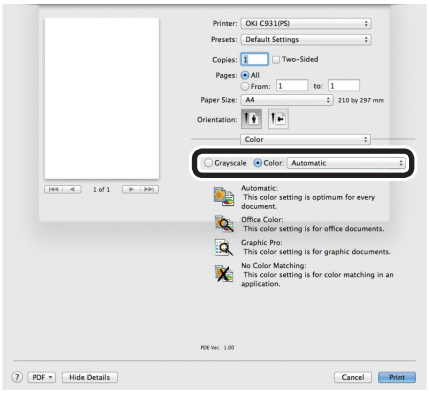
5 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Select [Automatic] in the [Color] panel.



4 Printing will be implemented.

Easy color matching (Office colors)

Color matching is the optimum method supplied for users who frequently use business documents such as word processing software, spreadsheet software, and presentation software. Color matching is implemented for printers using the colors expressed using RGB colors, which are used with these software applications.

Color matching is implemented using a special accelerator (ASIC) that is built into the printer. When converting the RGB color space print data to the printer CMYK color space, color matching processing is applied.

Note

- If using Windows PCL printer drivers or Windows XPS printer drivers, color matching is not applied even if [Automatic] or [Office Color] is selected for the CMYK color space print data. In this case, select "Graphic Pro".
- If installing ICC profile in Windows, click [Advanced Setup] in the [Layout] tab, and then select [Disable ICM] in [ICM Methods].

■ Setup Items

- [Color matching options]

  Specifies the method for expressing the colors processed using color matching.

  - Monitor - Auto

    During color matching, represents the color by the most ideal method suiting the document to be printed, emphasizing compatibility with the monitor (color temperature 6500K). In general, use this setting.

  - Monitor - Perceptual

    During color matching, represents the color by the method emphasizing the gradation suiting the natural image of photograph and compatibility with the monitor (color temperature 6500K).

  - Monitor - Vivid

    During color matching, represents the color by the method emphasizing the vividness suiting the images and text, and compatibility with the monitor (color temperature 6500K).

  - Monitor - light

    During color matching, represents the color by the method emphasizing the gradation suiting the natural image of photograph and compatibility with the monitor (color temperature 9300K).

  - Adobe RGB

    Indicates while using the input device with AdobeRGB color characteristics.

  - sRGB

    The sRGB colors within the printer's color gamut are printed without any modification. Only colors that fall outside the printer's color gamut are matched with the outer shell. Suitable for matching specific colors.

- [CMYK Ink Simulation]

  Select to simulate standard offset print colors such as Japan Color, SWOP, and ISO Coated on the device.

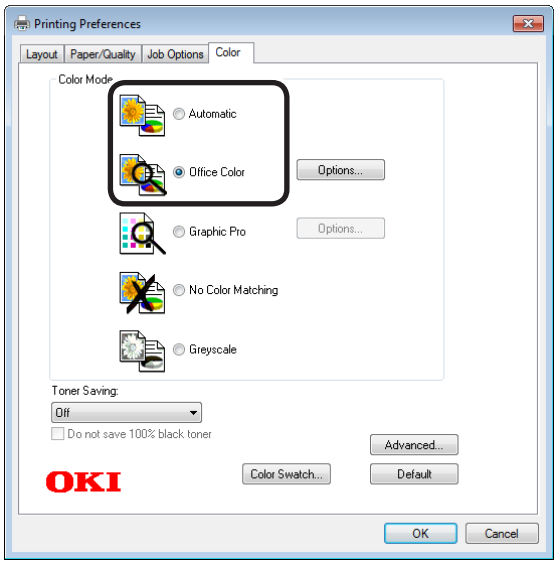
  Select the target printer ink.

- [Black Finish]

  Sets the black finish when printing in color. Normally use Auto as is.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Select [Automatic] or [Office Color] in [Color Mode] in the [Color] tab, and then click [OK].



Note

- If installing an ICC profile, click [Advanced] in the [Layout] tab, and then select [Disable ICM] in [ICM Methods].

5. Printing will be implemented.

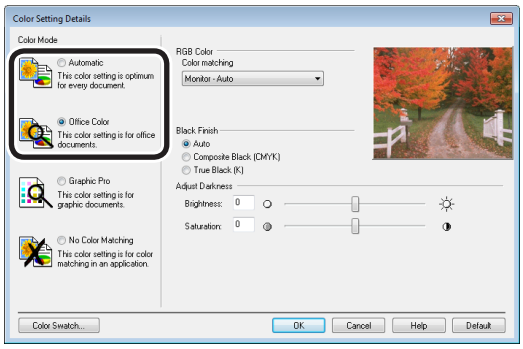
■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Click [Detail] in the [Setup] tab, and select [Automatic] or [Office Color] and click [OK].



5 Printing will be implemented.

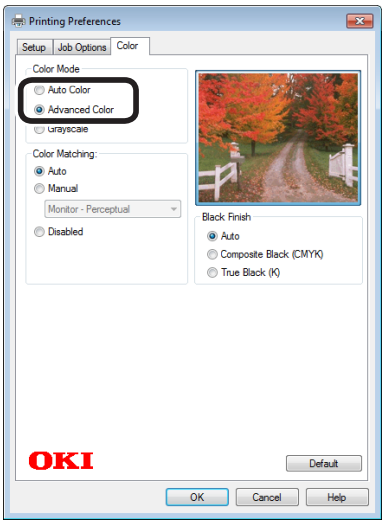
■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Auto Color] or [Advanced Color] in [Color Mode] in the [Color] tab, and then click [OK].



If [Advanced Color] is selected, change [Color Matching] and [Black Finish] as necessary.

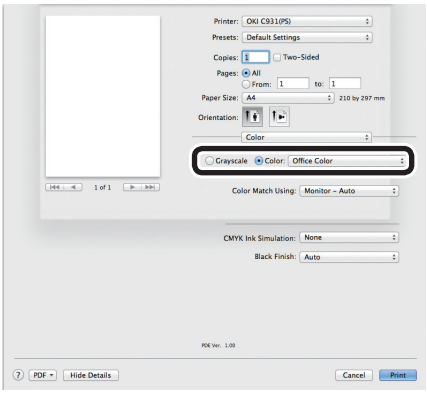
5 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Select either [Automatic] or [Office Color] in the [Color] panel.



If [Office Color] is selected, change [Color Match Using], [CMYK Ink Simulation], and [Black Finish] as necessary.

4 Printing will be implemented.

Color matching (GraphicPro)

If using DTP software, Graphic Pro is optimum.

You can specify simulation printing for a user-selected CMYK output device.

If using an ICC profile for a user-selected I/O device for color matching, it is necessary to register the ICC profile to the device beforehand.

For how to register the ICC profile, see "Registering ICC profiles" (P.174).

! Note

- CMYK Link Profile cannot be specified using PCL printer drivers.
- If installing ICC profile using Windows PS printer drivers, click [Advanced Setup] in the [Layout] tab, and then select [Disable ICM] in [ICM Methods].
- Cannot be used with Windows XPS printer drivers.
- To register an ICC profile, it is necessary to mount the (optional) HDD to the device.

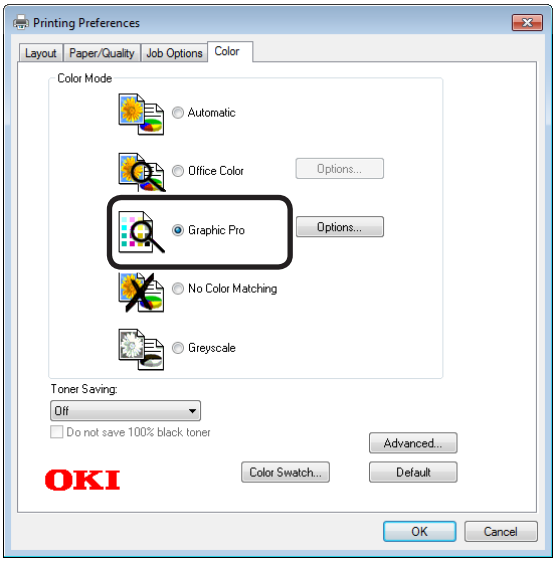
■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Graphic Pro] in [Color Mode] in the [Color] tab, and then click [OK].



5 Printing will be implemented.

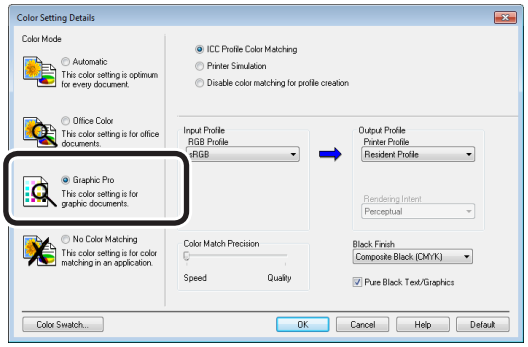
■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Click [Detail] in the [Setup] tab, and select [Graphic Pro] and click [OK].



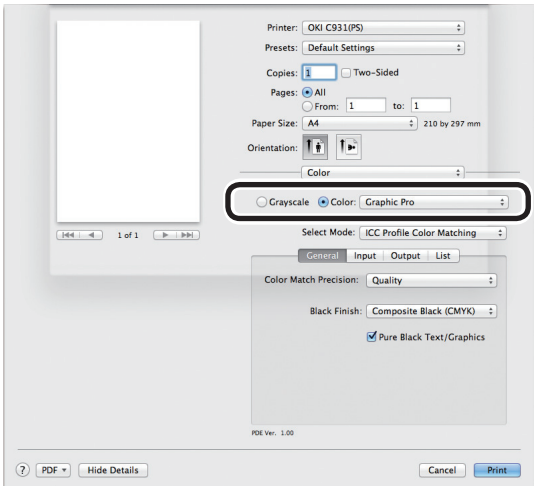
5 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Select [Graphic Pro] in the [Color] panel.



4 Printing will be implemented.

Color matching (color matching OFF)

Implements printing using the specified colors as is, without implementing color matching using the printer drivers or device.

Select if implementing color matching using an application.

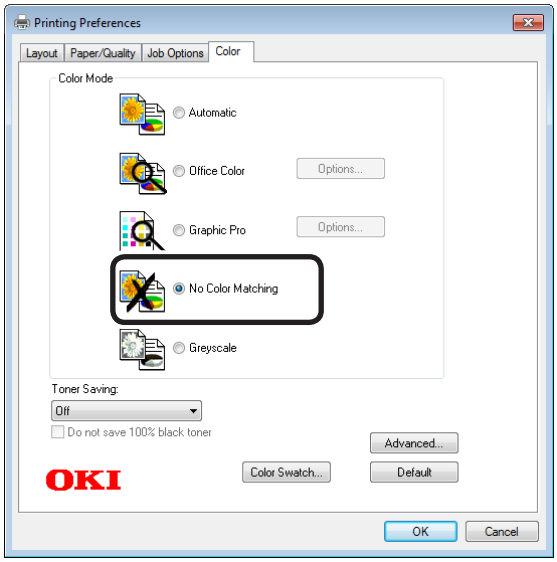
■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [No Color Matching] in [Color Mode] in the [Color] tab, and then click [OK].



5 Printing will be implemented.

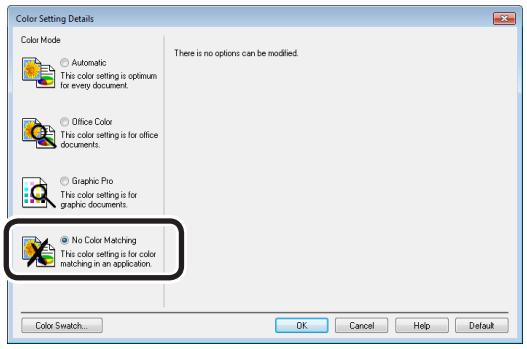
■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Click [Detail] in the [Setup] tab, and select [No Color Matching] and click [OK].



5 Printing will be implemented.

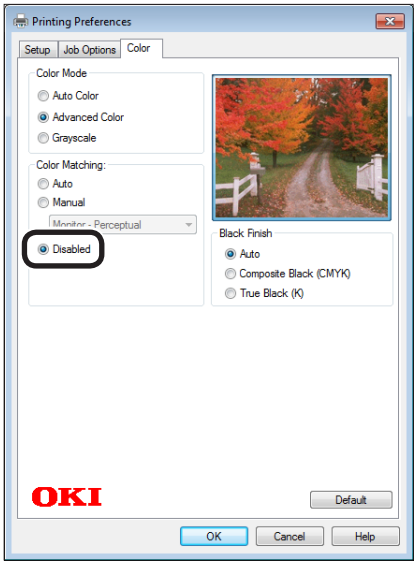
■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Advanced Color] in the [Color] tab, and then select [Disabled] in [Color Matching], and click [OK].



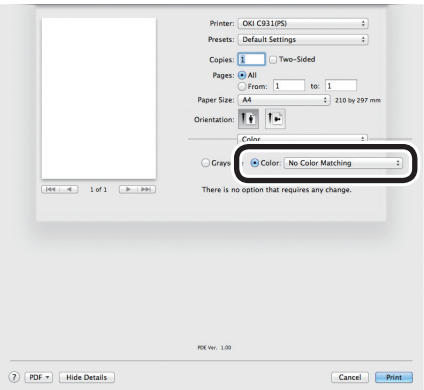
5 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] from the [File] menu.

3 Select [No Color Matching] in the [Color] panel.



4 Printing will be implemented.

Changing black finish

The finish for the black parts will be changed when printing in color. This can be used when the color mode in the printer driver settings is [Office Color] or [Graphic Pro].

■ Setup Items

- Black Finish
  - Auto

    Creates black using the optimum methods according to the document to be printed. This setting can be selected when the color mode is set to [Office Color].
  - Composite Black (CMYK)

    Synthesizes black using cyan, magenta, yellow, and black toner. The black is close to brown. Ideal for photos.
  - True Black (K)

    Prints black using black toner only. Ideal for diagrams and documents. When printing photos, the dark parts are blackish.
- Pure Black Text/Graphics

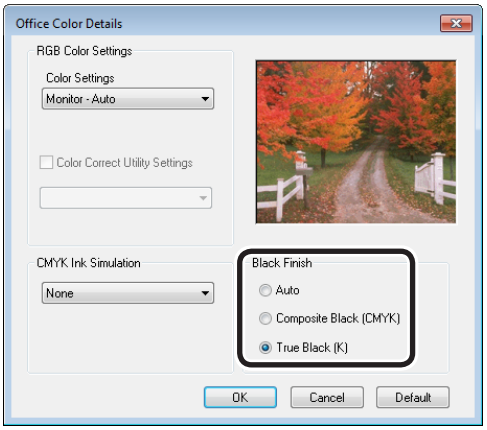
  If black that is defined using the RGB color space for text and graphics (R=0, G=0, B=0), or black that is defined using the CMYK color space (C=0, M=0, Y=0, K=100%) has been specified, specify whether to print using black (K) toner only.
  - ON

    Prints the text and graphics specified as black using black (K) toner only.
  - OFF

    The text and graphics specified as black are synthesized using either black (K) toner only or CMYK depending on the profile specified in color matching.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

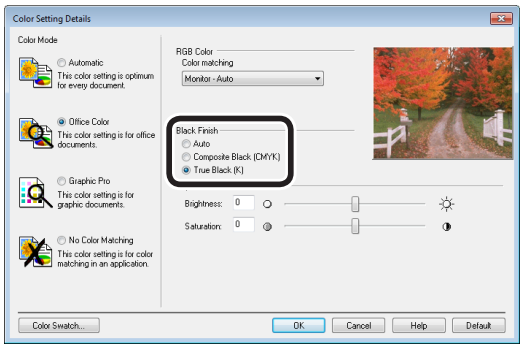
1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Select [Office Color] or [Graphic Pro] in [Color Mode] in the [Color] tab, and then click [Advanced].
5. Select the black finish method from [Black Finish]. Further, turn ON or OFF [Pure Black Text/Graphics] in [Graphic Pro] mode, and click [OK].



6. Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

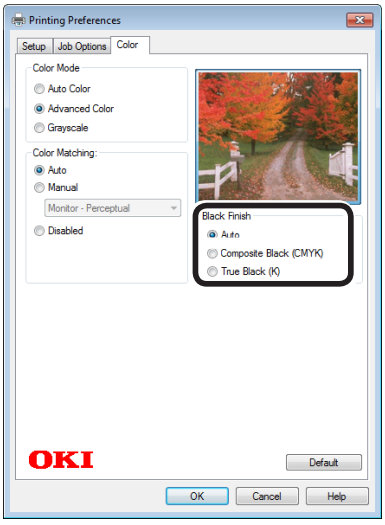
1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] from the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Click [Detail] in the [Setup] tab, and select [Office Color] or [Graphic Pro].
5. Select the black finish method from [Black Finish]. Further, turn ON or OFF [Pure Black Text/Graphics] in [Graphic Pro] mode, and click [OK].



6. Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

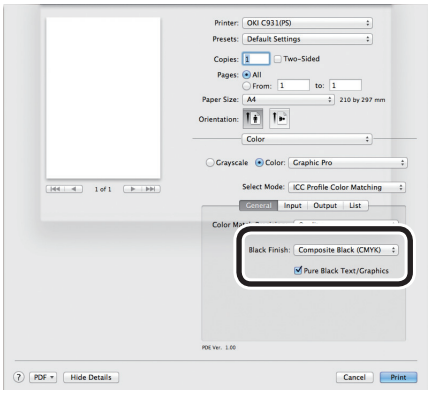
1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Select [Advanced Color] in [Color Mode] in the [Color] tab.
5. Select the black finish method from [Black Finish], and click [OK].



6. Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Select [Graphic Pro] in the [Color] panel.
4. Select [ICC Profile Color Matching] in [Mode Selection], and click the [General] button.
5. Select a suitable item using [Black Finish] and [Pure Black Text/Graphics].



6. Printing will be implemented.

Printing using monochrome (black and white)

The color data is printed using grayscale (shades of black and white) without touching the print data.

Note

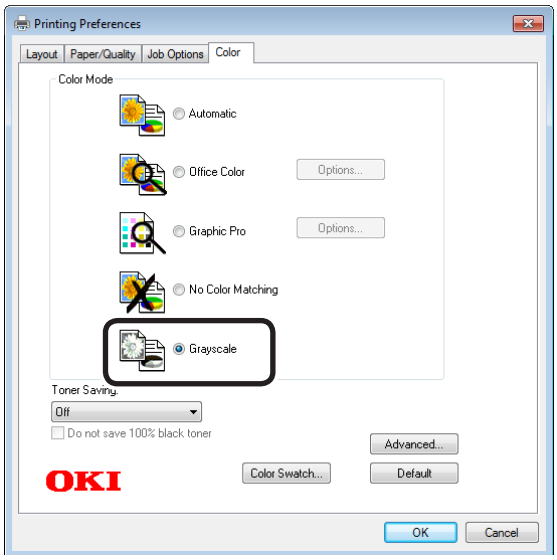
- If implementing color printing after printing by specifying "Monochrome", a delay may occur depending on the temperature adjustment of the fuser unit.

Memo

- Even if the cyan (blue), magenta (red), yellow toner cartridge life has been reached, black&white printing can be done by specifying "Mono".
  However, if the paper weight is set to "Ultra Heavy4", "Ultra Heavy5" or "Auto" and if the paper weight is comparable to "Ultra Heavy4", "Ultra Heavy5", set "Mono-Print Mode" in "Admin Menu" to "Normal Mode".
- See "Basic" for paper details.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

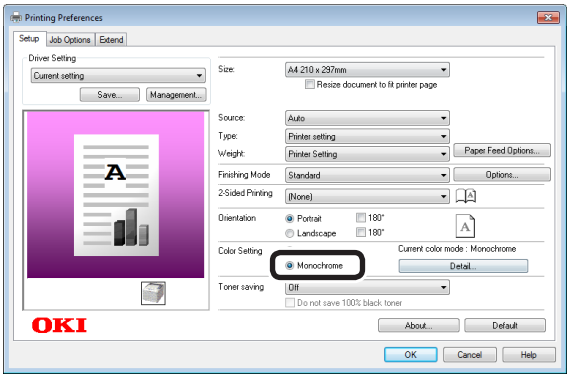
1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Select [Grayscale] in [Color Mode] in the [Color] tab, and then click [OK].



5. Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Select [Monochrome] in [Color Setting] in the [Setup] tab, and click [OK].



5. Printing will be implemented.

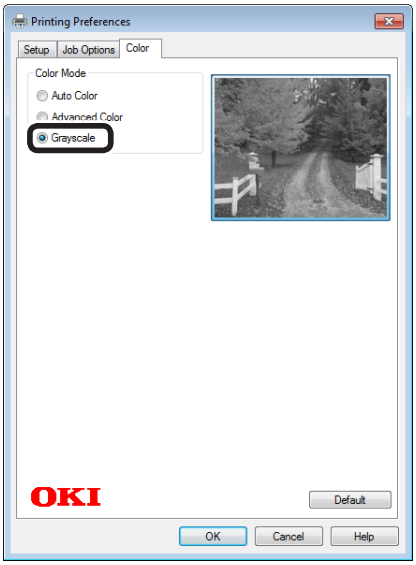
■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Grayscale] in [Color Mode] in the [Color] tab, and then click [OK].



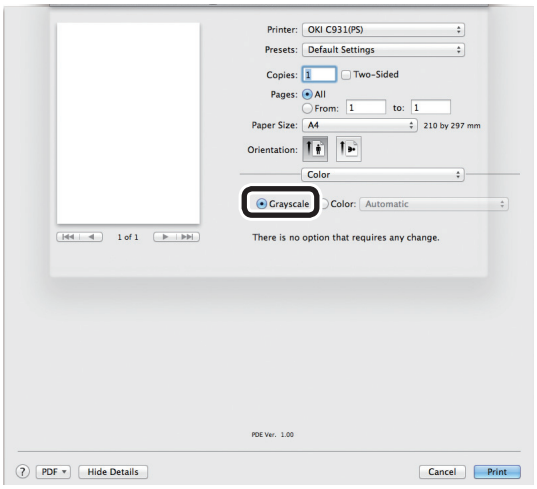
5 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Select [Grayscale] in the [Color] panel.



4 Printing will be implemented.

Rendering white lines between text and background inconspicuous (black overprint)

If imaging 100% black text on a colored background, you can print (overprint) by overlaying the text and background parts. Set if there are gaps such as white lines, etc., in the borders between the text and background.

Note

- Not usable with some applications.
- Cannot be used if the text is not 100% black, the text has been rendered as graphics by selecting the outlines, or if the text is an image.
- If the background color is dark (the toner layer thickness exceeds 240%), the toner may not be fixed securely. For example, if printing 100% black text on backgrounds of 50% cyan, 50% magenta, or 50% yellow, the toner layer thickness is 50+50+50+100=250%, which exceeds 240%.
- Cannot be used with Windows XPS printer drivers.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

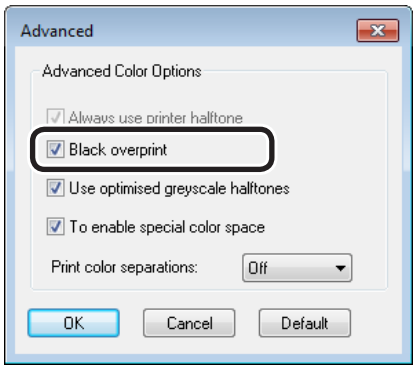
1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Click [Advanced] in the [Color] tab.

5 Enable the [Black overprint] check box, and click [OK].



6 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

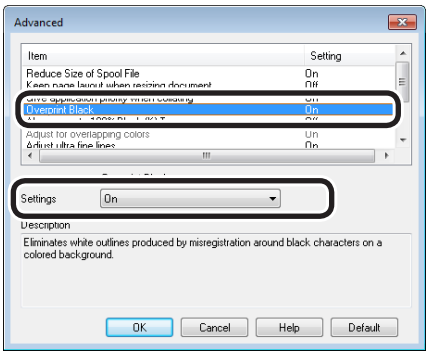
1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Click [Advanced] in the [Job Options] tab.

5 Select [Overprint Black], and then select [On] in [Settings], and click [OK].



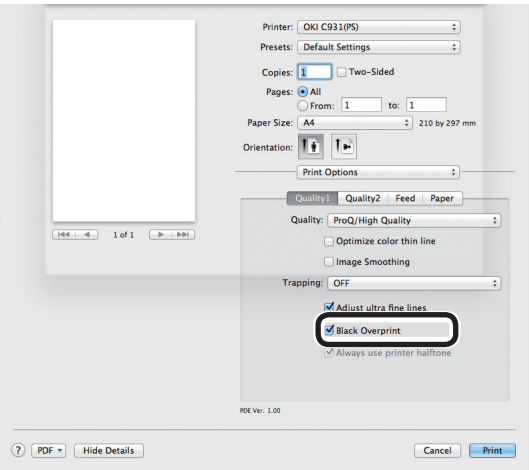
6 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Quality 1] in the [Print Options] panel, and enable the [Black Overprint] check box.



4 Printing will be implemented.

Calibrating plate misalignment (trapping)

Use if there are white or colored lines between two overlapping objects due to print misalignment.

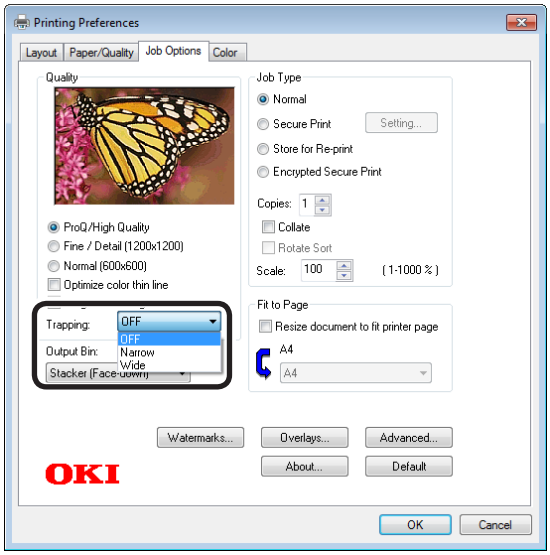
■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

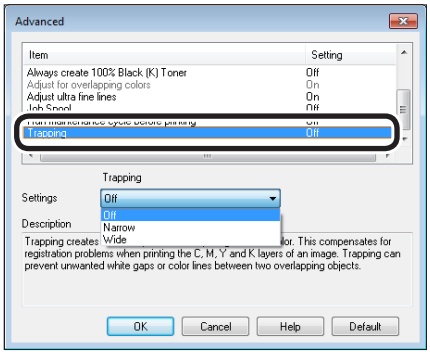
4 Select the print misalignment calibration method using [Trapping] in the [Job Options] tab, and click [OK].



5 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

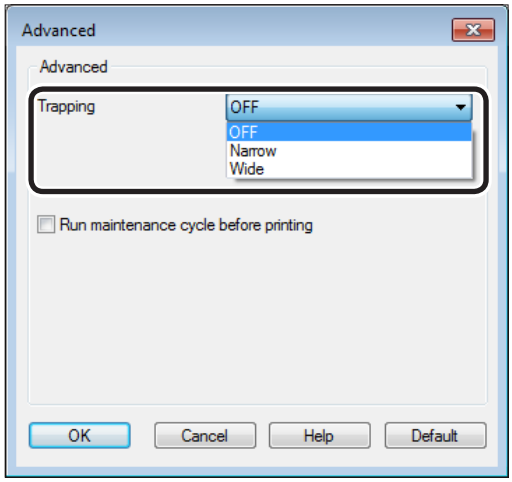
1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Click [Advanced] in the [Job Options] tab.
5. Select [Trapping], and then select the print misalignment calibration method using [Settings], and click [OK].



6. Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows XPS printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).
4. Click [Advanced] in the [Job Options] tab.
5. Select the print misalignment calibration method using [Trapping], and click [OK].



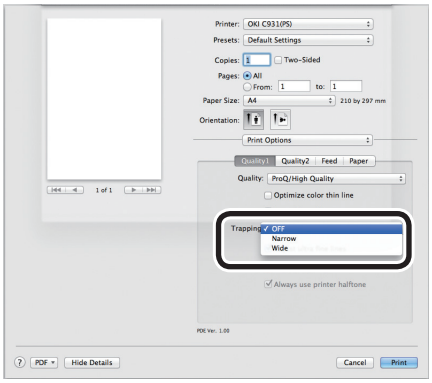
6. Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click the [Quality 1] button in the [Print Options] tab, and select the print misalignment calibration method using [Trapping].



4 Printing will be implemented.

Simulating print effects

The ink characteristics used in offset printing, etc., by adjusting the CMYK color data is simulated by the device.

The ICC profiles registered as standard are described below.

- RGB profile
  - sRGB
  - AdobeRGB
- CMYK input profile
  - SWOP
  - ISO Coated
  - Japan Color
  - JMPA
- CMYK link profile
  - SWOP
  - ISO Coated
  - Japan Color
  - JMPA
  - Classic-1
  - Classic-2

! Note

- Cannot be used with Windows XPS printer drivers.
- Cannot be used with Mac OS X printer drivers depending on the application.
- Enabled when [Color Mode] is set to either [Office Color] or [Graphic Pro].
- [Classic-1], [Classic-2] is a profile with a purpose to bring the color closer to the conventional device. You can choose from 2 types of profiles according to your preference.
- [Classic-1], [Classic-2] can be used when the latest printer driver and firmware are combined.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

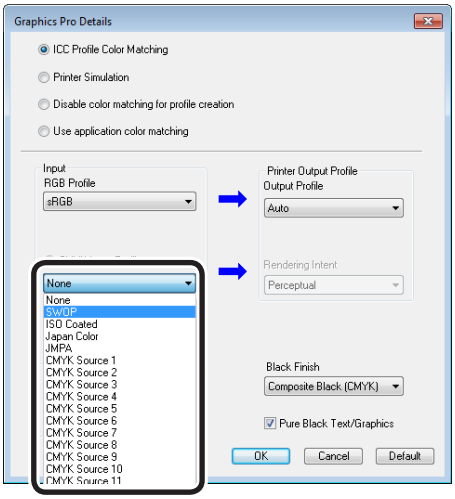
1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Select [Graphics Pro] in [Color Mode] in the [Color] tab, and then click [Advanced].

5 Select [Printer Simulation], and then select the ink characteristics to be simulated using [Simulation Target Profile].



Memo

- For business documents, etc., you can select [Office Color] in the [Color] tab in Steps 4 and 5, and then click [Advanced], and select the ink characteristics to be simulated using [CMYK Input Profile].

6 Click [OK].

7 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

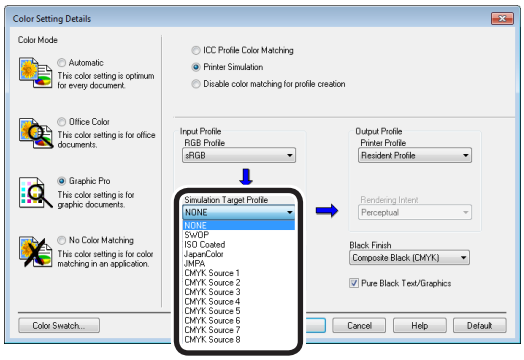
1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Click [Detail] in the [Setup] tab, and select [Graphic Pro].

5 Select [Printer Simulation], and then select the ink characteristics to be simulated using [Simulation Target Profile].



6 Click [OK].

7 Printing will be implemented.

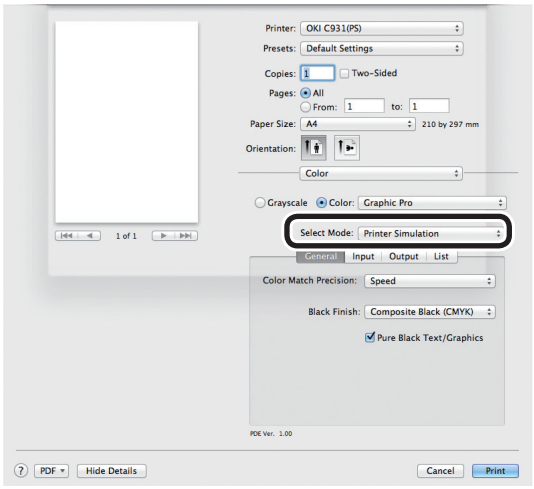
■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

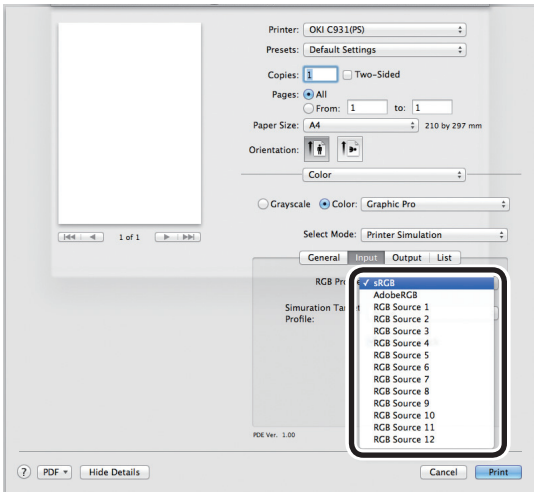
2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Select [Graphic Pro] in the [Color] panel.

4 Select [Printer Simulation] in [Select Mode].



5 Click the [Input] button, and select the ink characteristics to be simulated using [Simulation Target Profile].



Memo

- For business documents, etc., you can select [Office Color] in [Color Mode] when setting the [Color Options] function in Steps 3, 4 and 5, and then select the ink characteristics to be simulated using [CMYK Ink Simulation] in the [Office Color] functions settings.

6 Printing will be implemented.

Printing using color analysis (classification printing)

You can implement color separation printing of the four colors cyan, magenta, yellow, and black even if the application does not have a separation print function.

Note

- Cannot be used with Windows PCL and Windows XPS printer drivers.
- If using Adobe Illustrator, use the application's separation print function. Set the printer driver settings to No Color Matching.

Memo

- The Separations function is for creating under the print. Use black toner to print each specified primary color. There is no function for printing each primary color ink separately.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

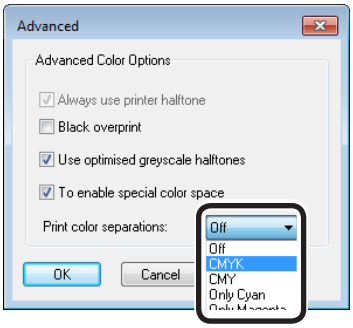
1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

4 Click the [Advanced] button in the [Color] tab.

5 Select the colors to be printed separately using [Print color separations], and then click [OK].



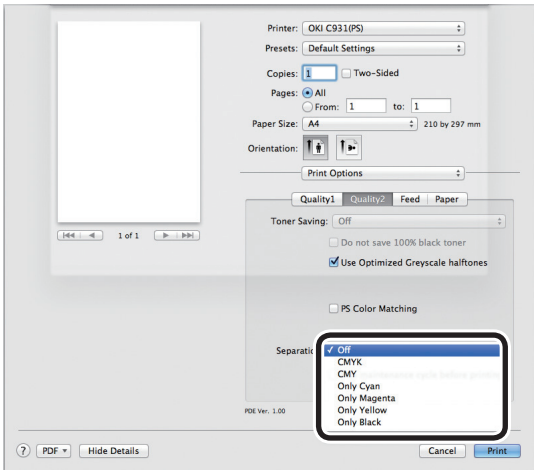
6 Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1 Open the file to be printed.

2 Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

3 Click the [Quality 2] button in the [Print Options] panel, and select the colors to be printed separately using [Separations].



4 Printing will be implemented.

Disabling the Postscript Color Matching

Memo

- Can be used with Mac OS X printer drivers.

This is a function to disable the PostScript Color Matching for RGB system color space.
If not conducting color matching, you can get the same print result (color) as the initial state setting of Windows.

Memo

- PostScript Color Matching is a standard color matching mechanism in PS that creates Generic RGB profile based Color Space Array (CSA) for RGB entered data, converts RGB to XYZ color space by CSA, and from that XYZ color space converts into CMYK of printer by using the Color Rendering Dictionary (CRD) installed in the printer.

■ Setup Items

- Un-checked

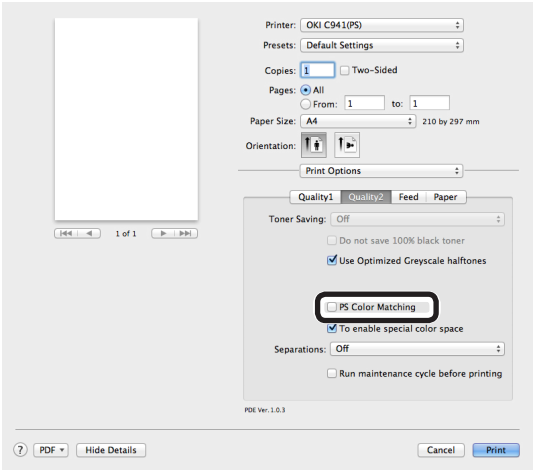
  PostScript Color Matching is not conducted.

- Checked

  PostScript Color Matching will be conducted.

■ Using Mac OS X printer drivers

1. Open the file to be printed.
2. Select [Print] in the [File] menu.
3. Select [Quality 2] in the [Print Options] panel.
4. Un-check [PS Color Matching].



Matching Colors Using Utilities

Color Correct Utility

Changing palette colors (Windows)

You can use the Color Correct Utility to specify the palette colors selected using Microsoft Excel and Word, etc., within the matching range.

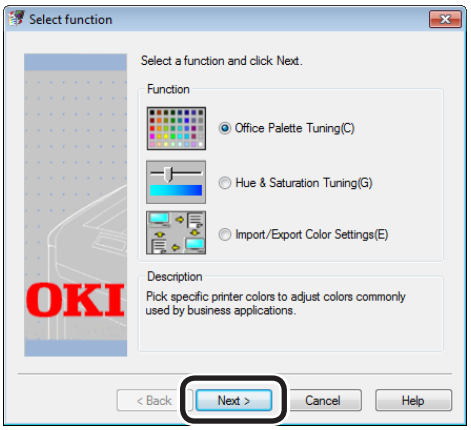
Note

- For how to set up the Color Correct Utility, see "Installing utilities" (P.178).
- Set up each printer driver.
- Cannot be used with Windows XPS printer drivers.
- Test print using paper of B5 size or greater.
- Cannot be used with shared printers.
- If color matching using the Color Correct Utility, computer administrator privileges are required.
- If job restrictions mod is enabled (encrypted jobs only), sample printing and test printing functions cannot be used. For job restrictions mode, see "[Admin Setup]" (P.297).

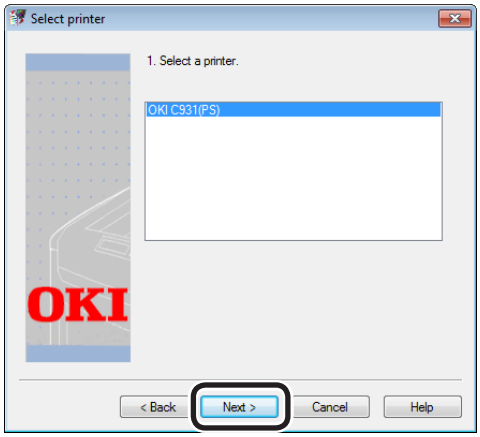
1 Implement color matching using the Color Correct Utility.

(1) Select [Start]>[All Programs]>[OKI Data]>[Color Correct Utility]>[Color Correct Utility] to start the Color Correct Utility.

(2) Select [Office Palette Tuning], and click [Next].



(3) The [Select printer] window will be displayed. Select the printer to be used, and click [Next].

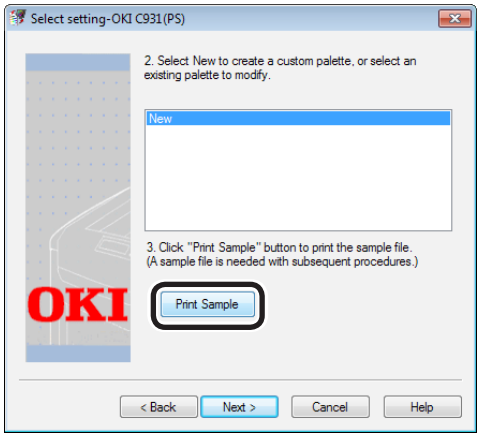


The Color Correct Utility will start.

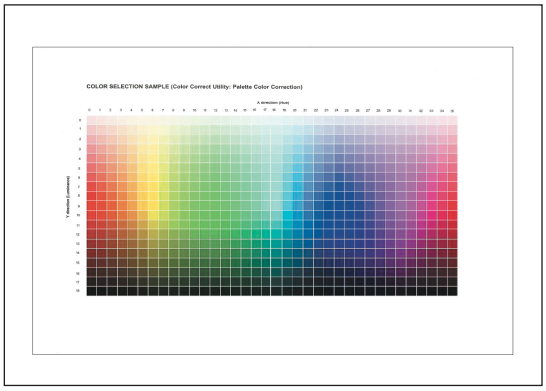
Memo

- The installed printer drivers will be displayed. Set up each printer driver.

(4) The "Select setting" window will be displayed. Select the setup from the list box, and click [Print Sample].

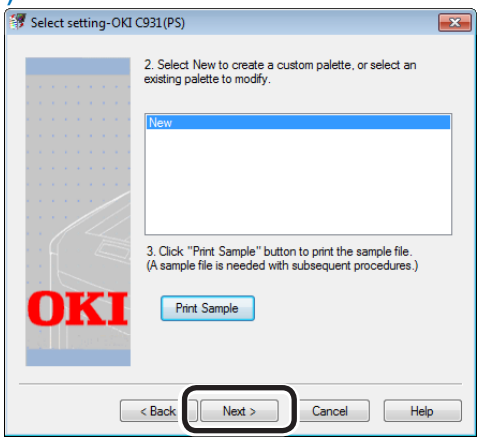


"COLOR SELECTION SAMPLE" will be printed.



(COLOR SELECTION SAMPLE)

(5) Click [Next].

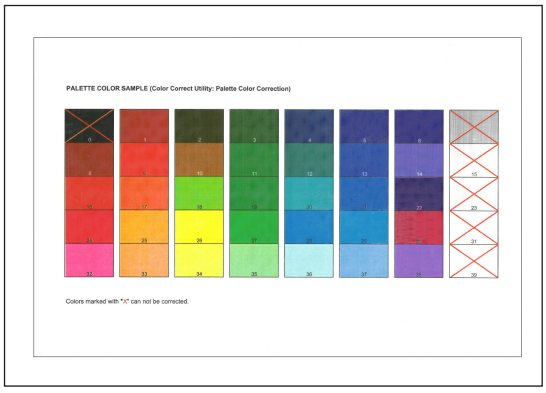


The "Office Palette Tuning" window will be displayed.

(6) Click [Print Palette].



"PALETTE COLOR SAMPLE" will be printed.



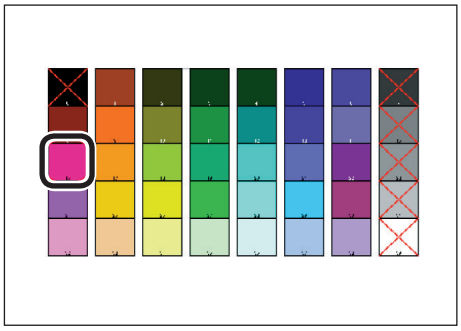
(PALETTE COLOR SAMPLE)

Note

- Colors marked with an X cannot be matched.

(7) Compare the palette in the "Office Palette Tuning" window (screen colors) and the "Palette color sample" that have been printed. Make adjustments if the colors are different. (An example of matching the red circles in the palette colors is given below)

- PALETTE COLOR SAMPLE



- "Office Palette Tuning" Window

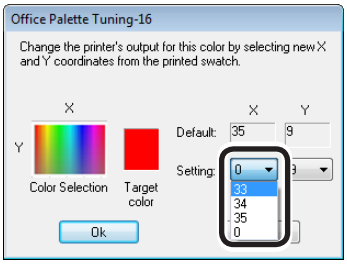


(8) Click the colors to be matched (screen colors) in the "Office Palette Tuning" window.



The "Adjustment values input" screen will be displayed.

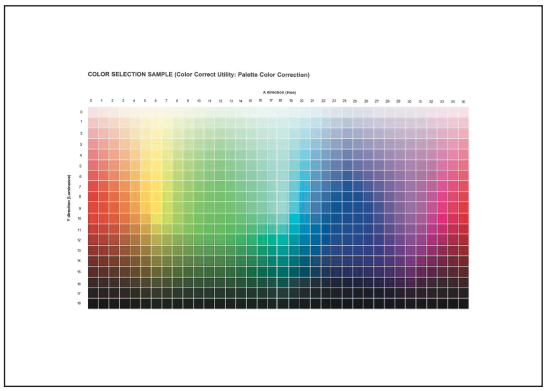
(9) Check the adjustable range using the X and Y values pull-down menus, and then click [Cancel].



Memo

- The adjustable range depends on the colors in consideration of overall balance.

(10) Search for the most desirable color within the matching range for the colors to be adjusted (screen colors) in the "Office Palette Tuning" window using the "COLOR SELECTION SAMPLE", and check the values (X and Y values) for the X axis (hue) and Y axis (brightness).

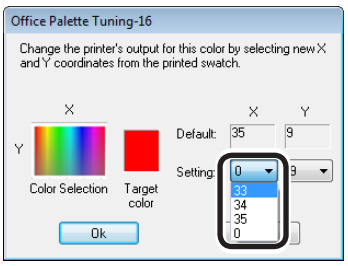


(11) Click the colors to be matched (screen colors) in the "Office Palette Tuning" window.



The "Adjustment values input" screen will be displayed.

(12) Select the X and Y values that have been checked in (10) using the "Adjustment values input" screen, and click [OK].



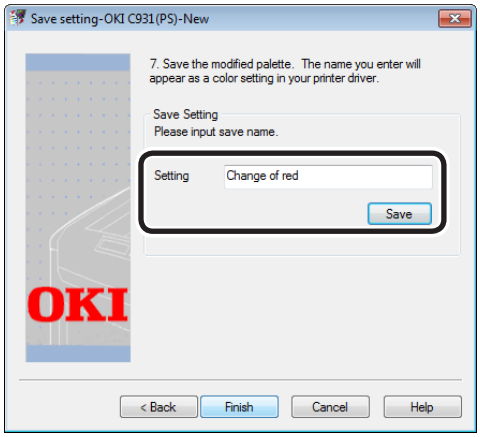
The display will return to the "Office Palette Tuning" window.

(13) Click [Print Palette] to print the "PALETTE COLOR SAMPLE". Check that the colors in the "PALETTE COLOR SAMPLE" after the changes are close to the color samples for the set values, and click [Next].

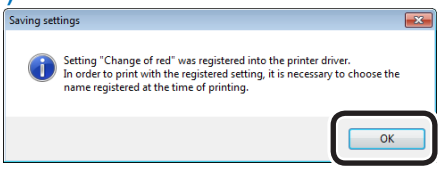
To adjust any other colors, repeat Steps (8) to (13).



(14) Enter a name for your Color Settings and click [Save].



(15) Click [OK].



! Note

- If updating or reinstalling the printer drivers, when the Color Correct Utility is started, the matched color names that have been created will be read again. Check that the matched color name is displayed in [Select setting], and click [Finish].

(16) Click [Finish] to finish the Color Correct Utility.

2 Select and print the settings name using the printer drivers.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

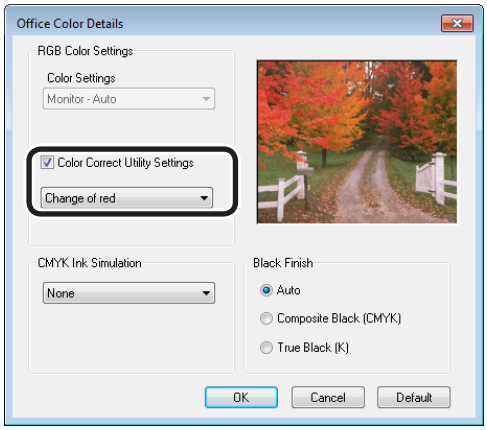
(1) Open the file to be printed.

(2) Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

(3) Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

(4) Select [Office Color] in [Color Mode] in the [Color] tab, and then click [Advanced].

(5) Enable the [Color Correct Utility Settings] in [RGB Color Settings] in the [Office Color Details] window, and then select the settings created using the Color Correct Utility, and click [OK].



! Note

- If updating or reinstalling the printer drivers, when the Color Correct Utility is started, the matched color names that have been created will be read again. Check that the matched color name is displayed in [Setup Selection], and click [Finish].

(6) Printing will be implemented.

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

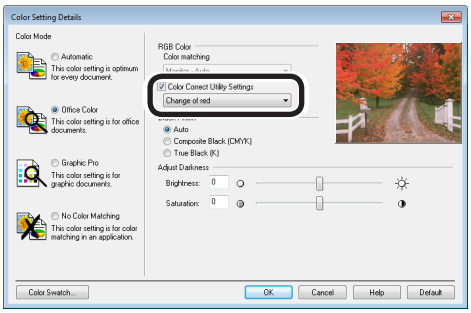
(1) Open the file to be printed.

(2) Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

(3) Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

(4) Click [Detail] in the [Setup] tab, and select [Office Color].

(5) Enable [Color Correct Utility Settings], and then select the settings created using the Color Correct Utility, and click [OK].



(6) Printing will be implemented.

Changing palette colors (Macintosh)

You can use the Color Correct Utility to specify the palette colors selected using Microsoft Excel and Word, etc., within the matching range.

Note

- For how to set up the Color Correct Utility, see "Installing utilities" (P.178).
- Set up each PPD file.
- Test print using paper of A4 size or greater.
- Cannot be used with shared printers.
- If job restrictions mod is enabled (encrypted jobs only), sample printing and test printing functions cannot be used. For job restrictions mode, see "[Admin Setup]" (P.297).

1 Implement color matching using the Color Correct Utility.

(1) Start the Color Correct Utility.

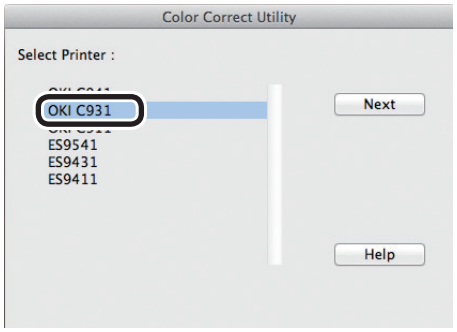


Color Correct Utility.app

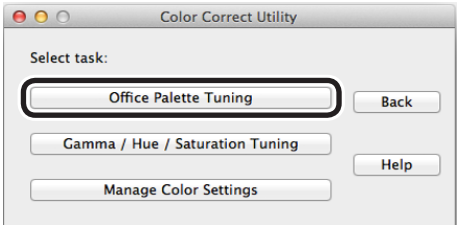
(2) Select the target printer.

Memo

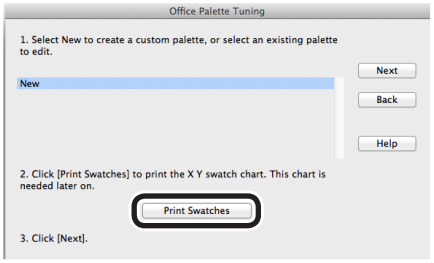
- Printers supported by the tool will be displayed.



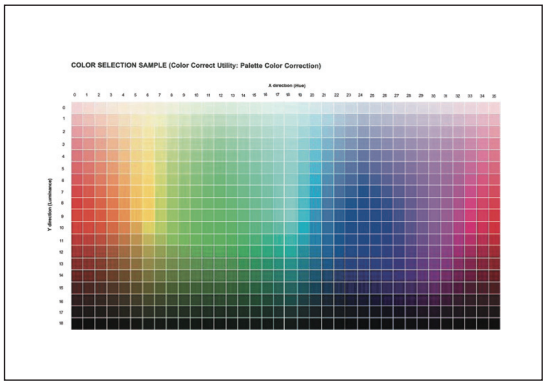
(3) Click [Office Palette Tuning].



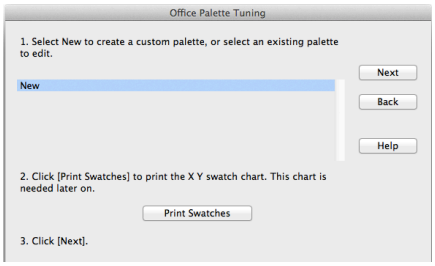
(4) The "Office Palette Tuning" screen will be displayed. Select the setup from the list box, and click [Print Swatches].



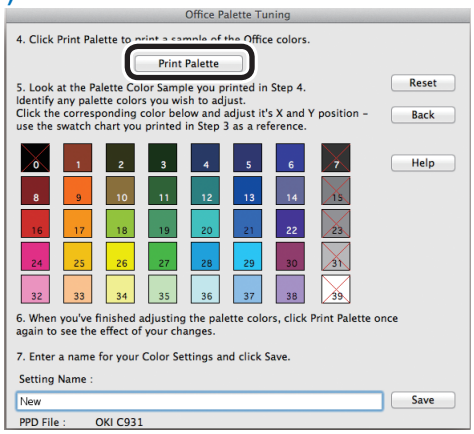
"COLOR SELECTION SAMPLE" will be printed.



(5) Click [Next].



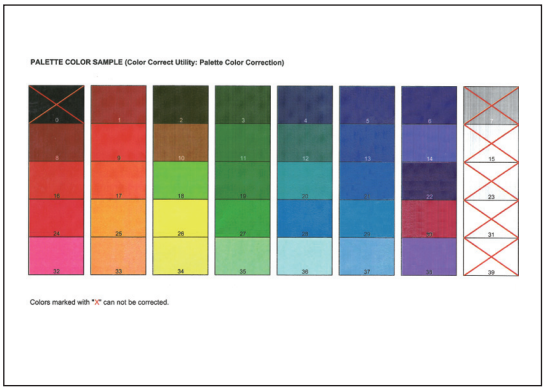
(6) Click [Print Palette].



Memo

- The PPD file select in Step (2) will be displayed at the lower left of the screen.

  "PALETTE COLOR SAMPLE" will be printed.

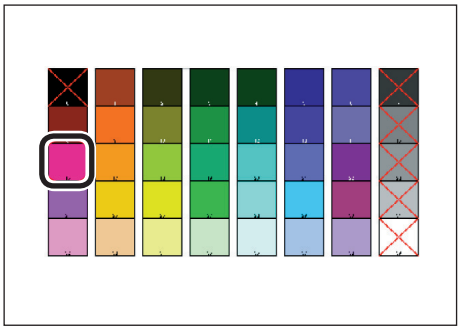


Note

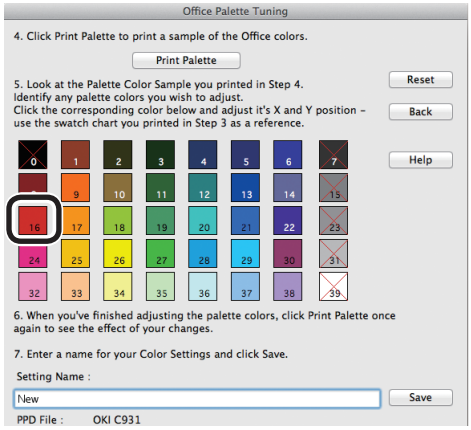
- Colors marked with an X cannot be matched.

(7) Compare the palette in the "Office Palette Tuning" window (screen colors) and the "matching color samples" that have been printed. Make adjustments if the colors are different. (An example of matching the red circles in the palette colors is given below)

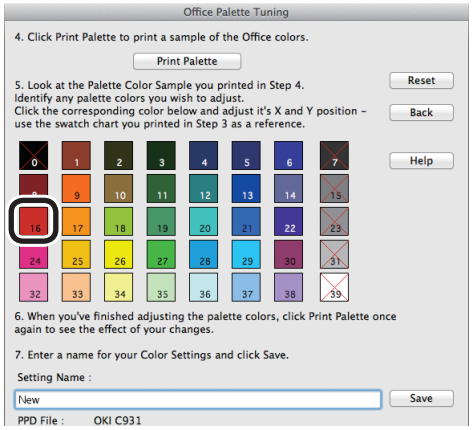
- PALETTE COLOR SAMPLE



- "Office Palette Tuning" Window

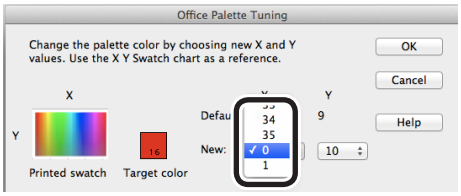


(8) Click the colors to be matched (screen colors) in the "Office Palette Tuning" window.



The "Adjustment values input" screen will be displayed.

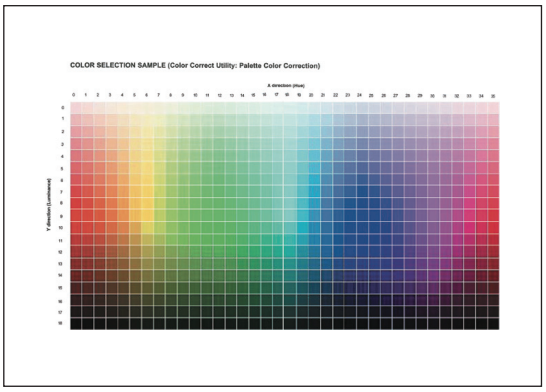
(9) Check the adjustable range using the X and Y values popup boxes, and then click [Cancel].



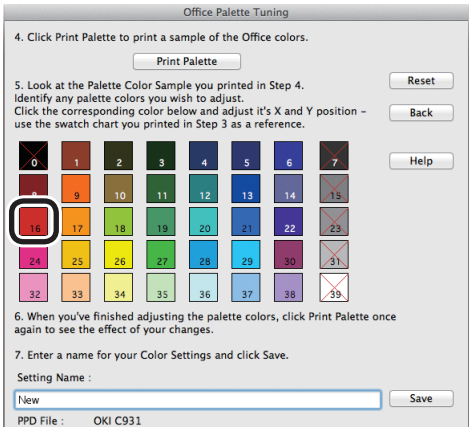
Memo

- The adjustable range depends on the colors in consideration of overall balance.

(10) Search for the most desirable color within the matching range for the colors to be adjusted (screen colors) in the "Office Palette Tuning" window using the "COLOR SELECTION SAMPLE", and check the values (X and Y values) for the X axis (hue) and Y axis (brightness).

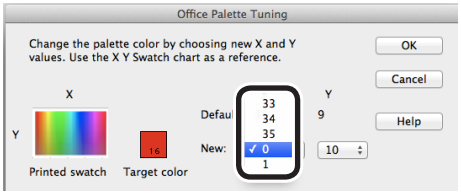


(11) Click the colors to be matched (screen colors) in the "Office Palette Tuning" window.



The "Adjustment values input" screen will be displayed.

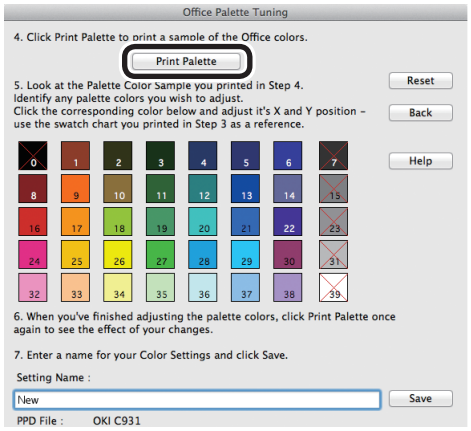
(12) Select the X and Y values that have been checked in (10) using the "Adjustment values input" screen, and click [OK].



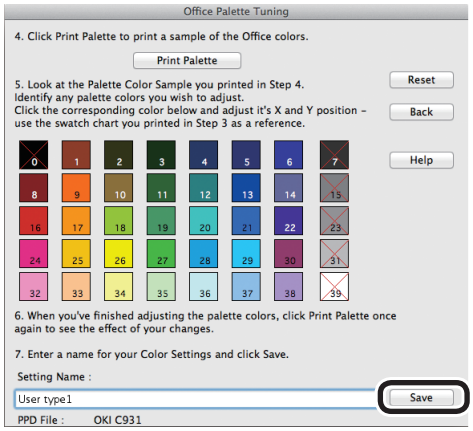
The display will return to the "Office Palette Tuning" window.

(13) Click [Print Palette] to print the "PALETTE COLOR SAMPLE". Check that the colors in the "PALETTE COLOR SAMPLE" after the changes are close to the color samples for the set values.

To adjust any other colors, repeat Steps (8) to (13).



(14) Enter a name for your Color Settings and click [Save].



(15) Click [Finish] to finish the Color Correct Utility.

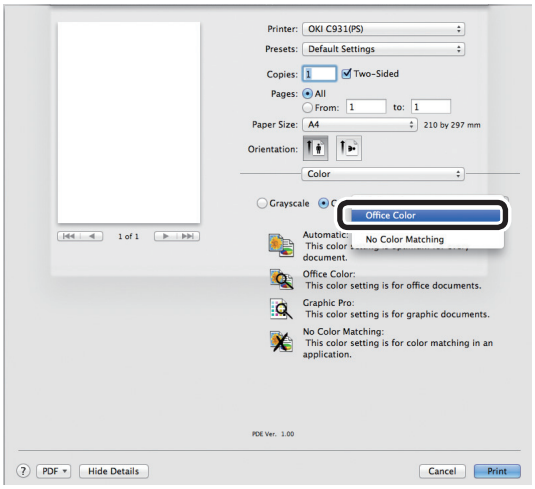
(16) Temporarily delete and then re-register the printer that was registered using [Print & Scan] in the [System Preferences].

2 Select and print the settings name using the printer drivers.

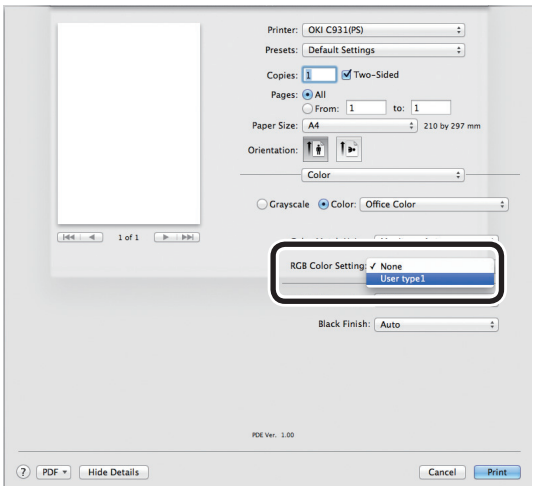
(1) Open the file to be printed.

(2) Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

(3) Select [Office Color] in the [Color] panel.



(4) Select the matched color name created using the Color Correct Utility in [RGB Color Setting].



(5) Printing will be implemented.

Changing gamma values and hues (Windows)

Color matching can be implemented by adjusting the gamma values and hues using the Color Correct Utility.

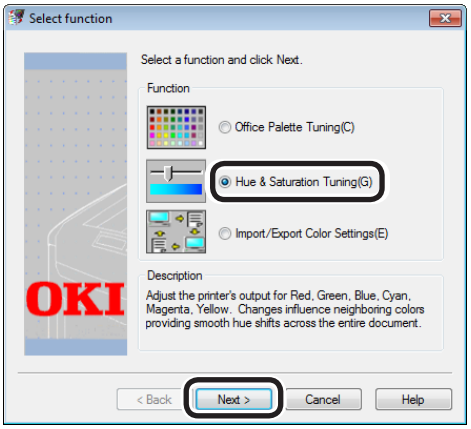
Note

- For how to set up the Color Correct Utility, see "Installing utilities" (P.178).
- Set up each printer driver.
- Cannot be used with Windows XPS printer drivers.
- Test print using paper of B5 size or greater.
- Cannot be used with shared printers.
- If using the Color Correct Utility, computer administrator privileges are required.
- If job restrictions mod is enabled (encrypted jobs only), test printing functions cannot be used. For job restrictions mode, see "[Admin Setup]" (P.297).

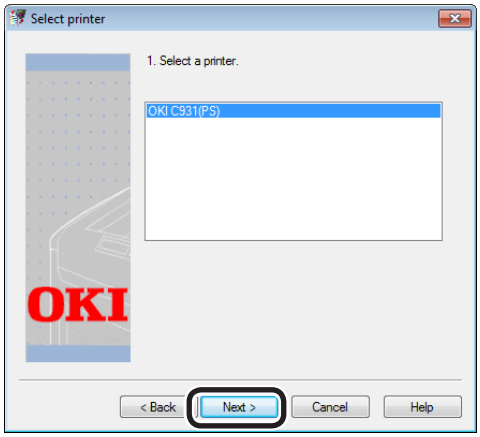
1 Use the Color Correct Utility to change the gamma values and hues, etc.

(1) Select [Start]>[All Programs]>[OKI Data]>[Color Correct Utility]>[Color Correct Utility] to start the Color Correct Utility.

(2) Select [Hue & Saturation Tuning], and click [Next].



(3) The [Select printer] window will be displayed. Select the printer to be adjusted, and click [Next].

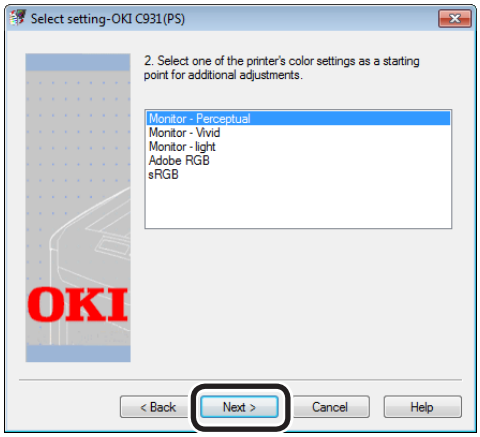


The Color Correct Utility will start.

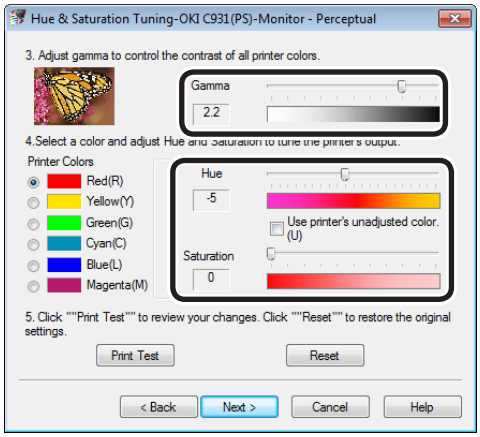
Memo

- The installed printer drivers will be displayed. Set up each printer driver.

(4) The "Select setting" window will be displayed. Select the basic mode from the list box, and click [Next].

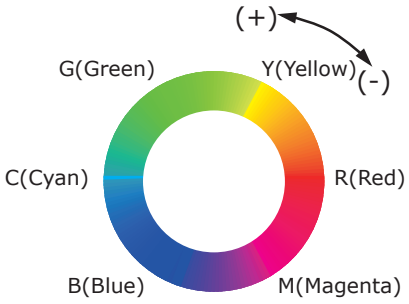


(5) Use the slide bars to change and adjust the Gamma, Hue, Saturation values.



Memo

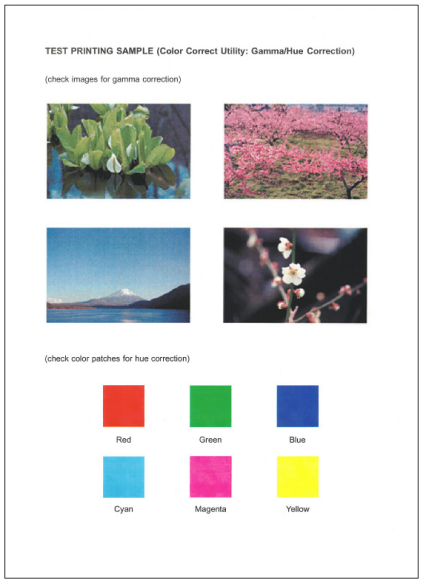
- The overall brightness can be adjusted using the gamma slide bar, and the output colors adjusted using the hue/brightness slide bars.
- The further to the left the [Gamma] is adjusted, the brighter the image.
- The matched colors can be switched using the printer color buttons.
- Adjust the [Hue] for each color either clockwise (+) or counterclockwise (-) in the color circle. For example, moving the Y (yellow) slide bar clockwise (+) the color approaches G (green), and moving the bar counterclockwise (-) the color approaches R (red).



- [Use printer's unadjusted color.] adjusts so that the 100% of the primary toner colors are used. Enable this check box to anchor the [Hue] slider bar for the relevant color, and adjust so that printing arranges the toners as described below.

Printer Colors	Result
Cyan (C)	Cyan toner 100%
Magenta (M)	Magenta toner 100%
Yellow (Y)	Yellow toner 100%
Red (R)	Magenta toner 100% + Yellow toner 100%
Green (G)	Cyan toner 100% + Yellow toner 100%
Blue (B)	Cyan toner 100% + Magenta toner 100%

(6) Click [Print Palette].



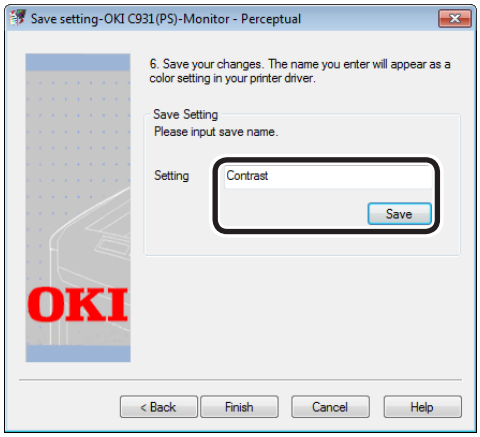
"TEST PRINTING SAMPLE" will be printed.

(7) Check the adjusted results.

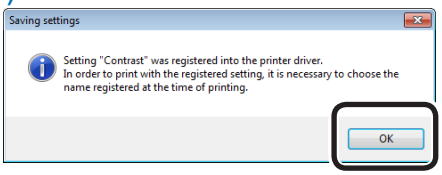
If the desired match results have not been obtained, repeat Steps (5) and (6).

(8) Click [Next].

(9) Enter a name for your Color Settings and click [Save].



(10) Click [OK].



Note

- If updating or reinstalling the printer drivers, when the Color Correct Utility is started, the matched color names that have been created will be read again. Check that the matched color name is displayed in [Setup Selection], and click [Finish].

(11) Click [Finish] to finish the Color Correct Utility.

2 Select and print the settings name using the printer drivers.

■ Using Windows PS printer drivers

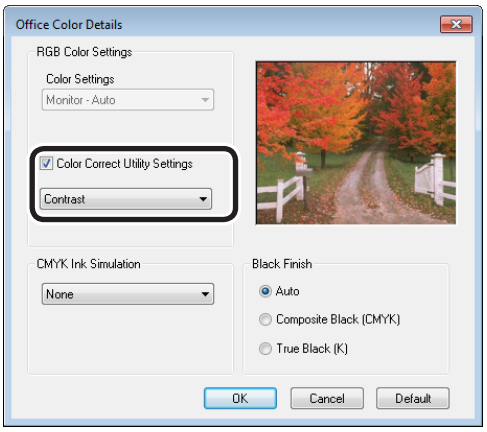
(1) Open the file to be printed.

(2) Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

(3) Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

(4) Select [Office Color] in [Color Mode] in the [Color] tab, and then click [Advanced].

(5) Enable the [Color Correct Utility Settings] in [RGB Color Settings] in the [Office Color Details] window, and then select the settings created using the Color Correct Utility, and click [OK].



(6) Printing will be implemented.

! Note

- If updating or reinstalling the printer drivers, when the Color Correct Utility is started, the matched color names that have been created will be read again. Check that the matched color name is displayed in [Setup Selection], and click [Finish].

■ Using Windows PCL printer drivers

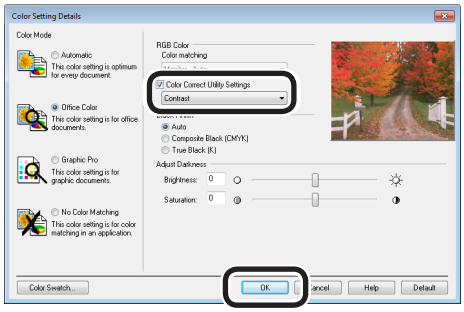
(1) Open the file to be printed.

(2) Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

(3) Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

(4) Click [Detail] in the [Setup] tab, and select [Office Color].

(5) Enable [Color Correct Utility Settings], and then select the settings created using the Color Correct Utility, and click [OK].



(6) Printing will be implemented.

Changing gamma values and hues (Macintosh)

Color matching can be implemented by adjusting the gamma values and hues using the Color Correct Utility.

Note

- For how to set up the Color Correct Utility, see "Installing utilities" (P.178).
- Set up each PPD file.
- Test print using paper of A4 size or greater.
- Cannot be used with shared printers.
- If job restrictions mod is enabled (encrypted jobs only), test printing functions cannot be used. For job restrictions mode, see "[Admin Setup]" (P.297).

1 Use the Color Correct Utility to change the gamma values and hues, etc.

(1) Start the Color Correct Utility.

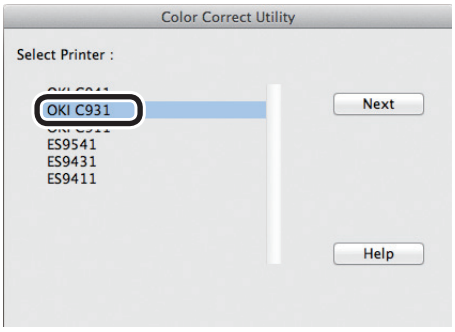


Color Correct Utility.app

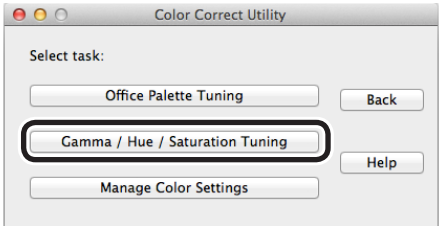
(2) Select the target printer.

Memo

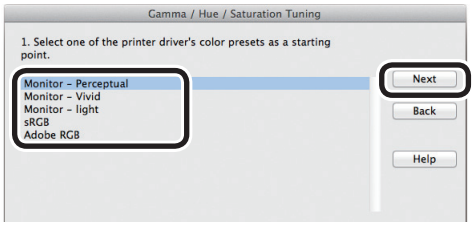
- Printers supported by the tool will be displayed.



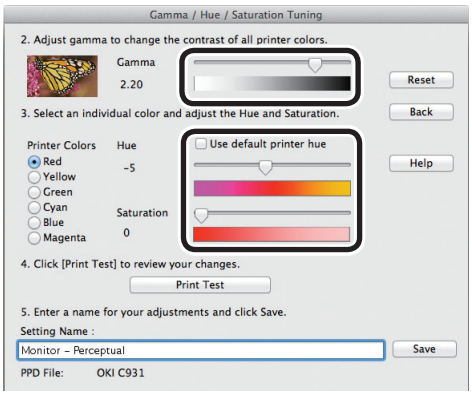
(3) Click [Gamma / Hue / Saturation Tuning].



(4) The "Gamma / Hue / Saturation Tuning" screen will be displayed. Select the basic mode from the list box, and click [Next].

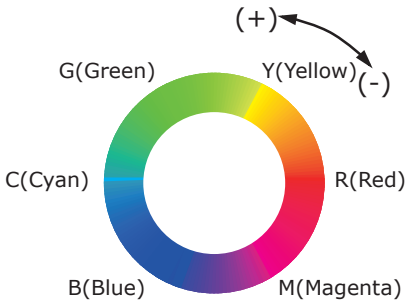


(5) Use the slide bars to change and adjust the Gamma, Hue, Saturation values.



Memo

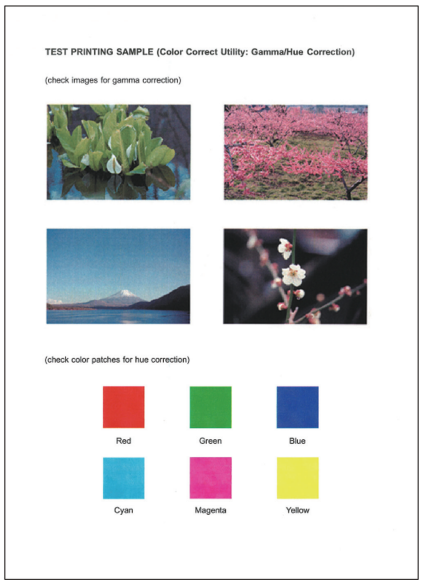
- The PPD file select in Step (2) will be displayed at the lower left of the screen.
- The overall brightness can be adjusted using the gamma slide bar, and the output colors adjusted using the hue/brightness slide bars.
- The further to the left the "Gamma" is adjusted, the brighter the image.
- The matched colors can be switched using the printer color buttons.
- Adjust the [Hue] for each color either clockwise (+) or counterclockwise (-) in the color circle. For example, moving the Y (yellow) slide bar clockwise (+) the color approaches G (green), and moving the bar counterclockwise (-) the color approaches R (red).



- [Use ink primary colors] adjusts so that the 100% of the primary toner colors are used. Enable this check box to anchor the [Hue] slider bar for the relevant color, and adjust so that printing arranges the toners as described below.

Printer Colors	Result
Cyan (C)	Cyan toner 100%
Magenta (M)	Magenta toner 100%
Yellow (Y)	Yellow toner 100%
Red (R)	Magenta toner 100% + Yellow toner 100%
Green (G)	Cyan toner 100% + Yellow toner 100%
Blue (B)	Cyan toner 100% + Magenta toner 100%

(6) Click [Print Palette].

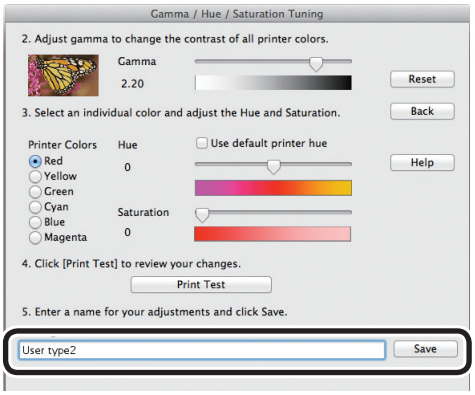


"TEST PRINTING SAMPLE" will be printed.

(7) Check the adjusted results.

If the desired match results have not been obtained, repeat Steps (5) and (6).

(8) Enter a name for your Color Settings and click [Save].



(9) Close the Color Correct Utility.

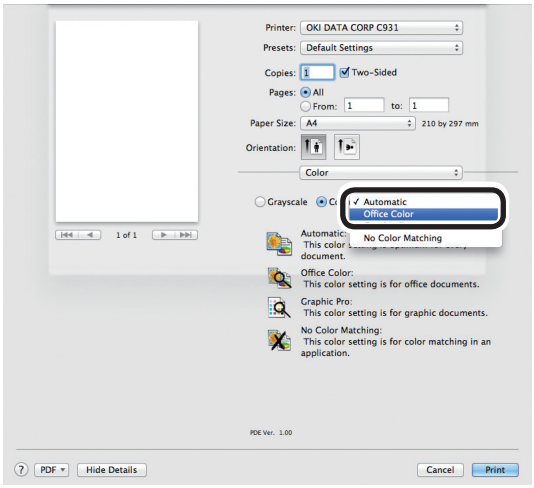
(10) Temporarily delete and then re-register the printer that was registered using [Print & Scan] in the [System Preferences].

2 Select and print the settings name using the printer drivers.

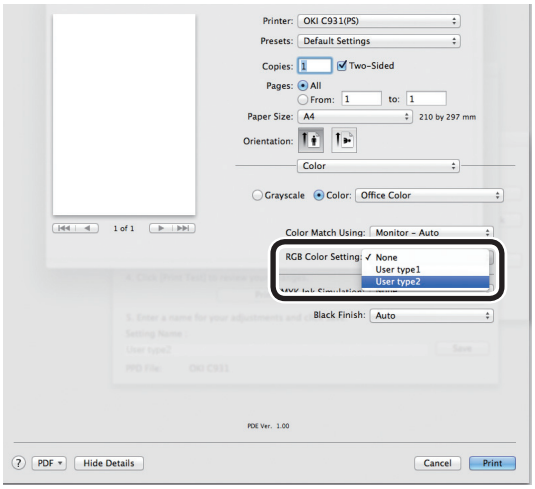
(1) Open the file to be printed.

(2) Select [Print] in the [File] menu.

(3) Select [Office Color] in the [Color] panel.



(4) Select the matched color name created using the Color Correct Utility in [RGB Color Setting].



(5) Printing will be implemented.

Saving color adjustment settings (Windows)

You can save the details set using the Color Correct Utility to a file.

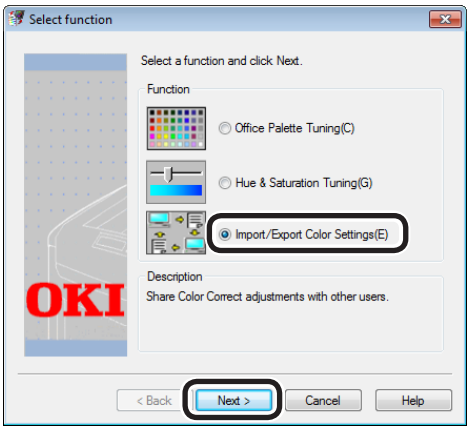
Note

- For how to set up the Color Correct Utility, see "Installing utilities" (P.178).
- Set up each printer driver.
- Cannot be used with shared printers.
- If using the Color Correct Utility, computer administrator privileges are required.

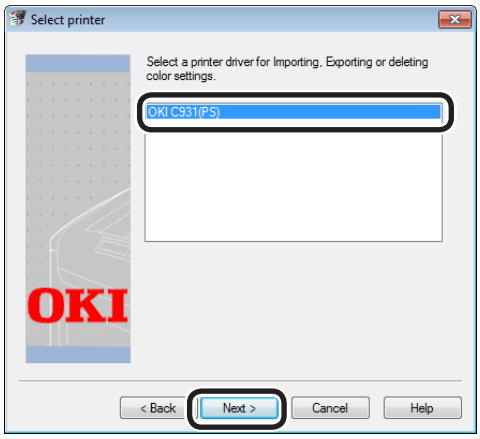
1 Start the Color Correct Utility.

(1) Select [Start]>[All Programs]>[OKI Data]>[Color Correct Utility]>[Color Correct Utility] to start the Color Correct Utility.

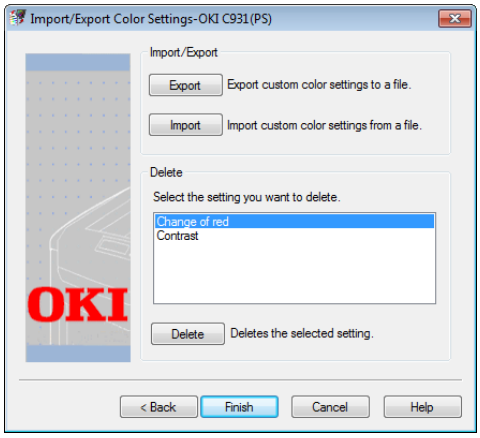
(2) Select [Import/Export Color Settings], and click [Next].



(3) Select the printer whose settings are to be saved, and click [Next].

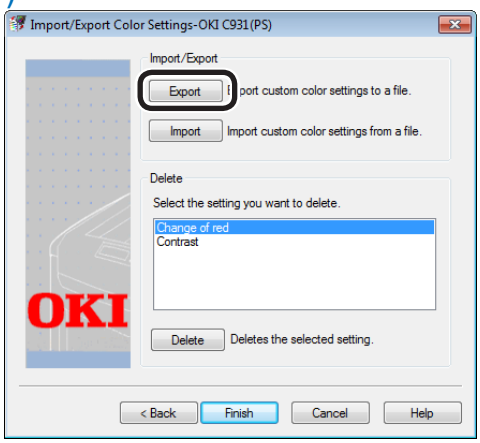


The [Import/Export/Delete] screen will be displayed.

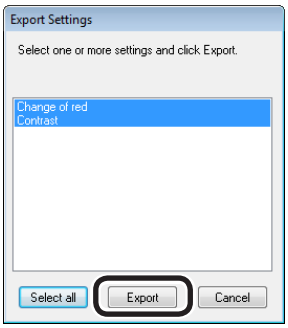


2 Save the settings.

(1) Click [Export].



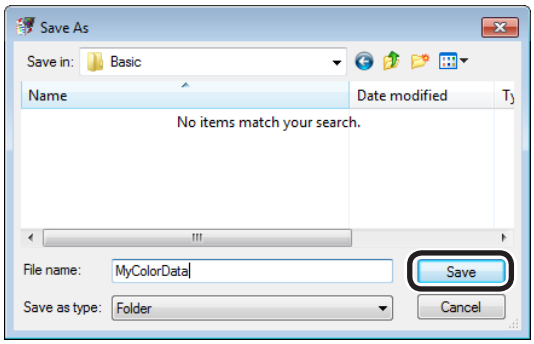
(2) Select the settings to be exported from the settings list in the "Export Settings" screen, and click [Export].



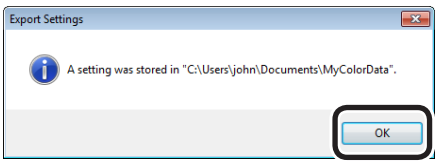
Memo

- Hold down the Ctrl or Shift key when selecting to select multiple settings.

(3) Select the save destination, and enter the settings folder name and click [Save].



(4) Click [OK].



(5) Click [Finish] to finish the Color Correct Utility.

Saving color matching settings (Macintosh)

You can save the details set using the Color Correct Utility to a file.

Note

- For how to set up the Color Correct Utility, see "Installing utilities" (P.178).
- Set up each PPD file.
- Cannot be used with shared printers.

1 Start the Color Correct Utility.

(1) Start the Color Correct Utility.

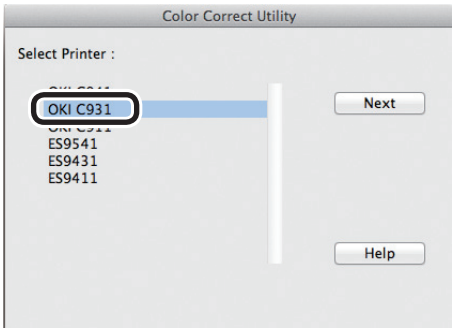


Color Correct Utility.app

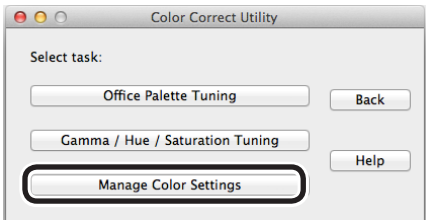
(2) Select the target printer.

Memo

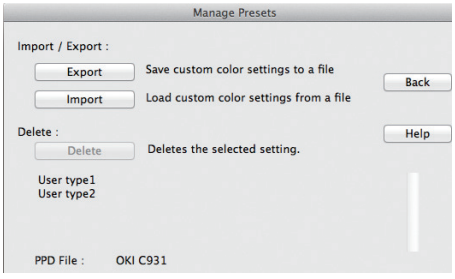
- Printers supported by the tool will be displayed.



(3) Click [Manage Color Settings].



The "Manage Presets" screen will be displayed.

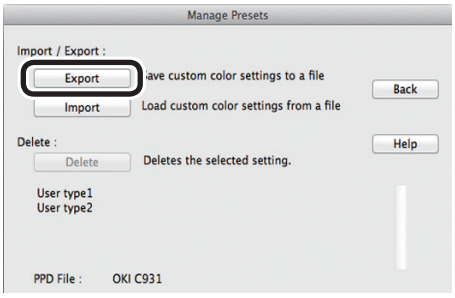


Memo

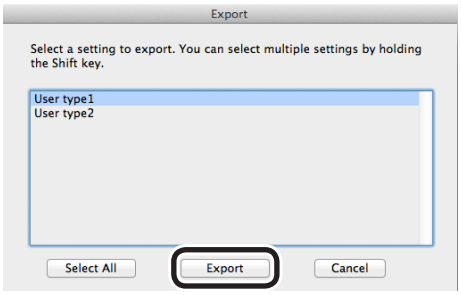
- The PPD file select in Step (2) will be displayed at the lower left of the screen.

2 Save the settings.

(1) Click [Export].



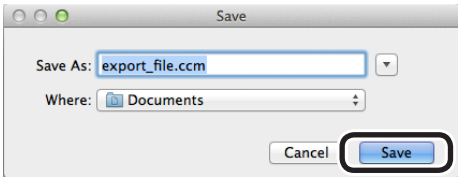
(2) Select the settings to be exported from the settings list in the "Export" screen, and click [Export].



Memo

- Hold down the Shift key when selecting to select multiple settings.

(3) Select the save destination, and enter the settings folder name and click [Save].



(4) Close the Color Correct Utility.

Importing color matching settings (Windows)

The color matching settings can be read from the file.

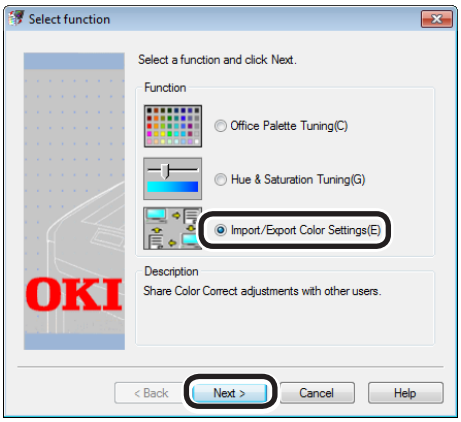
Note

- For how to set up the Color Correct Utility, see "Installing utilities" (P.178).
- Set up each printer driver.
- Cannot be used with shared printers.
- If using the Color Correct Utility, computer administrator privileges are required.

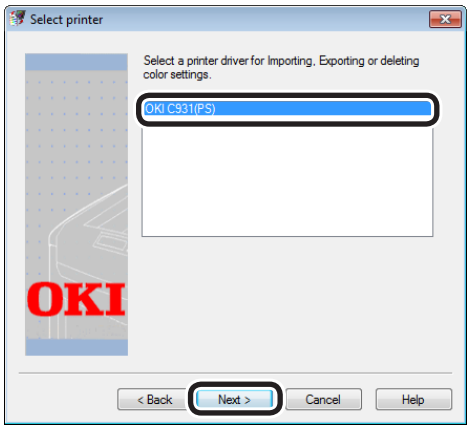
1 Start the Color Correct Utility.

(1) Select [Start]>[All Programs]>[OKI Data]>[Color Correct Utility]>[Color Correct Utility] to start the Color Correct Utility.

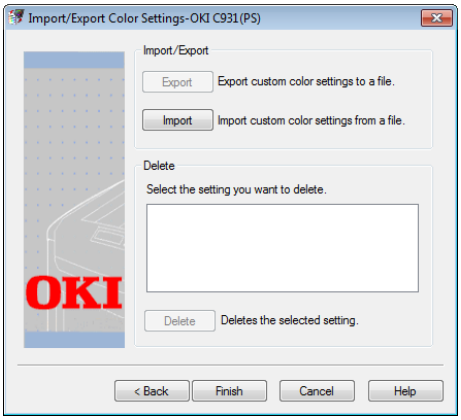
(2) Select [Import/Export Color Settings], and click [Next].



(3) Select the printer whose settings are to be read, and click [Next].

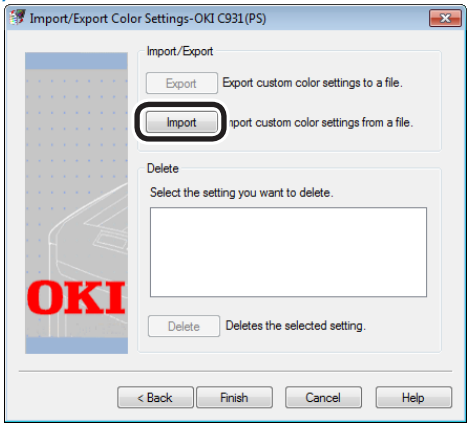


The "Import/Export Color Settings" screen will be displayed.

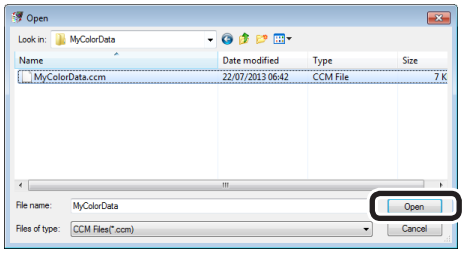


2 Read the settings.

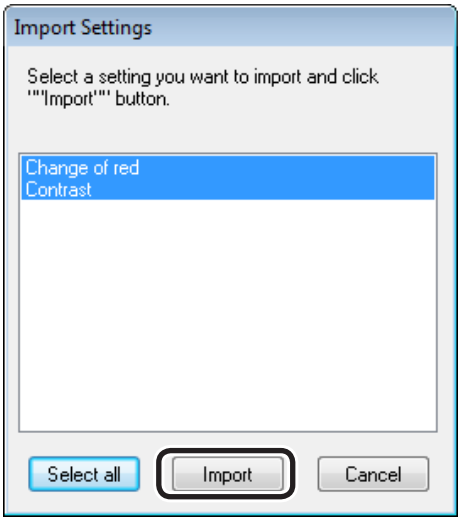
(1) Click [Import].



(2) Select the ".CCM" file in the folder to which the settings to be read have been saved, and click [Open].



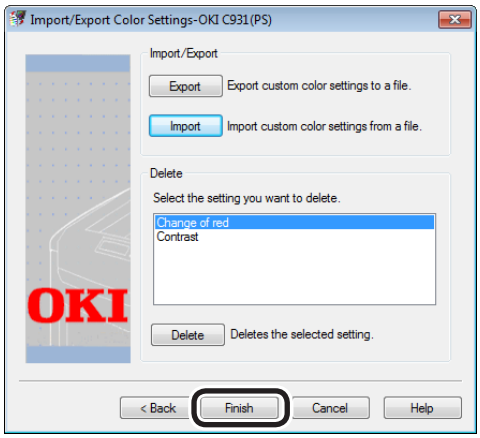
(3) Select the settings to be imported from the settings list in the "Import Settings" screen, and click [Import].



Memo

- Hold down the Ctrl or Shift key when selecting to select multiple settings.

(4) Check that the settings have been read, and click [Finish].



Importing color matching settings (Macintosh)

The color matching settings can be read from the file.

Note

- For how to set up the Color Correct Utility, see "Installing utilities" (P.178).
- Set up each PPD file.
- Cannot be used with shared printers.

1 Start the Color Correct Utility.

(1) Start the Color Correct Utility.

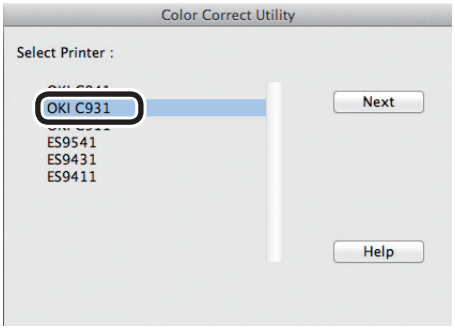


Color Correct Utility.app

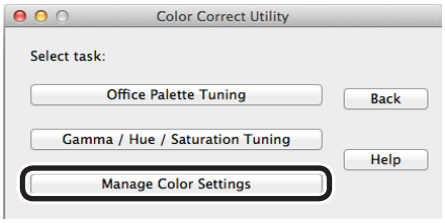
(2) Select the target printer.

Memo

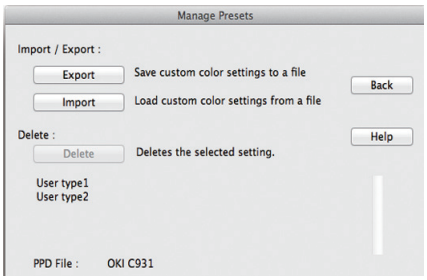
- Printers supported by the tool will be displayed.



(3) Click [Manage Color Settings] .



The "Manage Presets" screen will be displayed.

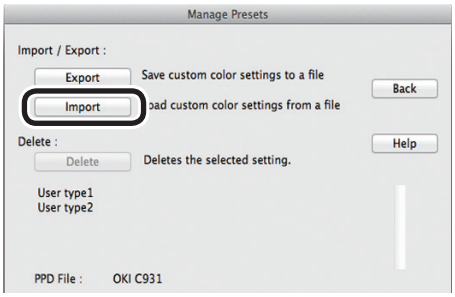


Memo

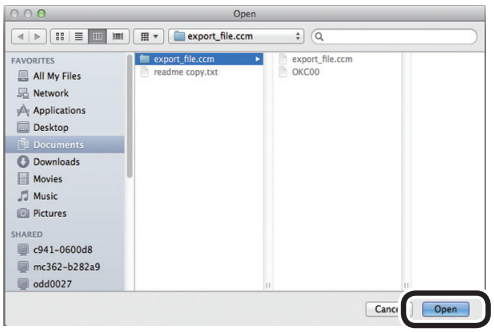
- The PPD file select in Step (2) will be displayed at the lower left of the screen.

2 Read the settings.

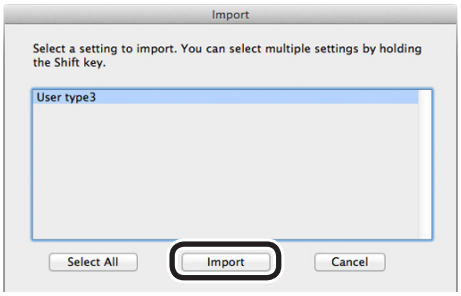
(1) Click [Import].



(2) Select the folder to which the settings to be read have been saved, and click [Open].



(3) Select the settings to be imported from the settings list in the "Import" screen, and click [Import].



Memo

- Hold down the Shift key when selecting to select multiple settings.

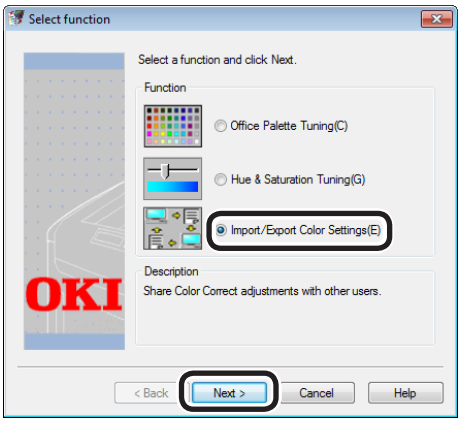
(4) Check that the settings have been read using the "Office Palette Tuning" and "Gamma / Hue / Saturation Tuning" screens, and close the Color Correct Utility.

Deleting color matching settings (Windows)

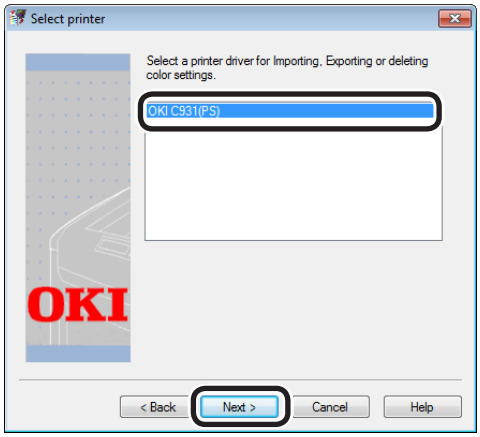
You can delete unnecessary color matches.

1 Select [Start]>[All Programs]>[OKI Data]>[Color Correct Utility]>[Color Correct Utility] to start the Color Correct Utility.

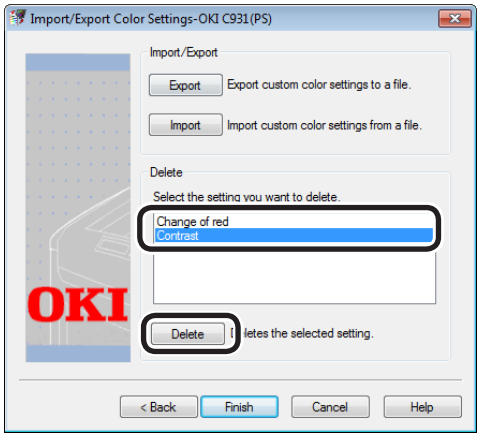
2 Select [Import/Export Color Settings], and click [Next].



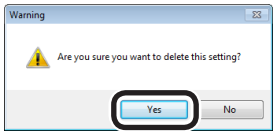
3 Select the printer whose settings are to be deleted, and click [Next].



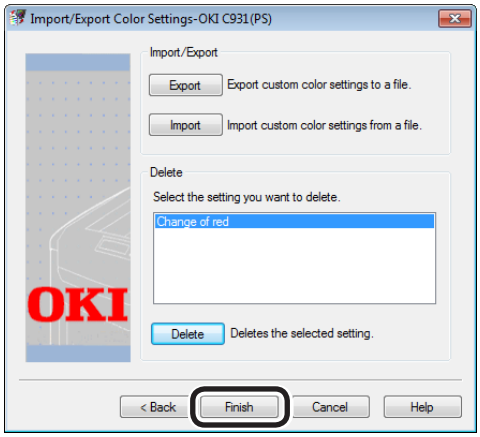
4 Select the settings to be deleted from the list, and click [Delete].



5 Click [Yes] to delete the settings.



6 Check that the settings have been deleted, and click [Finish].



Deleting color matching settings (Macintosh)

You can delete unnecessary color matches.

1 Start the Color Correct Utility.

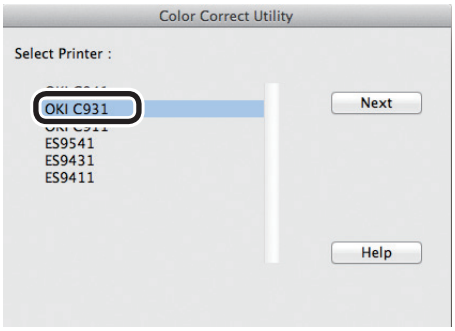


Color Correct Utility.app

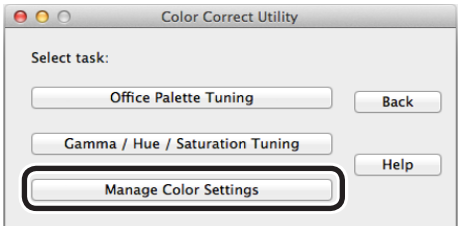
2 Select the target printer.

Memo

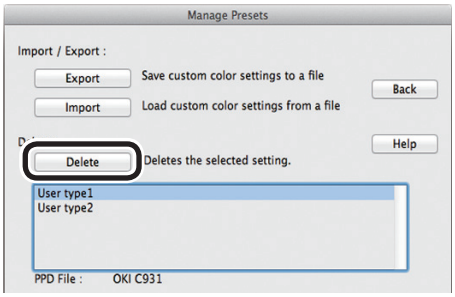
- Printers supported by the tool will be displayed.



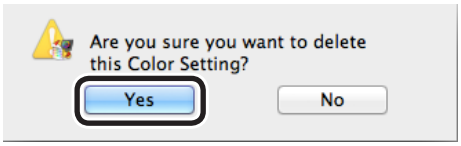
3 Click [Manage Color Settings].



4 Select the settings to be deleted from the list, and click [Delete].



5 Click [Yes] to delete the settings.



6 Check that the settings have been deleted using the "Office Palette Tuning" and "Gamma / Hue / Saturation Tuning" screens, and close the Color Correct Utility.

PS Gamma Adjuster

You can adjust the halftone density of the CMYK colors printed using the device. Use this function if the photo or graphics colors are too dark.

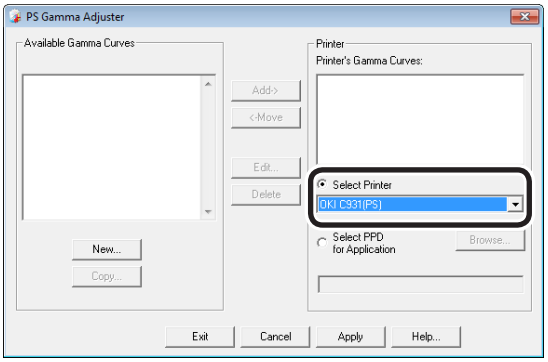
Note

- Cannot be used with Windows PCL and Windows XPS printer drivers.
- Using this function may make printing slower. To prioritize speed, in Windows disable "Use printer halftone", and in Macintosh select [No settings] in [Halftone adjustment].
- If using Windows, the [Halftone adjustment] menu or its contents may not be displayed in the [Color] tab of the printer drivers. In this case, restart your PC.
- If the application is used before the halftone adjustment name has been registered, restart the application before printing.
- If multiple printers have been saved to the [Devices and printers] folder, the registered halftone adjustment names will be enabled for all printers of the same model.

Registering gamma (Windows)

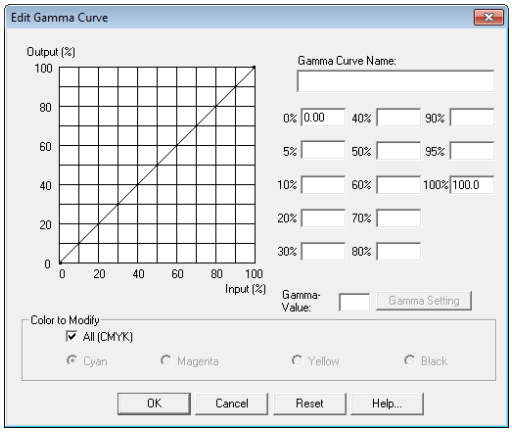
1 Select [Start]>[All Programs]>[OKI Data]>[PS Gamma Adjuster]>[PS Gamma Adjuster] to start the PS Gamma Adjuster.

2 Select the device from [Select Printer].



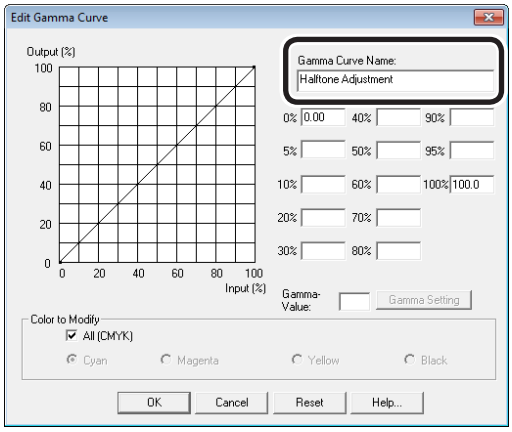
3 Click [New].

4 Adjust the halftone.



You can select the halftone adjustment method from the graph line operations, gamma value inputs, and density value inputs to the text boxes.

5 Enter the settings name in [Gamma Curve Name], and click [OK].



6 Click [Add].

7 Click [Apply].

The dialog box will be displayed.

8 Click [OK].

9 Click [Finish] to close the PS Gamma Adjuster.

Registering gamma (Macintosh)

1 Start the PS Gamma Adjuster.

2 Click [Define new halftone adjustment].

3 Adjust the halftone.

You can select the halftone adjustment method from the graph line operations, gamma value inputs, and density value inputs to the text boxes.

4 Enter the settings name in [Halftone adjustment name], and click [Save].

5 Close the PS Gamma Adjuster.

6 Select [Printers and scanners] in the [System environment settings], and then temporarily delete and then re-register the printer that implemented the registered adjustments.

Color Swatch Utility

Operations environment

The color swatch utility is a utility for using the device to print RGB color samples. By viewing the printed color samples, you can check which RGB values should be specified using the application to print the desired colors.

Note

- Cannot be used by Macintosh.
- The color swatch utility is installed together with the printer drivers.

Printing RGB color samples

1 Print sample colors.

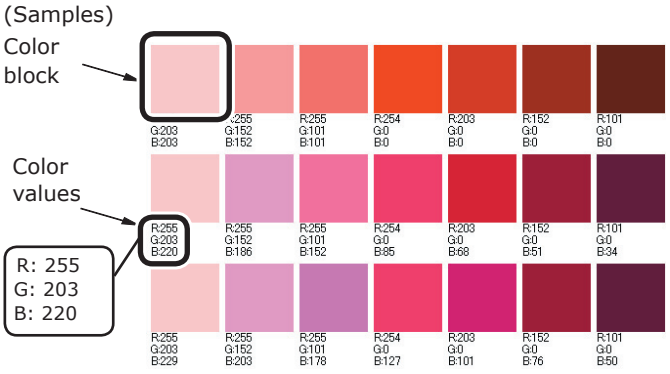
(1) Select [Start]>[All Programs]>[OKI Data]>[Color Swatch Utility]>[Color Swatch Utility] to start the color swatch utility.

(2) Click the [Print] button.

(3) Select the device.

(4) Click [OK] or [Print].

3 pages of color samples will be printed.



Memo

- The RGB values displayed below the color block denote the proportions (0 to 255) of the R (red), G (green), and B (blue) colors in the color block.

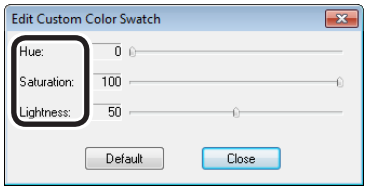
(5) Select the color to be printed from the printed color samples, and note down the printed RGB value.

Memo

- If there are no colors in the color samples that you want to print, customize the color samples using the following procedure.

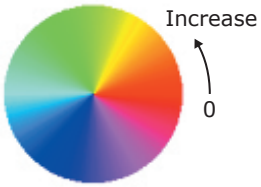
(6) Click the [Switch] button to switch to custom color samples.

(7) Click the [Advanced] button to display the [Edit Custom Color Swatch] dialog box.

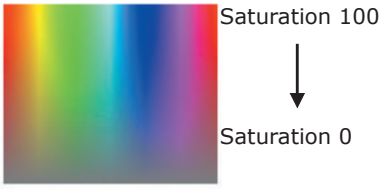


(8) Adjust the three bars until the desired colors are displayed in the monitor window, and click [Close].

- Hue: Changes the hue. 0 denotes red, and to increase the value, rotate once towards the green direction.



- Saturation: Changes the vividness. The greater the saturation the more vivid, and the lower the saturation, the darker (grayer) the result.



- Brightness: Changes the darkness. If the brightness is at maximum (100%), the image turns white, and at its darkest (0%), the image turns black.



(9) Click the [Print] button.

(10) Select the device.

(11) Click [OK] or [Print].

1 page will be printed by the device.

(12) If the desired color cannot be found in the color samples, repeat Steps (6) to (11).

2 Print the desired color from the application.

(1) Open the file to be printed.

(2) Select text and graphics in the application, and change the RGB values of the color samples to be printed.

Note

- For how to specify the colors using the application, see the relevant application manual.

(3) Printing will be implemented.

Note

- If printing the desired colors from the application, use the same printer driver settings as the settings used to print the color samples.

Profile assistant

This section explains the profile assistant utility. You can match the colors using the printer ICC profiles. ICC profiles are used for overall color management. To use this function, it is necessary to register the ICC profiles for the input devices (monitors, scanners, digital cameras, etc.) in the printer beforehand. To register an ICC profile, use the profile assistant.

Note

- The profile assistant is not enclosed on the "Software DVD-ROM", so download it from the OKI Data homepage.
- If there are no profiles in the input or output devices, consult the device manufacturer or your dealer.
- To register an ICC profile, it is necessary to mount the (optional) HDD to the device.

Registering ICC profiles

You can match the colors using the printer ICC profiles. ICC profiles are used for overall color management. To use this function, it is necessary to register the ICC profiles for the input devices (monitors, scanners, digital cameras, etc.) in the printer beforehand.

Note

- If there are no profiles in the input or output devices, consult the device manufacturer or your dealer.

■ Windows

Use the Configuration Tool. For the procedure details, see "Storage Manager plug-in" (P.184).

■ Mac OS X

Note

- The profile assistant is not enclosed on the "Software DVD-ROM", so download it from the OKI Data homepage.

1 Start the profile assistant.

2 Select the [Networks] or [USB] tab.

If the device is connected using USB, select [USB]. If the device is connected using a network, select [Networks].

3 Select the device to be registered, and click [Select].

Note

- Not compatible with USB2.0. If using this utility with USB, set the device USB baud rate to 12Mbps to connect using USB1.1.

4 Click [Add] in the main window.

5 Select the profile to be registered, and click [Select].

Memo

- ICC profiles are normally stored in the [Library]> [ColorSync]>[Profiles] folder.
  If you cannot find the ICC profiles, consult your device manufacturer.

6 Select the profile type.

7 Select the number of the profile to be registered.

The registered numbers are underlined in bold. If a registered number is selected, the profile will be overwritten.

8 If necessary, enter a comment in the [Comments] field.

The comments are displayed in the profile tables and the color profile list reports.

9 Click [Add].

10 Check that the registered profiles are displayed in the main window list, and select [File] and then [Close].

Memo

- Registered profiles can be used in color matching for the [Graphic Pro] functions.
- Steps 2 and 3 are omitted when the profile assistant utility is started subsequently, and the utility is connected to the device that was last used. To change the connected printer, select [Printer selection] in Step 4.

Reference

- For how to print the color profile list, see "Color profile list" (P.269).

3

Using Utility Software

Utility software that can be used with the printer 176

Windows utilities 180

Mac OS X utilities 204

Utility software that can be used with the printer

Utilities table

Windows/Macintosh common utilities

Utility name	Explanation	Operations environment	Reference pages.
PS Gamma Adjuster	Image density can be adjusted by adjusting each of the CMYK colors and the halftone density.	● Windows 8.1/Windows 8/ Windows 7/Windows Vista/ Windows Server 2012 R2/ Windows Server 2012/ Windows Server 2008 R2/ Windows Server 2008 ● Mac OS X 10.3.9 to 10.10	Page 170
Color Correct Utility	Adjusts the color matching. You can change the overall orientation of the output colors by adjusting the palette color output colors, gamma values, and primary color hue and saturation.		Page 150
Web browsers	You can make all the settings in addition to checking the messages displayed on the device, and the network settings, etc.	PCs with Microsoft Internet Explorer Ver. 6.0 or later, Safari Ver. 3.0 or later, or Firefox 3.0 or later installed.	Page 229
Print jobs Accounting client*1	Sets the user name and user ID in the printer drivers.	● Windows 8.1/Windows 8/ Windows 7/Windows Vista/ Windows Server 2012 R2/ Windows Server 2012/ Windows Server 2008 R2/ Windows Server 2008 ● Mac OS X 10.3.9 to 10.10	Page 188 Page 205

*1: Not included on the Software DVD-ROM. Download from the OKI Data homepage.

Windows utilities

Utility name	Explanation	Operations environment	Reference pages.
Configuration Tool	Registers and manages the device network settings in the device HDD. Further, form data can be registered and deleted, and stored jobs managed.	Windows 8.1/Windows 8/ Windows 7/Windows Vista/ Windows Server 2012 R2/ Windows Server 2012/ Windows Server 2008 R2/ Windows Server 2008	Page 180
ColorSwatchUtility	Print sample colors. Use this utility to check the print colors. This utility is installed automatically when the printer drivers are installed.	Windows 8.1/Windows 8/ Windows 7/Windows Vista/ Windows Server 2012 R2/ Windows Server 2012/ Windows Server 2008 R2/ Windows Server 2008	Page 172
Direct Network Printing Utility (LPR)	You can print using network connections, manage print jobs, and check the device status.	Windows 8.1/Windows 8/ Windows 7/Windows Vista/ Windows Server 2012 R2/ Windows Server 2012/ Windows Server 2008 R2/ Windows Server 2008 PCs operating using TCP/IP	Page 194

Utility name	Explanation	Operations environment	Reference pages.
Network Extension	You can check the settings and set the optional configurations from the printer drivers. This utility is installed automatically when the printer drivers are installed using a network connection.	Windows 8.1/Windows 8/ Windows 7/Windows Vista/ Windows Server 2012 R2/ Windows Server 2012/ Windows Server 2008 R2/ Windows Server 2008 PCs operating using TCP/IP	Page 201
Web Driver Installer*1	This application displayed the devices and printer connected to the network, downloads the printer driver installation modules, and installs to the client PC.	Windows 8/Windows 7/ Windows Vista/ Windows Server 2012/ Windows Server 2008 R2/ Windows Server 2008 For details, see the OKI Data homepage.	-
TELNET	You can set the device networks.	Windows 8.1/Windows 8/ Windows 7/Windows Vista/ Windows Server 2012 R2/ Windows Server 2012/ Windows Server 2008 R2/ Windows Server 2008	-
PDF Print Direct	You can print PDF files without starting the application.	Windows 8.1/Windows 8/ Windows 7/Windows Vista/ Windows Server 2012 R2/ Windows Server 2012/ Windows Server 2008 R2/ Windows Server 2008	Page 187
Change the Printer Display Language	You can change the display language of the control panel and menus.	Windows 8.1/Windows 8/ Windows 7/Windows Vista/ Windows Server 2012 R2/ Windows Server 2012/ Windows Server 2008 R2/ Windows Server 2008	Page 192

*1: Not included on the Software DVD-ROM. Download from the OKI Data homepage.

Macintosh utilities

Utility name	Explanation	Operations environment	Reference pages.
Profile assistant*1	Registers and manages ICC profiles in the device HDD. ICC profiles are used on color matching in [Graphic Pro] mode in the drivers.	Mac OS X 10.3.9 to 10.10	Page 173
Panel language setup	You can change the display language of the control panel and menus.	Mac OS X 10.3.9 to 10.10	Page 204
NIC settings tool	Enables the network setup.	Mac OS X 10.3.9 to 10.10	Page 207

*1: Not included on the Software DVD-ROM. Download from the OKI Data homepage.

Installing utilities

Windows

Use the following procedure to install the utility software to be used.

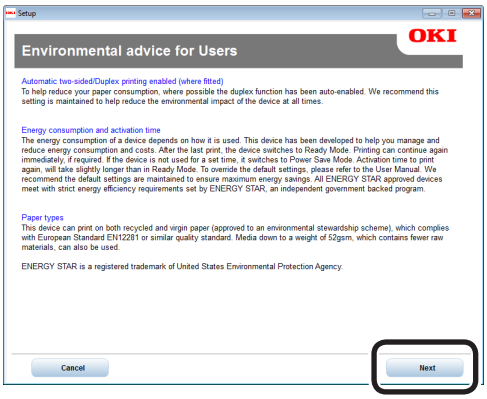
1 Set the "Software DVD-ROM".

2 When the "AutoPlay" window is displayed, click [Launch Setup.exe].

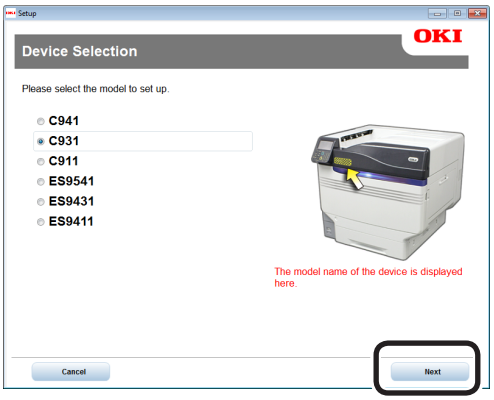
3 When the "User Account Control" window is displayed, click the [Yes] button.

4 Read the "Software License Agreement", and click the [Agree] button.

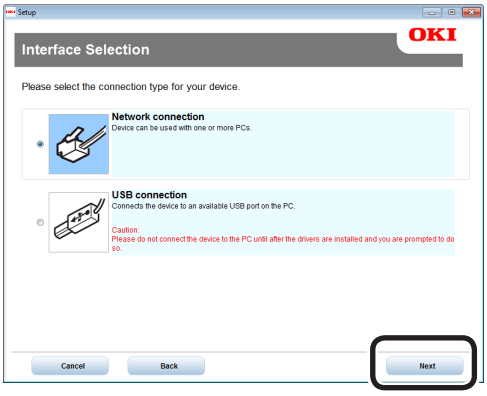
5 Read the "Environmental advice for Users", and click the [Next] button.



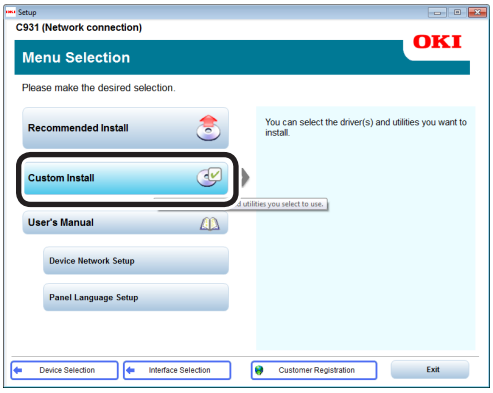
6 Select the printer to be used, and then click the [Next] button.



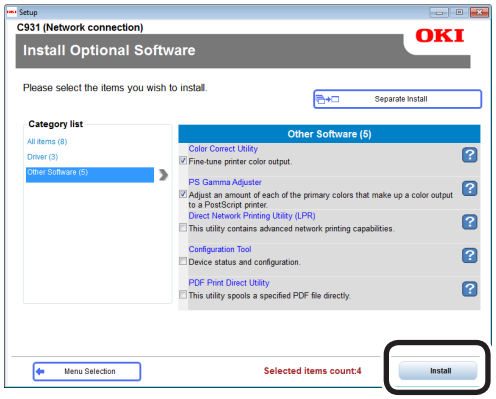
7 Select the printer connection method, and click the [Next] button. (In this example, network connection is selected.)



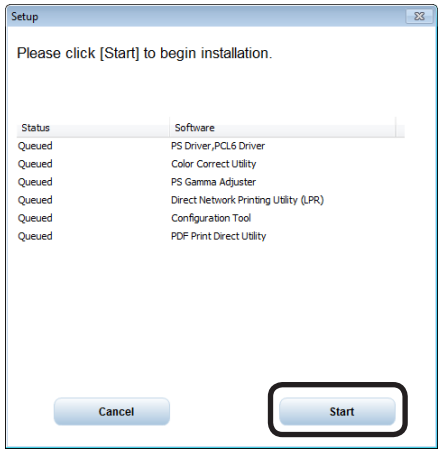
8 Click [Custom Install].



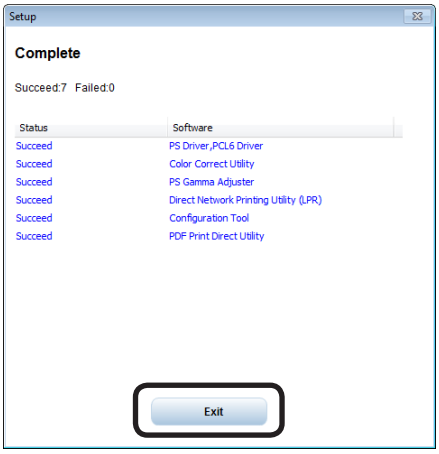
9 Enable the check box for the software to be installed, and click [Install].



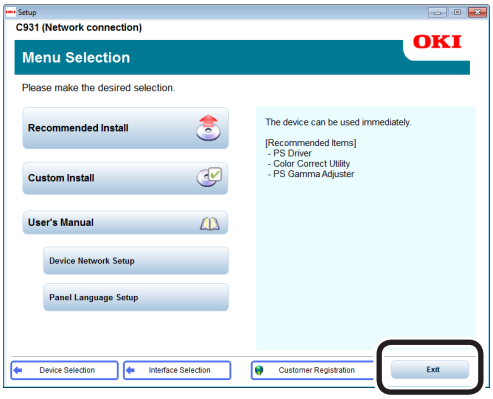
10 Check the software, and click [Start].



11 When the installation has finished, click the [Exit] button.



12 Click the [Exit] button in the menu window to finish.



Macintosh

Use the following procedure to install the utility software to be used.

1 Insert the "Software DVD-ROM" in the computer.

2 Double-click [OKI]>[Utilities] folder.

3 Drag and drop to copy the utility folder to be installed into the desired location.

Memo

- Double-click the utility icon in the folder to launch.

Windows utilities

Configuration Tool

Configuration Tool is a utility that changes and manages the OKI device settings.

Configuration Tool has the following functions to easily set and manage multiple OKI devices.

- Displays the device information
- Registers and manages ICC profiles
- Registers and deletes form data
- Manages saved jobs
- Formats partitions
- Changes HDD partition sizes
- Initializes flash memory
- Sets printer networks

Operations environment

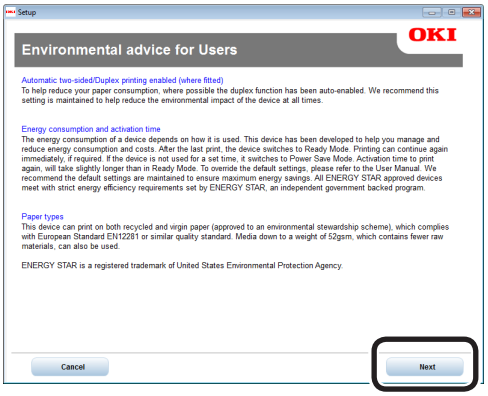
PCs running Windows 8.1/Windows 8/Windows 7/ Windows Vista/Windows Server 2012 R2/Windows Server 2012/Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows Server 2008 versions

Note

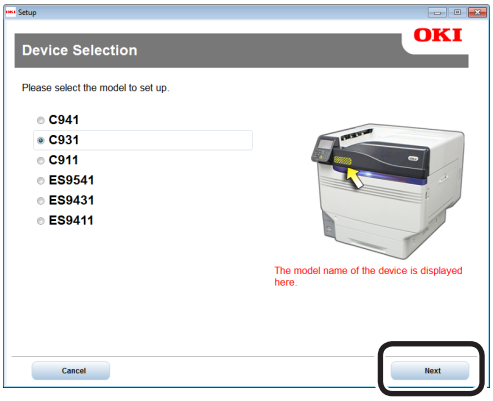
- PC administrator privileges are required for the setup.
- Internet Explorer 5.5 SP1 or later must be installed.

Installing

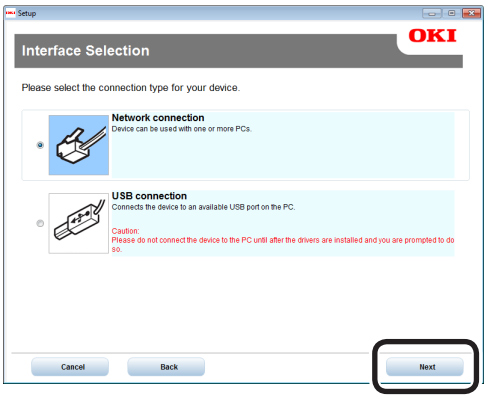
1. Set the "Software DVD-ROM".
2. When the "AutoPlay" window is displayed, click [Launch Setup.exe].
3. When the "User Account Control" window is displayed, click the [Yes] button.
4. Read the "Software License Agreement", and click the [Agree] button.
5. Read the "Environmental advice for Users", and click the [Next] button.



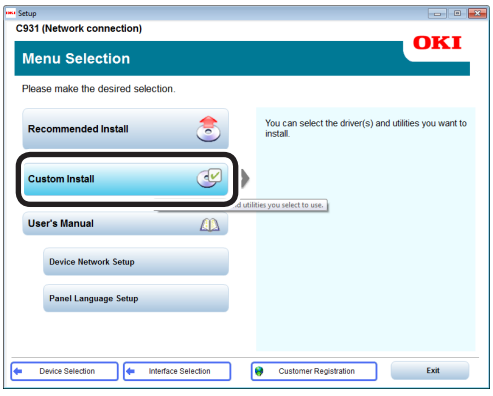
6 Select the printer to be used, and then click the [Next] button.



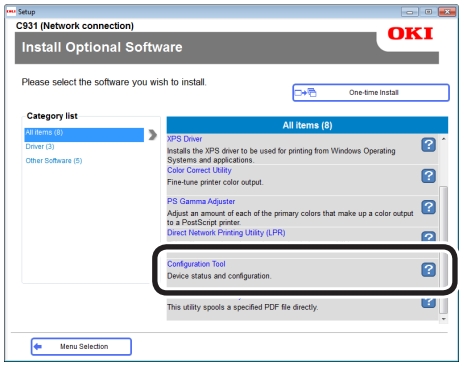
7 Select the printer connection method, and click the [Next] button. (In this example, network connection is selected.)



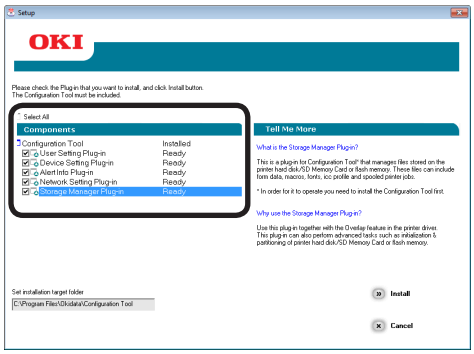
8 Click [Custom Install].



9 Click [Switch to another screen.], and then click [Configuration Tool].



10 Select the plug-in to be installed.



- Network Setting plug-in

Restart the IP address settings and printer, and display web pages. Added to the plug-in menu when installed. For details, see "Network Setting plug-in" (P.183).

- Storage Manager plug-in

Includes functions such as ICC profile registration and management functions, form data registration and deletion functions, and saved job management functions, etc. Added to the plug-in menu when installed. For details, see "Storage Manager plug-in" (P.184).

Memo

- Plug-ins can also be installed additionally later.

11 Specify the installation destination folder.

In the factory settings, C:\Program Files\Okidata\Configuration Tool is specified.

12 Click [Install].

13 When "Installation finished" is displayed, click [Exit].

Memo

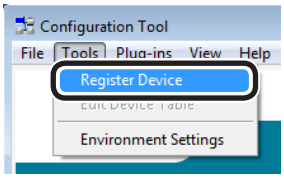
- When the restart window is displayed, restart the PC according to the window instructions.

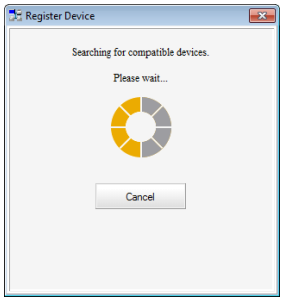
Registering devices

When using the Configuration Tool for the first time or introducing a new OKI device, register the OKI device in the Configuration Tool.

1 Select [Start]>[All programs]>[OKI Data]>[Configuration Tool]>[Configuration Tool] to start the Configuration Tool.

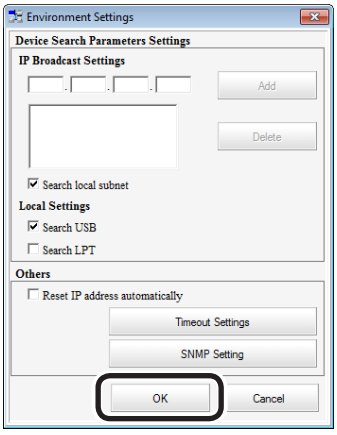
2 Select "Register Device" in the "Tools" menu to search for OKI devices that can be registered.



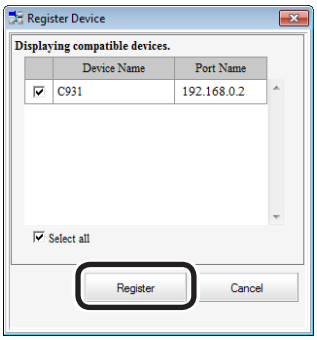


Memo

- To change the scope of the search, select "Environment Settings" in the "Tools" menu, and enter the range to be searched. Enter the range, and click [OK].



3 Enable the check box for the OKI device to be set and managed, and click [Register].



4 Click either ☒ or [Cancel] in the upper right of the window to close the "Register Device" window.

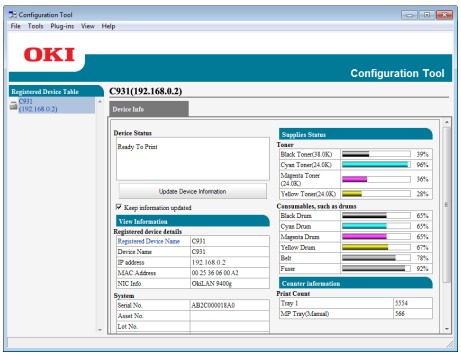
Device Info tab

You can view the OKI device status and advanced information.

This function is available with the Configuration Tool as standard.

1 Click the OKI device whose information you want to view from "Registered Device Table".

The OKI device status will be displayed.



Memo

- To change the information, click [Update Device Information].

Note

- The device status will be displayed if an OKI device is connected to the network.

Network Setting plug-in

The network can be set using the Configuration Tool. Before making the settings, install the Network Setting plug-in.

Reference

- For how to set up the network, see the "Basic".

■ Icon types

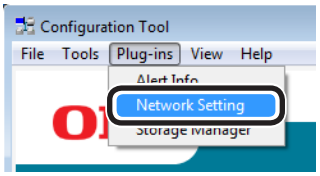
The icon meanings are described below.

Icon	Explanation
	Searches for the device again.
	Changes the search conditions.
	Changes the device IP address.
	Restarts the device.
	Changes the network password.
	Displays the web page for the specified device.

■ Searching for devices on the network

You can search for devices.

1 Select [Network Setting] from the [Plug-ins] menu.



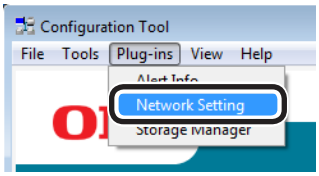
2 Select [Discover Devices].



The search results will be displayed.

■ Specifying the search conditions

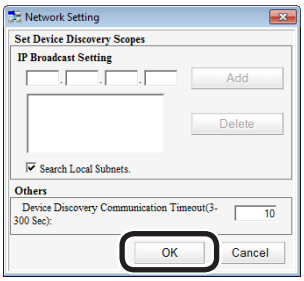
1 Select [Network Setting] from the [Plug-ins] menu.



2 Select [Environment Settings].



3 Specify the search conditions as necessary, and click [OK].



■ Changing IP addresses

You can change the device IP address.

1 Select the device from the printer table.

2 Click .

3 Change the settings as necessary.

4 Click [Setup].

5 Input the network password, and click [OK].

The factory-set password is the last six alphanumeric characters of the MAC address.

6 Click [OK] to restart the device.

Storage Manager plug-in

Storage Manager plug-in can manage jobs saved on the device, and store the forms, fonts, and ICC profiles to be used in printing.

! Note

- The job management function does not support encrypted card authentication jobs.

■ Icon types

The icon meanings are described below.

Icon	Explanation
	Creates new project
	Opens projects
	Saves projects
	Saves projects as...
	Adds files to a project
	Deletes files from a project
	Displays the filtering window for PCL form files
	Creates download files
	Sends download files
	Sends projects
	Sends files
	Displays the job management window
	Displays the administrator functions window

■ Registering profiles

You can register and edit printer profiles. Some of the functions are explained below.

To register an ICC profile, it is necessary to mount the (optional) HDD to the device.

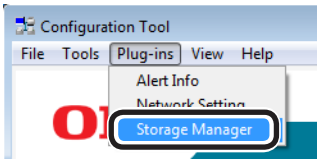
Note

- If using the profile registration and edit functions, install the Storage Manager plug-in.

Reference

- For how to install plug-ins, see "Installing" (P.180).

1 Select [Storage Manager] from the [Plug-ins] menu.



2 Click [ ] to create a new project.

3 Click [ ], and change [File type] in the [Open file] dialog box to "ICC profile (*.ICC, *.ICM)".

4 Select the profile to be registered, and click [Open].

5 Click [Component] in the ICC profile added to the project to display the [Edit file] dialog box.

6 Select the number of the profile to be registered.

The numbers already used in the project cannot be selected, and are displayed against a yellow background.

7 If necessary, enter a comment in the [Comments] field.

8 Click the [OK] button to apply the changes.

9 Select the printer from the device list at the bottom of the window.

10 Click [ ] to send the project associated to the ICC profile that has been added to the printer.

11 Check that the message "Command Issued." is displayed, and click [OK].

■ Registering forms (form overlay)

You can register the logos, etc., as forms to the device, and overlay for printing. This section explains how to register forms.

Reference

- For how to print overlays, see "Printing using registered forms (overlay printing)" (P.101).

Memo

- If using Windows PS printer drivers, administrator privileges are required.

❑ Creating forms

1 Click [Start], and then select [Devices and printers].

2 Right-click the [OKI (product name) (**)] icon (** describes the printer driver type: PS, PCL6), and select [Printer properties].

3 Select the [Port] tab, and enable the [FILE:] check box in [Printer port], and click [OK].

4 Create the form to be registered to the printer.

5 Select [Print] from the [File] menu of the application.

If using Windows PCL printer drivers, go to Step 9.

6 Click [Advanced] (or [Preferences]).

7 Select the [Job Options] tab, and click [Overlay].

8 Select [Create form].

9 Printing will be implemented.

10 Enter the name of the file to be saved.

11 Restore [Printer port] in the [Port] tab which was modified in Step 3.

❑ Register the form to the printer using the Configuration Tool.

1 Select [Storage Manager] from the [Plug-ins] menu.

2 Click [ ].

3 Click [ ], and select the form file that has been created.

The form will be added to the project.

4 Click the form file.

5 Enter the [ID], and click [OK].

Note

- Do not change the [Volume] or [Path name].

Memo

- If using Windows PS printer drivers, enter the [Component].

6 Select the device using the window below the Storage manager plug-in window.

7 Click [ ].

8 Click [OK].

■ Checking the available HDD and flash memory space

You can check the available HDD and flash memory space.

1 Click the printer name from the device selection area below the Storage Manager plug-in screen to display the resource window for the selected printer.

2 Communications with the printer will display the storage, partitions, directories, and files, etc.

■ Deleting unnecessary jobs from the HDD

You can delete print jobs in the [Shared] partition of the HDD.

Memo

- Even after the print data has been secure printed or saved, the job remains in the [Shared] partition, so unless the job is deleted, the available HDD space will be reduced.

Note

- The Storage manager plug-in cannot delete encrypted secure prints.

1 Click [ ].

2 To view specific user print jobs, enter the password, and then click [Job password operations].
To view all print jobs, enter the administrator password, and then click [Administrator password operations].

The default administrator password is "aaaaaa".

3 Select the job to be deleted, and click [ ].

4 Click [OK].

PDF Print Direct

Operations environment

PCs running Windows 8.1/Windows 8/Windows 7/ Windows Vista/Windows Server 2012 R2/Windows Server 2012/Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows Server 2008 versions

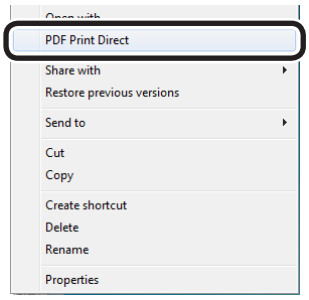
Note

- PC administrator privileges are required for the setup.
- Some PDF files may not print correctly. If printing is incorrect, print from an application such as Adobe Acrobat Reader.
- This function is not compatible with multi-page printing.
- PDF files encrypted at 128bit-RC4 level cannot be printed.
- If printing PDF files that the viewer is not authorized to print, specify the master password.
- If job restrictions mod is enabled (encrypted jobs only), printing using this utility is disabled. For job restrictions mode, see "[Admin Setup]" (P.297).

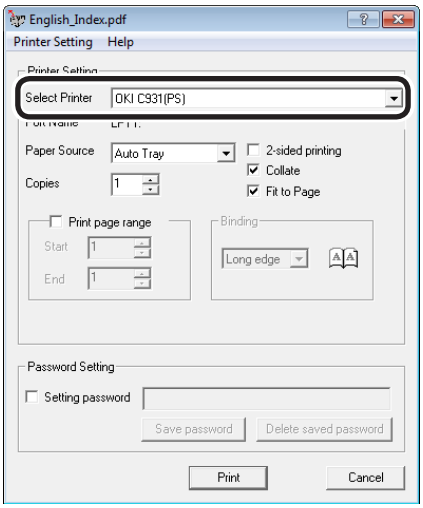
Printing PDF files

1 Check that the [OKI (product name) (**)] icon (** describes the type of printer driver: PS, PCL6, or XPS) is in the [Devices and printers] folder.

2 Select the PDF file to be printed, and click the right mouse button. The following menu will be displayed, so select "PDF Print Direct".



3 If the PDF file is printable, the lower window will be displayed. Select the printer driver to be used in [Select Printer].



4 If printing encrypted files, enable the [Setting password] check box, and enter a password. If using the same password subsequently, click [Save password]. One password can be registered.

If deleting password, click [Delete saved password].

5 Set the required items, and click [Print].

Print Job Accounting client

This utility sets the user name and user ID in the printer drivers.

Operations environment

PCs running Windows 8.1/Windows 8/Windows 7/ Windows Vista/Windows Server 2012 R2/Windows Server 2012/Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows Server 2008 Versions

! Note

- PC administrator privileges are required for the setup.

Installing

1 Double-click the file downloaded from the OKI Data homepage.

The file will be unpacked and the installer will start automatically.

2 Implement setup according to the displayed instructions.

Changing job account modes

Job account mode is the method for setting the user name and user ID in the Windows client PC. There are 4 modes.

■ Job account mode types

- Tab mode

The tab for setting the user name and user ID is displayed in the printer driver properties.

Use if the user themselves is setting or changing the user name and user ID.

- Popup mode

A popup window to set the user name and user ID is displayed for each print job to be sent.

Use if multiple users are sharing a single PC.

! Note

- Input windows are not displayed even if printing using a shared printer client. Use non-display mode with shared printers.

- Non-display mode

Input windows are not displayed even if printing using a shared printer client. Use non-display mode with shared printers. The system administrator creates beforehand the ID file that describes the user ID and user name corresponding to the login user name for Windows. Specify this file in the client software to identify the user implementing the printing, and to acquire the corresponding user ID automatically. Further, it is also possible to set the same user ID for all login users. The user does not need to make settings or know their own user ID. If designating the Windows PC as the printer server and using the device as a shared printer, install and use the client software on the PC used as the printer server.

- Incompatible mode

All jobs are identified as unregistered IDs without user ID being implemented. The log retains the user name as the login user name to Windows and the user ID as 0. Use if user ID is not necessary.

! Note

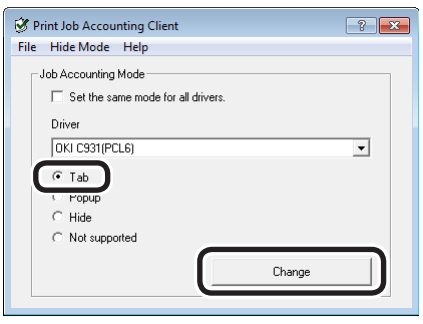
- If updating and reinstalling the printer drivers, incompatible mode is used, so reset the job account mode again. If using functions to set all the printer drivers to the same mode, however, it is not necessary to reset the mode.

■ Using in tab mode

1 Select [Start]>[All programs]>[OKI Data]>[Print Job Accounting Client]>[Change Job Account Mode] to start the job accounting client.

2 Select the printer drivers for the device set from the [Driver] list. To set all printer drivers to the same mode, enable the [Set the same mode for all drivers] check box.

3 Select [Tab] and click [Change].



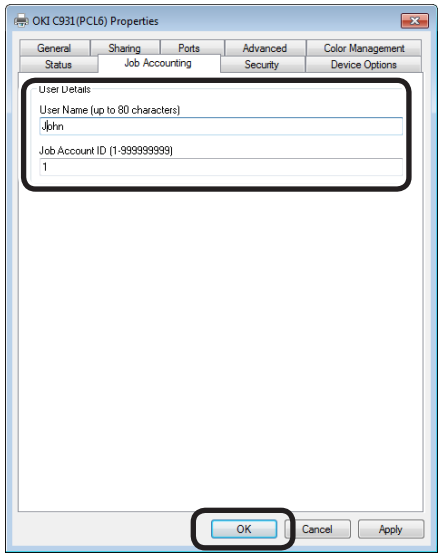
4 Click [OK] in the change notification window.

5 Select [Close] in the [File] menu.

6 Click [Start], and then select [Devices and printers].

7 Right-click the [OKI (product name) (**)] icon (** describes the printer driver type: PS, PCL6, or XPS), and select [Printer properties].

8 Enter the user name and user ID in the [Job Accounting] tab, and click [OK]. In the default settings, the user name is the Windows login user name, and the user ID is "1".



(Windows 7 PCL drivers window)

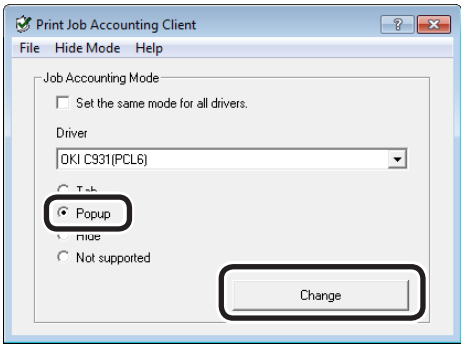
9 Print from the applications.

■ Using in popup mode

1 Select [Start]>[All programs]>[OKI Data]>[Print Job Accounting Client]>[Change Job Account Mode] to start the print job accounting client.

2 Select the printer drivers set from the [Driver] list. To set all printer drivers to the same mode, enable the [Set the same mode for all drivers] check box.

3 Select [Popup] and click [Change].



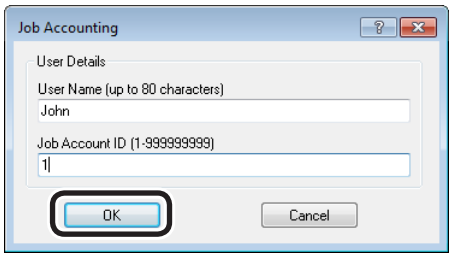
4 Click [OK] in the change notification window.

5 Select [Exit] in the [File] menu.

6 Print from the applications.

7 The popup window will be displayed, so enter the user name and user ID, and click [OK].

When [Cancel] is clicked, the user name is blank, and user ID remains as 0 in the log. The print job is not canceled.



■ Using in non-display mode

❑ Using by switching user ID for each user in non-display mode

1 Create the ID file using the MemoPad or commercially-available spreadsheet software, etc.

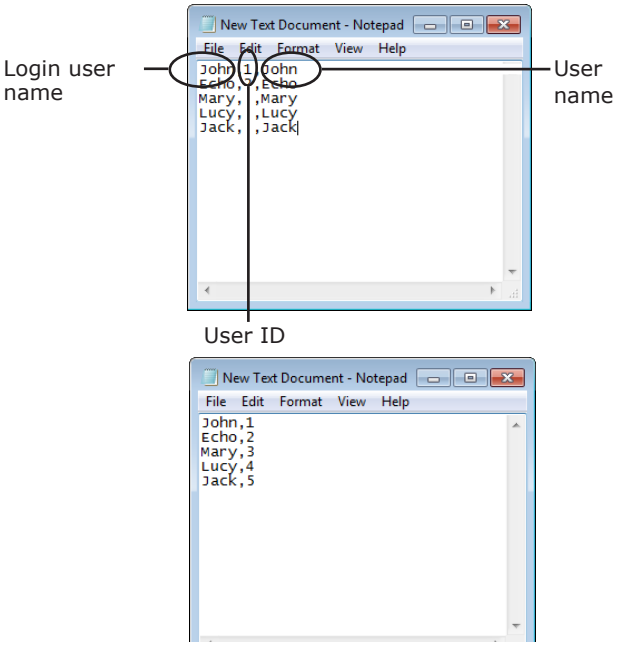
- Using MemoPad

(1) Describe the login user name, user ID, and user name for each user per line. Separate the login user name, user ID, and user name with a ",".

Login user name:
User name entered when logging into Windows

User ID:
User ID corresponding to the login user ID

User name:
User name used in print job accounting
The user name can be omitted. When not specified, the login user name is used as the user name.



(2) Designate the file extension as "CSV" in text format to save.

- Using commercially-available spreadsheet software

(1) Describe the login user name, user ID, and user name for each user per line.

(2) Save the file in CSV format.

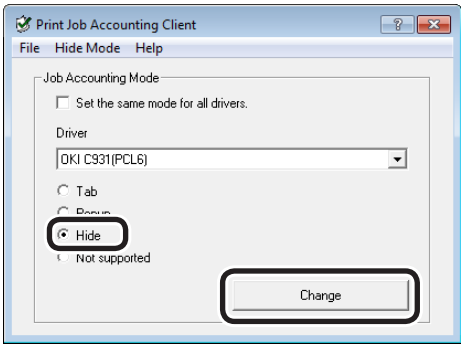
2 Select [Start]>[All programs]>[OKI Data]>[Print Job Accounting Client]>[Change Job Account Mode] to start the job accounting client.

3 Select the printer drivers set from the [Driver] list. To set all printer drivers to the same mode, enable the [Set the same mode for all drivers] check box.

! Note

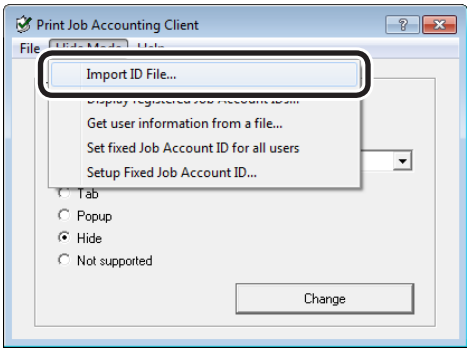
- If using a shared printer, do not use functions that set all printer drivers to the same mode. Account information is not output if printing using a shared printer client.

4 Select [Hide] and click [Change].



5 Click [OK] in the change notification window.

6 Select [Import ID file] from the [Hide Mode] menu.



7 Specify the ID file created in Step 1, and click [Open].

8 If the [Set fixed Job Account ID for all users] check box in the [Hide Mode] menu is enabled, disable the check box.

9 Select [Exit] in the [File] menu.

10 Print from the applications.

Note

- If logging into Windows to print using a login user name that is not registered, the user name will be the current login user name, and the user ID will remain in the log as 0.

Memo

- Select "Display registered user IDs" in the non-display mode menu to check user names that are already registered, delete unnecessary user IDs, and import ID files.
- Select "Get user information from file" in the non-display mode menu to acquire the user information registered in the separate print job accounting client.

❑ Using all users as the same user ID in non-display mode

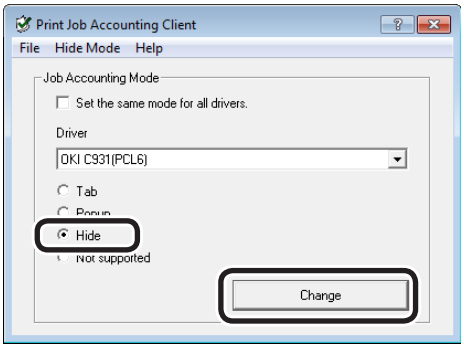
1 Select [Start]>[All programs]>[OKI Data]>[Print Job Accounting Client]>[Change Job Account Mode] to start the job accounting client.

2 Select the printer drivers set from the [Driver] list. To set all printer drivers to the same mode, enable the [Set the same mode for all drivers] check box.

Note

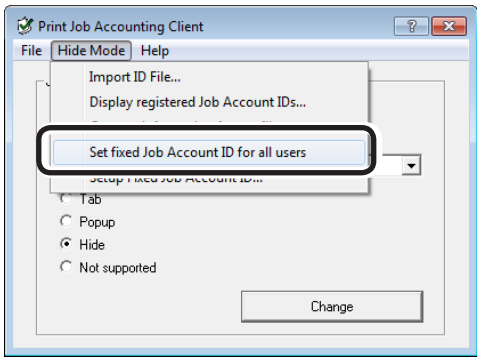
- If using a shared printer, do not use functions that set all printer drivers to the same mode. Account information is not output if printing using a shared printer client.

3 Select [Hide] and click [Change].

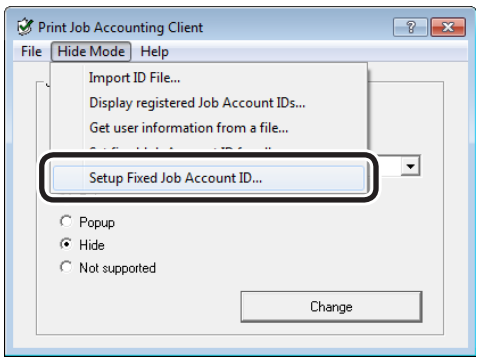


4 Click [OK] in the change notification window.

5 Enable the [Set fixed Job Account ID for all users] check box in the [Hide Mode] menu.



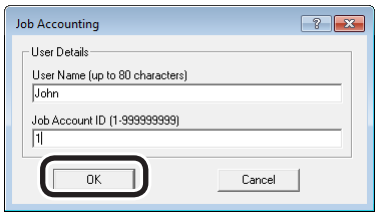
6 Select [Setup Fixed Job Account ID] in the [Hide Mode] menu.



7 Enter the user name and user ID, and click [OK].

Memo

- If the user name is omitted, the login user name is used as the user name.



8 Select [Exit] in the [File] menu.

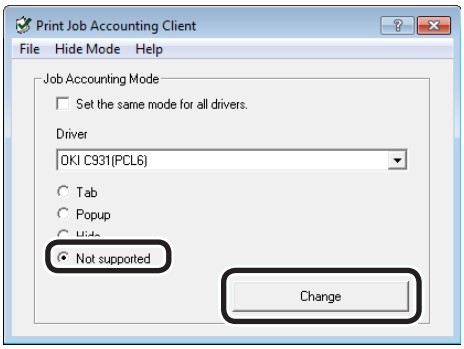
9 Print from the applications.

■ Using in incompatible mode

1 Select [Start]>[All programs]>[OKI Data]>[Print Job Accounting Client]>[Change Job Account Mode] to start the job accounting client.

2 Select the printer drivers set from the [Driver] list. To set all printer drivers to the same mode, enable the [Set the same mode for all drivers] check box.

3 Select [Not supported] and click [Change].



4 Click [OK] in the change notification window.

5 Select [Exit] in the [File] menu.

6 Print from the applications.

Change the Printer Display Language

Operations environment

PCs running Windows 8.1/Windows 8/Windows 7/ Windows Vista//Windows Server 2012 R2/Windows Server 2012/Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows Server 2008 Versions

Note

- This program uses the printer drivers. Install the latest printer drivers beforehand. For details, see "Flow for Installing Drivers on the PC" in "Basic".

Switching the control panel language

1 Turn ON the device power supply.

2 Set the "Software DVD-ROM". The setup program will start.

3 Read the "Software License Agreement", and click "Agree".

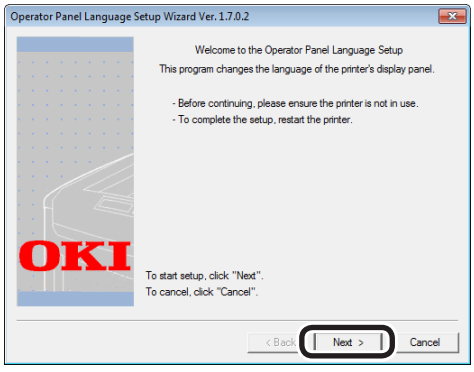
4 Read the environment advice, and click "Next".

5 Select the printer to be set, and then click "Next".

6 Select the printer connection method, and click "Next".

7 Click "Advanced Device Setup".

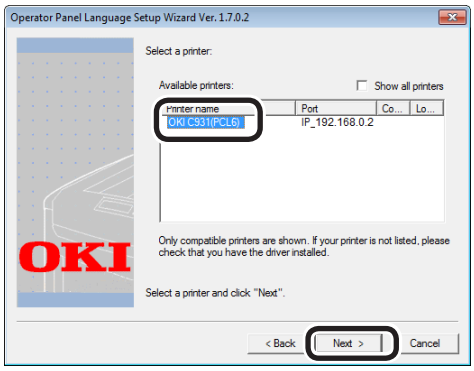
8 Click [Next].



Memo

- The tool version will be displayed after "Printer display language setup wizard Ver." in the title bar.

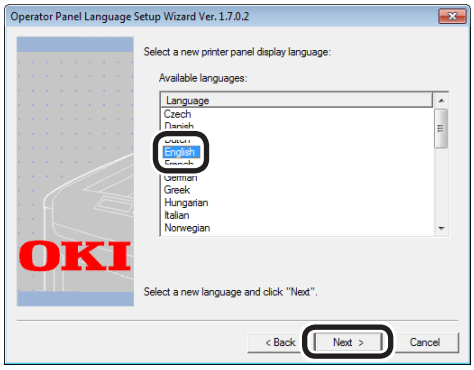
9 Select the printer whose language is to be changed, and click [Next].



Memo

- Printers supported by the tool will be displayed in the [Usable printers] list.

10 Select the language to be set up, and click [Next].

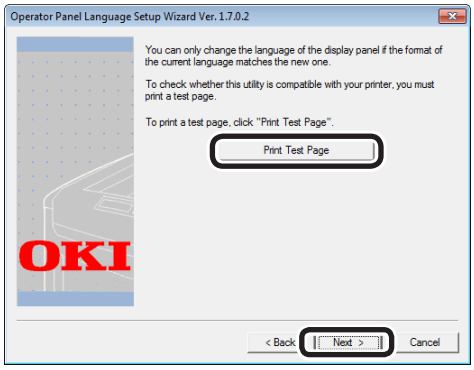


11 If a verification message is displayed, click [Yes].

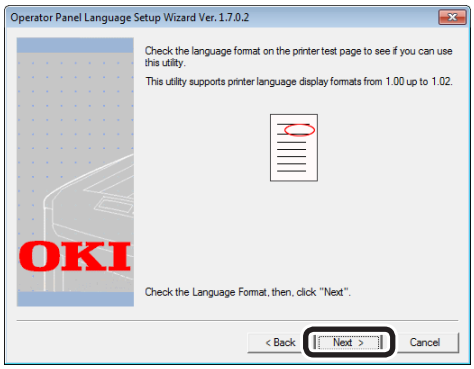
12 Click [Print Test Page] to print the menu. Click [Next].

Memo

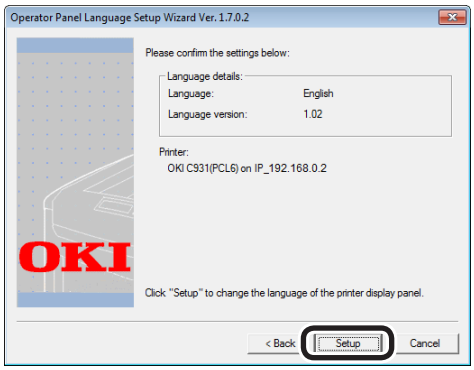
- The menu print results are used in the subsequent window.



13 Check that the "Language format" in the menu print results is within the numerical range displayed in the window, and click [Next].



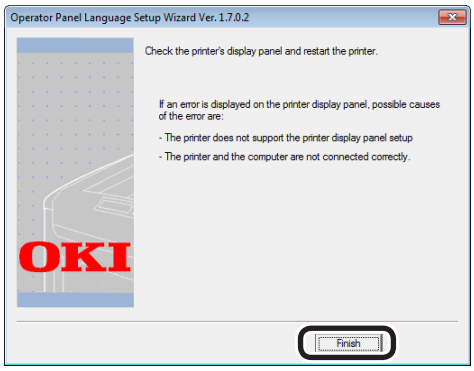
14 Select the details to be set up, and click [Setup].



Memo

- The [Language version:] window displays the language version of the language file included in the tool.

15 Click [Finish].



16 Look at the device control panel to verify that the download was successful, and restart the device.

Power OFF/ON
Message Data Received
OK

English display image

Direct Network Printing Utility (LPR)

Operations environment

PCs running Windows 8.1/Windows 8/Windows 7/ Windows Vista/Windows Server 2012 R2/Windows Server 2012/Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows Server 2008 Versions

PCs operating using TCP/IP

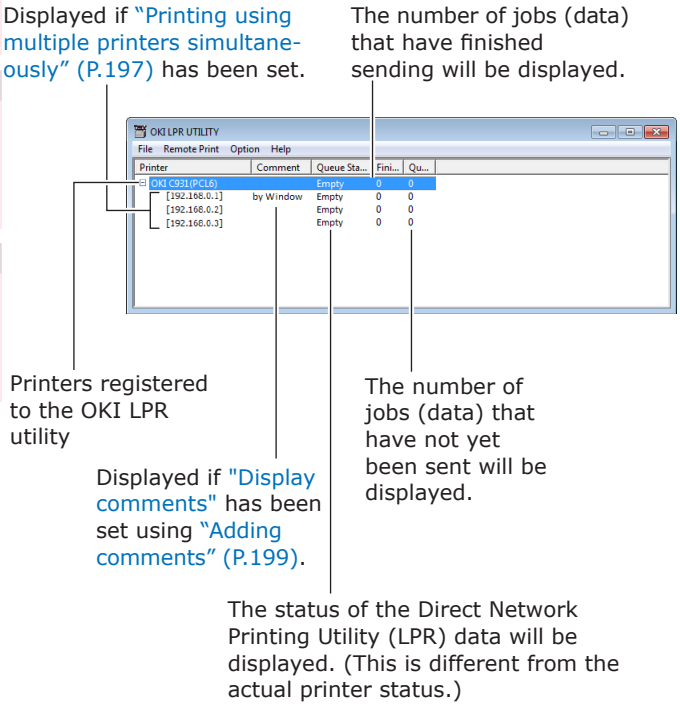
! Note

- PC administrator privileges are required for the setup.
- Print method functions cannot be used.

Starting up

1 Select [Start]>[All Programs]>[OKI Data]>[Direct Network Printing Utility (LPR)] to start the Direct Network Printing Utility (LPR).

The following window will be displayed.

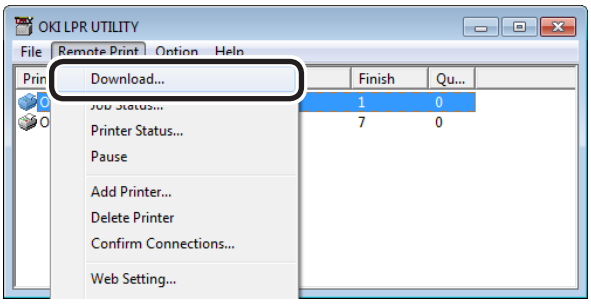


Downloading files to the printer

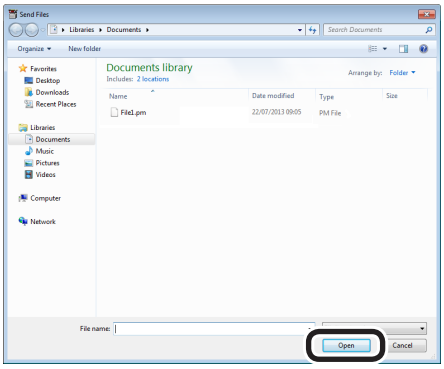
Files can be downloaded to the device.

1 Select the device.

2 Select [Download] from the [Remote Print] menu.



3 Select the file to be downloaded, and click [Open].



The file download will start.

Checking/deleting/ transferring jobs

You can display and delete print jobs.

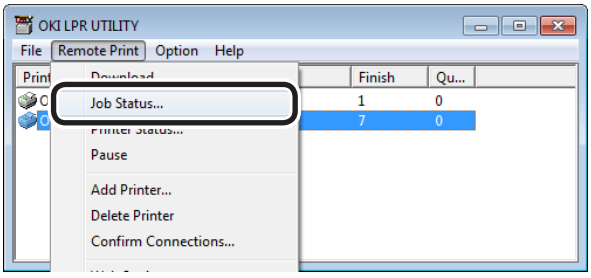
If you cannot print as the printer is in use, offline, or there is no paper, you can send the print job to another printer.

Note

- You cannot send to printers manufactured by other companies.
- Forward to the same model name.

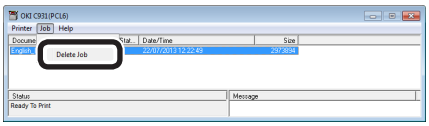
1 Select the device.

2 Select [Job Status] from the [Remote Print] menu.



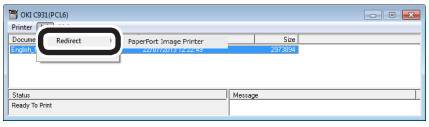
The job will be displayed.

3 Select the print job to be deleted, and select [Delete Job] from the [Job] menu.



The job will be deleted.

4 Select the print job to be forwarded, and select the destination printer using [Redirect] in the [Job] menu.



The job will be sent to the destination printer.

Note

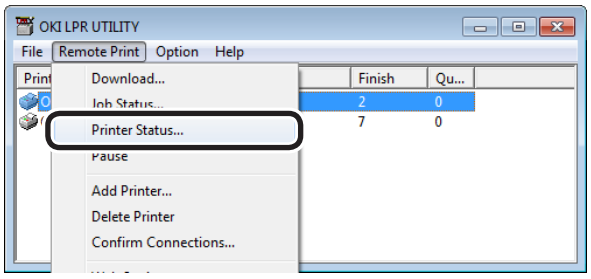
- For a printer to implement forwarding, it is necessary to set up the Direct Network Printing Utility (LPR) beforehand.

Checking the printer status

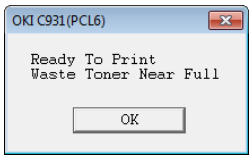
You can display the device status.

1 Select the device.

2 Select [Printer Status] from the [Remote Print] menu.



The device status will be displayed.



Memo

- You can also check using "Status" in the job display dialog box.

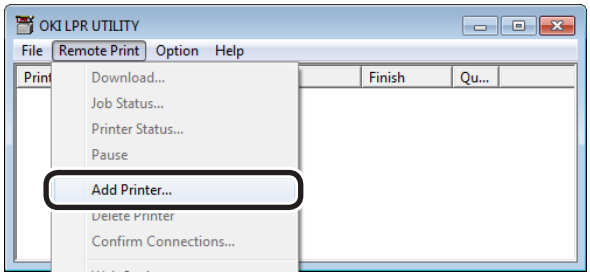
Adding printers

You can change the printer destination port to OKI LPR port.

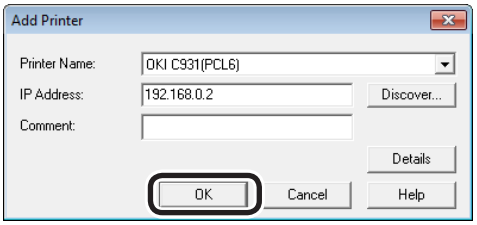
Note

- You cannot set a printer that is already registered in the Direct Network Printing Utility (LPR). To change the port, select "Reset printer".

1 Select [Add Printer] from the [Remote Print] menu.



2 Select the printer name to be added using [Printer Name], and enter the printer IP address in [IP Address] and click [OK].



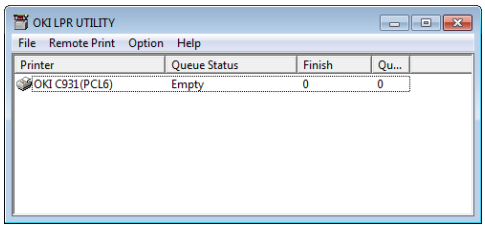
Note

- Displayed in [Printer Name] only if the printer drivers have been added to the [Devices and printers] folder. Not displayed if set in the network printers.

Memo

- You can also click [Discover] to search for OKI Data printers on the network.

The printer is added to the main window.



Automatically transferring jobs

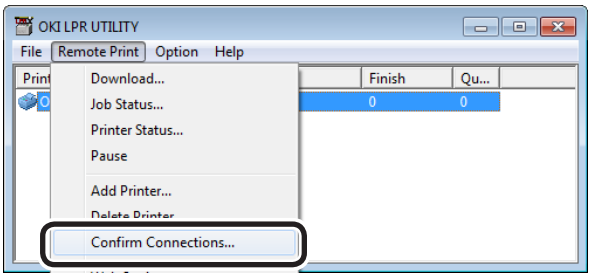
If you cannot print as the printer is in use, offline, or there is a paper jam, you can send the print job to another printer automatically.

Note

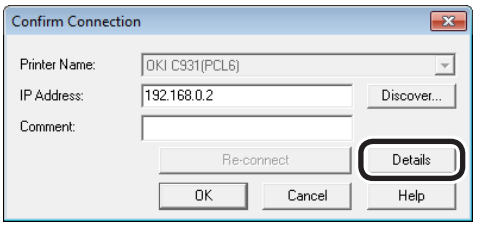
- You cannot send to printer manufactured by other companies.
- Make sure to forward to the same model name.

1 Select the device.

2 Select [Confirm Connections] from the [Remote Print] menu.

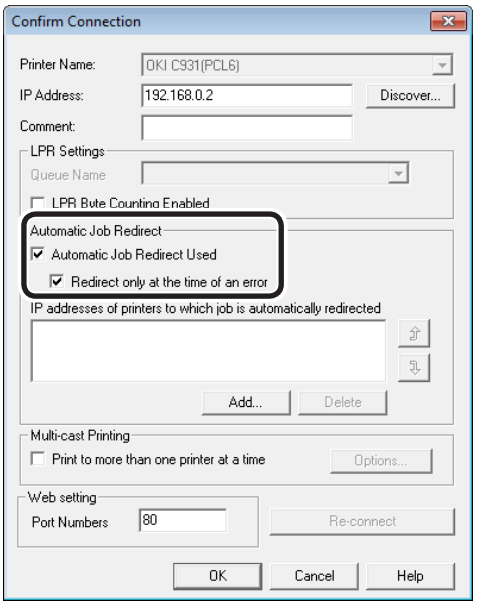


3 Click [Details].

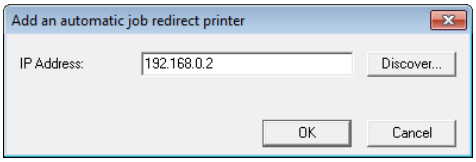


4 Enable the [Automatic Job Redirect Used] check box.

To forward only if a printer error such as "Offline" or "Paper out" occurs, also enable the [Forward only during an error] check box.



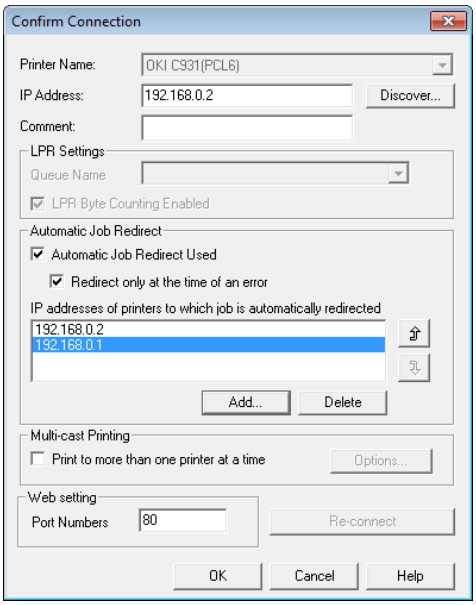
5 Click [Add], and set the destination IP address.



Memo

- You can also click [Discover] to search for OKI Data printers on the network.

6 Repeat the operation in Step 5 as many times as there are candidate destinations.



Memo

- To change the destination priority ranking, select the printer whose priority is to be changed using [IP addresses of printers to which job is automatically redirected], and then click the [↑] and [↓] buttons. (Clicking the [↑] button will increase the priority, and clicking [↓] will decrease the priority.)

7 Click [OK].

Printing using multiple printers simultaneously

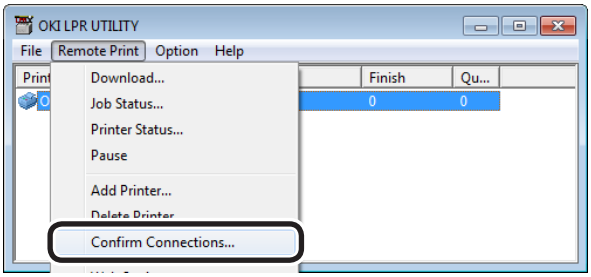
You can print to multiple printers using the one-time print instruction.

Note

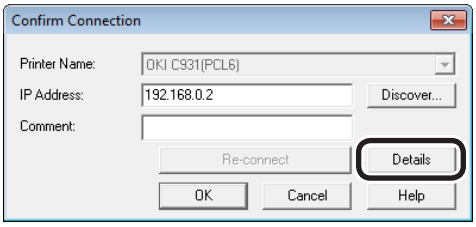
- Make sure to specify the same model for the printers to print simultaneously.

1 Select the printers.

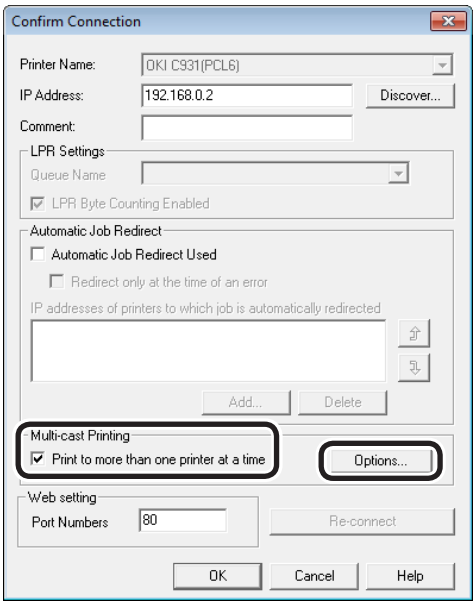
2 Select [Confirm Connections] from the [Remote Print] menu.



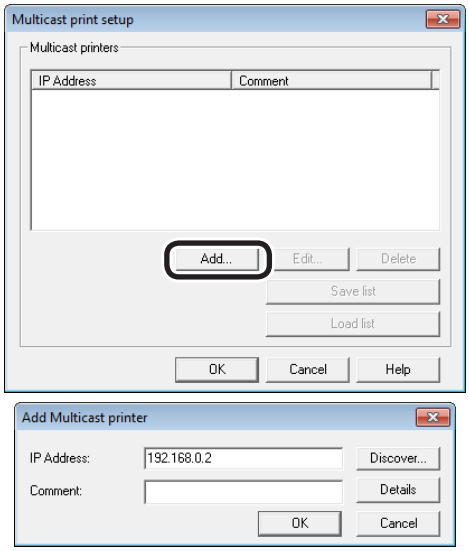
3 Click [Details].



4 Enable the [Print to more than one printer at a time] check box, and click [Options].



5 Click [Add], and set the IP addresses of the printers to print simultaneously.



Memo

- You can also add comments to the printers to print simultaneously. See "Adding comments" (P.199).

6 Repeat the operation in Step 5 as many times as there are printers to be added.

Memo

- Click [Save list] to save the information for the added printers.
- The saved printer information an be read and deleted by clicking [Load list].

7 Click [OK].

Starting the web browser

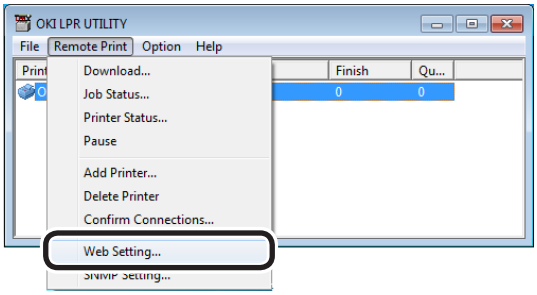
Start your web browser to set the printer network and menus using the Direct Network Printing Utility (LPR).

Memo

- For how to set up the settings, see the "Basic".

1 Select the device.

2 Select [Web Setting] from the [Remote Print] menu.

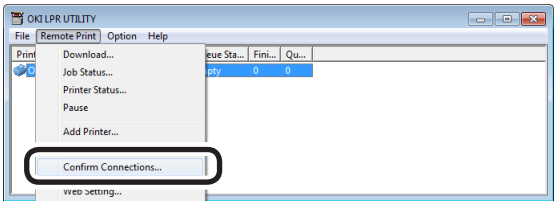


Memo

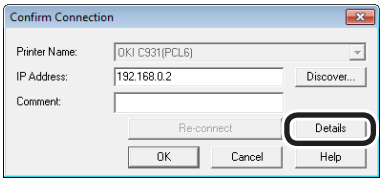
- If the web port number has been changed, change the port number setup of the Direct Network Printing Utility (LPR) using the following procedure.

(1) Select the device.

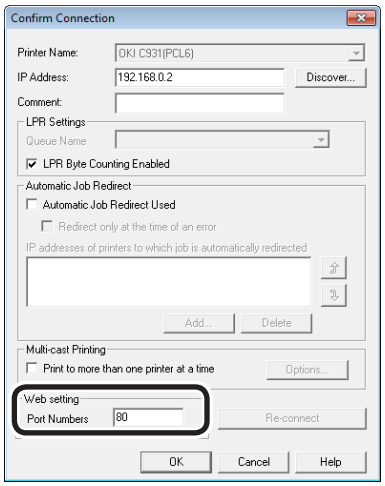
(2) Select [Confirm Connections] from the [Remote Print] menu.



(3) Click [Details].



(4) Enter the web port number in [Port Numbers].



(5) Click [OK].

Adding comments

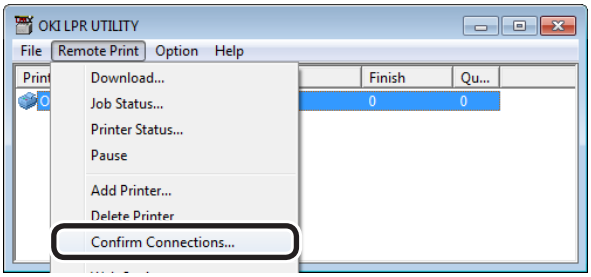
You can add comments to the printers added to the Direct Network Printing Utility (LPR).

Memo

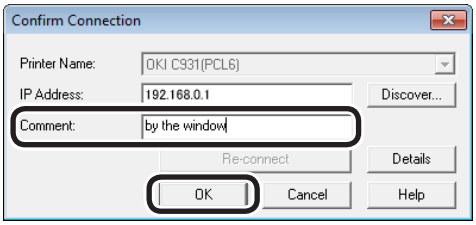
- This is convenient for entering the printer installation site and optional installations.

1 Select the printers.

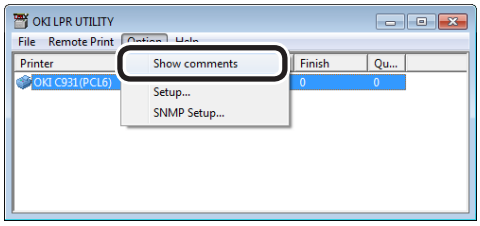
2 Select [Confirm Connections] from the [Remote Print] menu.

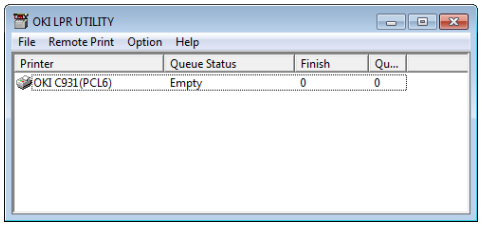


3 Enter the comments in [Comment], and click [OK].



4 Select [Show comments] in the [Option] menu.





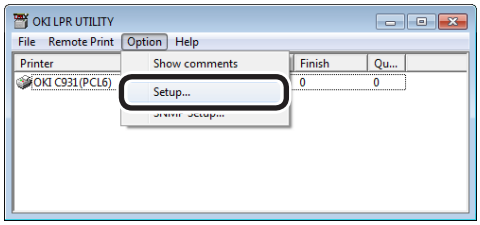
Setting IP addresses automatically

If the printer IP address changes each time you connect to the DHCP server and the power supply is turned ON, you can automatically detect and reset the IP address that has changed.

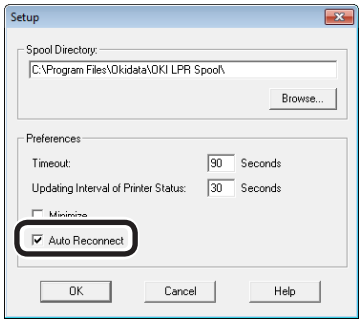
! Note

- The search targets follow the search range settings of the Direct Network Printing Utility (LPR).

1 Select [Setup] in the [Option] menu.



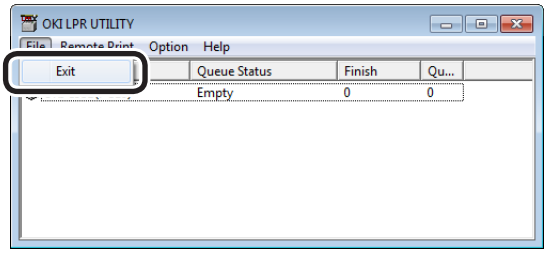
2 Enable the [Auto Reconnect] check box.



3 Click [OK].

Uninstalling

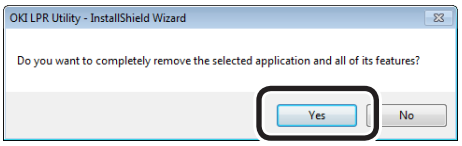
1 Select [Exit] in the [File] menu.



2 Select [Start]>[All Programs]>[OKI Data]>[Direct Network Printing Utility (LPR)]>[Delete OKI LPR Utility] to delete the Direct Network Printing Utility (LPR).

When the [user account control] dialog box is displayed, click [Yes].

3 Click [Yes].



The deletion will start.

Network Extension

You can easily check the device settings and set the optional device configurations from the printer drivers.

Reference

- Network Extension is installed together with the printer drivers.

Operations environment

PCs running Windows 8.1/Windows 8/Windows 7/ Windows Vista/Windows Server 2012 R2/Windows 2012/Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows Server 2008 Versions

PCs operating using TCP/IP

Note

- The software operates in tandem with the printer drivers, so it is necessary to install the printer drivers.
- Network Extension is installed automatically when the printer drivers are installed using a TCP/IP network connection.
- The printer driver connection destination operates only in the following circumstances.
  - OKI LPR Port
  - Standard TCP/IP Port
- PC administrator privileges are required for the setup.

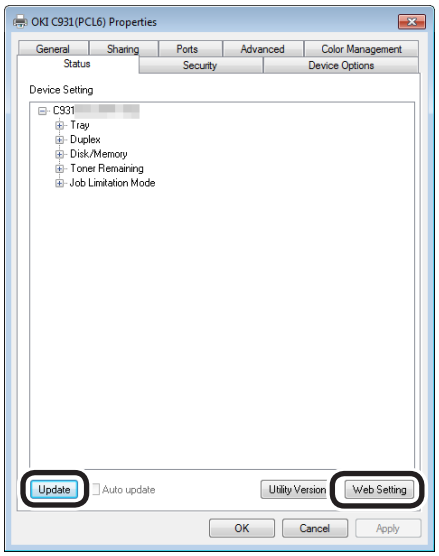
Checking the printer settings

You can check the setup details for the connected device.

Note

- Even if Network Extension is installed, the [Options] tab is not displayed if there is a mismatch with the operations environment.

1. Click [Start], and then select [Devices and printers].
2. Right-click the [OKI (product name) (PS)] or [OKI (product name)(PCL6)] icon, and select [Printer properties].
3. Click the [Status] tab.
4. Click the [Update] button.



(Windows 7 PCL drivers window)

The setup details for the device will be displayed in the "Device Settings".

5. Click [OK].

Memo

- Click the [Web Setting] button to start the Web browser automatically and display the device setup details. For details, see "Setting the network from the web browser" (P.229).

Setting options automatically

You can acquire the optional configurations for the connected and implement the printer driver setup automatically.

Note

- Even if Network Extension is installed, setup is disabled if there is a mismatch with the operations environment.

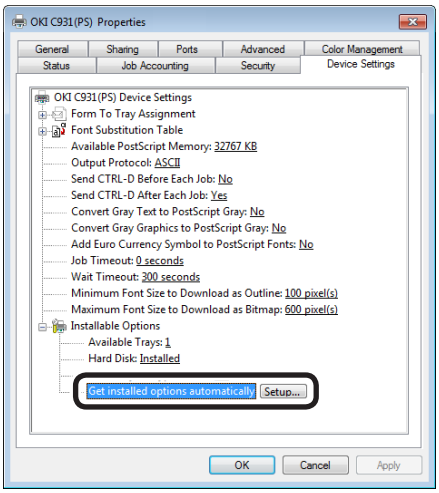
■ Windows PS drivers

1 Click [Start], and then select [Devices and printers].

2 Right-click the [OKI (product name) (PS)] icon, and select [Printer properties].

3 Select the [Device Settings] tab.

4 Click [Get installed options automatically], and click [Setup].



5 Click [OK].

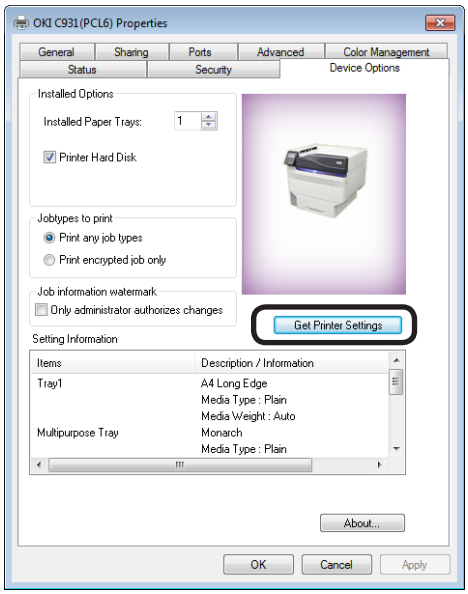
■ Windows PCL drivers

1 Click [Start], and then select [Devices and printers].

2 Right-click the [OKI (product name) (PCL6)] icon, and select [Printer properties].

3 Click the [Device Options] tab.

4 Click [Get Printer Settings].



5 Click [OK].

Uninstalling

1 Select [Start]>[Control panel], and click [Uninstall program].

2 Select [OKI Network Extension], and click [Uninstall].

3 Follow the directions to delete.

Web Driver Installer

Note

- Web Driver Installer is not included on the "Software DVD-ROM". Download from the OKI Data homepage.
- For how to install and operate the Web Driver Installer, see the Web Driver Installer manual.
- The Web Driver Installer manual can be obtained from the OKI Data homepage.

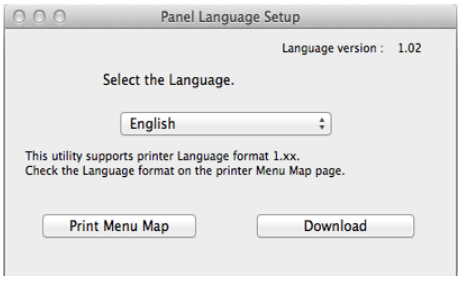
Mac OS X utilities

This section explains utilities you can use in Mac OS X.

Panel language setup

Setting the printer

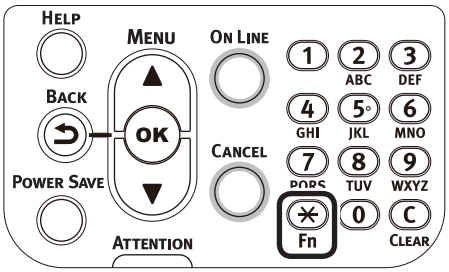
You can change the display language of the control panel.



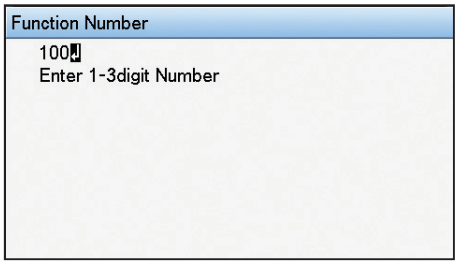
1 Output the device menu map.

(1) Press the [Fn] key.

The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



(2) Press [1], [0], [0], and press the [OK] button.



2 Start the panel language setup utility.

Reference

- See "Installing utilities" (P.178).

3 Select a connection method.

If [TCP/IP] has been selected, enter the IP address. You can check the IP address using the menu map output in Step 1.

4 Click [OK].

5 Check that the value of the "Language Format" in the menu map and the value of the language version displayed in the window match the following conditions.

Condition 1: the least numbers of the version match

Condition 2: the value of the language version shown in the window is either the same or newer (greater) than the value of the "Language Format"

Memo

- If condition 1 is not satisfied, the language settings cannot be downloaded. If the settings are downloaded without condition 1 being satisfied, an error will be displayed on the control panel. To recover, restart the device. Even if condition 1 is satisfied, if condition 2 is not satisfied, some of the settings names may be displayed in English.

6 Select the language.

7 Click [Download].

The file to set the language will be sent to the device, and a message stating that transmission has finished will be displayed.

8 Restarts the device.

Print Job Accounting client

Installing

1 Double-click the file downloaded from the OKI Data homepage.

A disk icon will be displayed on the desktop.

2 Copy the print job accounting client in the disk icon to the application folder.

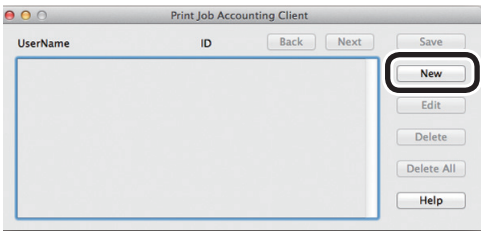
Registering user IDs and user names

Start Print Job Accounting.

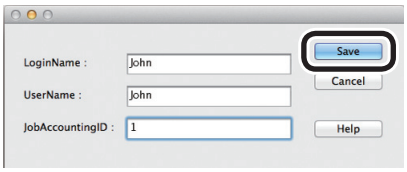
Reference

● See "Installing" (P.205).

1 Click [New].



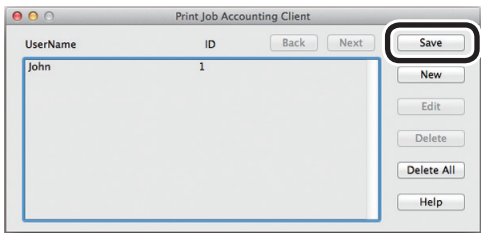
2 Enter the user ID and user name to be used in the Mac OS X login name and Print Job Accounting, and click [Save].



Memo

● Repeat this operation to register multiple users.

3 Click [Save].



4 Close the client software.

Registering multiple users simultaneously

You can register multiple user IDs and user names simultaneously using CSV files. This is convenient if using Mac OS X with multiple login user names.

1 Prepare CSV files using commercially-available software.

CSV files describe in order the Mac OS X login name, user ID, and user name.

(1) Enter the Mac OS X login name, user ID, and user name for each user in the fields.

Note

● Enter the user ID in single-byte numbers.

(2) Save in CSV format.

2 Register using the client software.

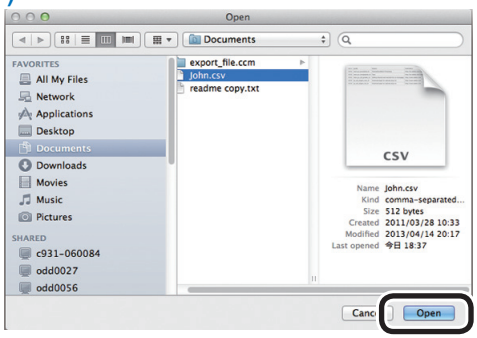
(1) Start Print Job Accounting.

Reference

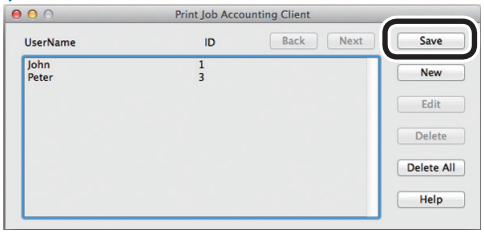
● See "Installing" (P.205).

(2) Select to import from the file menu.

(3) Read the CSV file created in Step 1.



(4) Click [Save].



(5) Close the client software.

Changing user IDs and user names

You can use the client software to change the user IDs and user names that have already been registered.

1 Start Print Job Accounting.

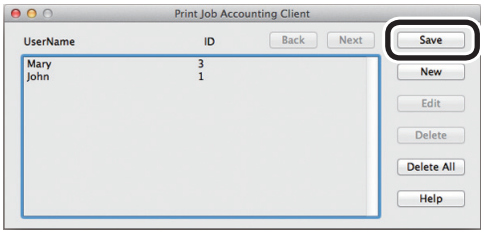
Reference

- See "Installing" (P.205).

2 Select the user to be changed, and click [Edit].

3 Enter the new user name and user ID, and click [Save].

4 Click [Save].



5 Close the client software.

Deleting user IDs and user names

1 Start Print Job Accounting.

Reference

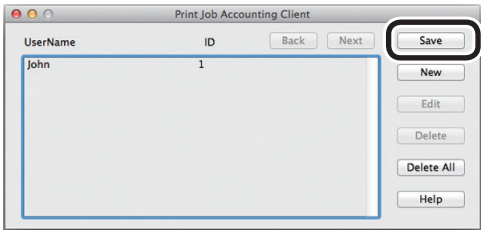
- See "Installing" (P.205).

2 Select the user to be deleted, and click [Delete].

Memo

- If deleting all registered users, click [Delete All].

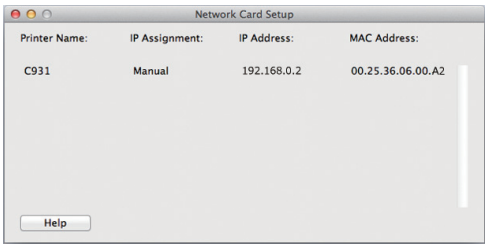
3 Click [Save].



4 Close the client software.

Network Card Setup Utility

The network can be set using the Network Card Setup Utility.



TCP/IP must be enabled to use the Network Card Setup Utility.

Note

- Set the TCP/IP.

Setting IP addresses

1. Start the Network Card Setup Utility.

   Reference

   - See "Installing utilities" (P.178).

2. Select the device.
3. Select [IP Address Setup] from the [Setup] menu.
4. Specify the settings as necessary, and click [Setup].
5. Enter the password, and click [OK].
   - The factory-set password is the last six alphanumeric characters of the Mac address.
   - The password is case-sensitive.
6. Click [OK] to enable the new settings.

   The device network card will restart.

Making web settings

The device network can be set by starting the web page.

■ Enabling web settings

1. Select [Web Setup] from the [Setup] menu.
2. Select [Enable] and click [Setup].
3. Enter the password in [Input password], and click [OK].
   - The factory-set password is the last six alphanumeric characters of the MAC address.
   - The password is case-sensitive.
4. Click [OK] in the verification window.

■ Opening web pages

1. Start the Network Card Setup Utility.

   Reference

   - See "Installing utilities" (P.178).
2. Select the device.
3. Select [Display web page] from the [Setup] menu.

   The web page will start, and the device status page will be displayed.

Finishing the Network Card Setup Utility

1 Select [Exit] from the [File] menu.

4

Network Setup

Network setting items..... 210

Initializing network settings 223

Using DHCP 224

Using SNMP 227

About IPv6..... 228

Setting the network from the web browser..... 229

Network setting items

This section explains the items that can be set using the network functions.

Press the scroll buttons ▲ or ▼ on the control panel, and then select [Print printer information]>[Network] to print a settings list and check the current network settings.

Reference

- For how to print the network settings list, see "Printing printer information" (P.264).

The network settings can be changed using the device web page, Configuration Tool, and Network Card Setup Utility. See the following table for the menus that can be used with the utilities.

■ Device Information

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
Administrator contacts	-	-	(None)	Specify the system administrator contact details using 255 single-byte characters max.
Printer name	-	-	OKI-(Product name)-(Last 6 digits of MAC address)	Set the device name using 31 single-byte characters max.
Short printer name	-	-	(Product name)-(Last 6 digits of MAC address)	Set the device short printer name using 15 single-byte characters max.
Installation location	-	-	(None)	Set the device location using 255 single-byte characters max.
Printer control number	-	-	(None)	Set a user-defined number to manage the device using 32 single-byte characters max.

■ General Network Setup

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
NetBIOS over TCP	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to use or not use NetBIOS over TCP protocols.
EtherTalk	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to use or not use EtherTalk protocols.
Gigabit network	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to use or not use the Gigabit network.
Hub connection	-	-	Auto	Specifies the baud rate and communications methods between the hub and the device.

■ TCP/IP

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
IP address setting	IP address acquisition method	IP address acquisition method	Auto	Specifies the IPv4 address setup methods.
IPv4 address	IP address	IP address	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Sets the IPv4 address.
Subnet mask	Subnet mask	Subnet mask	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Sets the subnet mask.
Gateway address	Default gateway address	Default gateway address	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Sets the gateway address.
DNS server address (primary)	-	-	0.0.0.0	Specifies the IP address of the primary DNS server. Make sure to set this item if specifying the STMP server using the domain name.
DNS server address (secondary)	-	-	0.0.0.0	Specifies the IP address of the secondary DNS server. Make sure to set this item if specifying the STMP server using the domain name.
Dynamic DNS	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to register the information to the DNS server when the settings have changed.
Domain name	-	-	(None)	Sets the domain name for the device.
WINS server (primary)	-	-	0.0.0.0	Specifies the WINS server name or IP address (Windows only).
WINS server (secondary)	-	-	0.0.0.0	Specifies the WINS server name or IP address (Windows only).
Scope ID	-	-	(None)	Specifies the WINS Scope ID. Specify using 1 to 233 single-byte characters.
Windows	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to use the Windows auto detection function.
Macintosh	-	-	Enable	Specifies whether to use the Macintosh auto detection function.
Printer name	-	-	OKI-(Product name)-(Last 6 digits of MAC address)	Specifies the device name displayed when the auto detection function is enabled.
WSD Print	-	-	Enable	Specifies whether to use WSD Print.
LLTD	-	-	Enable	Specifies whether to use LLTD.

■ EtherTalk

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
Zone name	-	-	*	Specifies the EtherTalk zone name using 32 single-byte characters max.
Printer name	-	-	(Product name)	Specifies the EtherTalk printer name using 31 single-byte characters max.

■ NetBIOS over TCP

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
Short printer name	-	-	(Product name)-(Last 6 digits of MAC address)	Set the name identified using NetBIOS over TCP using 15 single-byte characters max. In Windows, this is displayed in the PrintServer group for the network PC.
Work group name	-	-	PrintServer	Sets the work group name displayed in the Windows network PC using 15 single-byte characters max.
Master browser setup	-	-	Enable	Specifies whether to use the master browser.
Comments	-	-	EthernetBoard OkiLAN 9400g	Sets the comments using 48 single-byte characters max. Displayed when the Windows Explorer display is advanced.

■ E-mail receiving settings

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
Use receiving protocol	-	-	Disable	Specify whether to use the mail receiving function. Select the protocol you want to use.
POP server name	-	-	(None)	Specify the POP server name. Input the domain name and the IP address. If you input the domain name, please set the DNS accordingly.
POP user ID	-	-	(None)	Set the user ID to access the POP server.
POP password	-	-	(None)	Set the password to access the POP server.
APOP support	-	-	Disable	Specify whether to use APOP.
POP port number	-	-	110	Specify the port number to access the POP server.
POP receiving interval	-	-	5 mins.	Specify the interval to access the POP server for receiving mails.
Domain filter	-	-	Disable	Specify whether to use the domain filter function.
E-mail from the following listed domains	-	-	Authorization	Specifies whether to accept or block E-mails from the specified domain.
Domain 1 - 5	-	-	(None)	Specify the domain to which the domain filter function applies.
SMTP receiving port number	-	-	25	Specify the port number to access this machine via SMTP.

■ E-mail sending settings

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
SMTP sending	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to use the SMTP (e-mail) send protocols.
SMTP Server name	-	-	None	Sets the SMTP server name. Specify the domain name or IP address. It is necessary to set DNS(Pri)(Sec) if specifying the domain name.
Printer e-mail Address	-	-	None	Sets the device e-mail address.
SMTP Port No.	-	-	25	Sets the SMTP port number. In general, use the default setting.
SMTP authentication	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to implement SMTP authentication.
User ID	-	-	None	Sets the SMTP authentication user ID.
Password	-	-	None	Sets the SMTP authentication password.
Additional information Setup Printer model	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to include the printer model name in the printer information described in the outgoing mail.
Additional information Setup Network interface	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to include the network interface name in the printer information described in the outgoing mail.
Additional information Setup Printer serial number	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to include the device serial number in the printer information described in the outgoing mail.
Additional information Setup Printer control number	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to include the device management number in the printer information described in the outgoing mail.
Additional information Setup Printer name	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to include the system name in the printer information described in the outgoing mail.
Additional information Setup Installation location	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to include the system location in the printer information described in the outgoing mail.
Additional information Setup IP address	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to include the IP address in the printer information described in the outgoing mail.
Additional information Setup MAC Address	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to include the MAC address in the printer information described in the outgoing mail.

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
Additional information Setup Short printer name	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to include the device short printer name in the printer information described in the outgoing mail.
Additional information Setup Printer URL	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to include the device URL in the printer information described in the outgoing mail.
Comments	-	-	None	Sets the comments added to the end of the outgoing mail. Up to 4 lines can be set. Enter up to 63 characters per line, and a carriage return is implemented automatically when this number is exceeded.
Return destination e-mail address	-	-	None	Sets the return address. Normally, specify the mail address of the network administrator.
E-mail Address 1 to 5	-	-	None	Sets the send destination address. Up to 5 addresses can be specified.
Malfunction notice Method	-	-	Notification when a malfunction occurs	Sets the method for notifying of malfunctions.
Mail notification interval	-	-	24	Sets the notification interval. Enabled only if periodic notifications are selected.
Consumables warning	-	-	Immediate	Sets whether to notify you immediately regarding printer consumables (toner cartridges, image drum units, etc.) Enabled only if notify upon occurrence is selected.
Consumables warning	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to notify you immediately regarding printer consumables (toner cartridges, image drum units, etc.) Enabled only if periodic notifications are selected.
Consumables Error	-	-	Immediate	Sets whether to notify you of errors regarding printer consumables (toner cartridges, image drum units, etc.) Enabled only if notify upon occurrence is selected.
Consumables Error	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to notify you of errors regarding printer consumables (toner cartridges, image drum units, etc.) Enabled only if periodic notifications are selected.
Maintenance unit warnings	-	-	2H 0M	Sets whether to notify you regarding maintenance units (fuser units, belt units, etc.) Enabled only if notify upon occurrence is selected.
Maintenance unit warnings	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to notify you regarding maintenance units (fuser units, belt units, etc.) Enabled only if periodic notifications are selected.
Maintenance units Error	-	-	Immediate	Sets whether to notify you regarding maintenance unit errors (fuser units, belt units, etc.) Enabled only if notify upon occurrence is selected.

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
Maintenance units Error	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to notify you regarding maintenance unit errors (fuser units, belt units, etc.) Enabled only if periodic notifications are selected.
Refill paper warning	-	-	0H 15M	Sets whether to notify you of paper warnings. Enabled only if notify upon occurrence is selected.
Refill paper warning	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to notify you of paper warnings. Enabled only if periodic notifications are selected.
Refill paper error	-	-	Immediate	Sets whether to notify you of paper errors. Enabled only if notify upon occurrence is selected.
Refill paper error	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to notify you of paper errors. Enabled only if periodic notifications are selected.
Paper warning during printing	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to notify you of paper feed warnings. Enabled only if notify upon occurrence is selected.
Paper warning during printing	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to notify you of paper feed warnings. Enabled only if periodic notifications are selected.
Paper error during printing	-	-	2H 0M	Sets whether to notify you of paper feed errors. Enabled only if notify upon occurrence is selected.
Paper error during printing Paper Error	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to notify you of paper feed errors. Enabled only if periodic notifications are selected.
Storage device	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to notify you of storage device warnings. Enabled only if notify upon occurrence is selected.
Storage device	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to notify you of storage device warnings. Enabled only if periodic notifications are selected.
Print results Warning	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to notify you of malfunction affecting the print results. Enabled only if notify upon occurrence is selected.
Print results Warning	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to notify you of malfunction affecting the print results. Enabled only if periodic notifications are selected.
Print results Error	-	-	2H 0M	Sets whether to notify you of errors affecting the print results. Enabled only if notify upon occurrence is selected.
Print results Error	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to notify you of errors affecting the print results. Enabled only if periodic notifications are selected.
Interface errors Warning	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to notify you of interface (network, etc.) warnings. Enabled only if notify upon occurrence is selected.
Interface errors Warning	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to notify you of interface (network, etc.) warnings. Enabled only if periodic notifications are selected.
Interface errors Error	-	-	2H 0M	Sets whether to notify you of interface (network, etc.) errors. Enabled only if notify upon occurrence is selected.
Interface errors Error	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to notify you of interface (network, etc.) errors. Enabled only if periodic notifications are selected.
Security	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to notify you of warnings occurring in the security functions. Enabled only if notify upon occurrence is selected.

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
Security	-	-	Disable	Sets whether to notify you of warnings occurring in the security functions. Enabled only if periodic notifications are selected.
Advanced	-	-	2H 0M	Sets whether to notify you of other major errors. Enabled only if notify upon occurrence is selected.
Advanced	-	-	Enable	Sets whether to notify you of other major errors. Enabled only if periodic notifications are selected.

■ SNMP

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
Setting SNMP to be used	-	-	SNMPv3+v1	Specifies the SNMP version.
User name	-	-	root	Set the SNMPv3 user name using 32 single-byte characters max.
Secure Print Setting Pass phrase	-	-	(None)	Sets the password to create an authentication key for SNMPv3 packet authentication. Set using 8 to 32 single-byte characters.
Secure Print Setting Algorithm	-	-	MD5	Specifies the algorithm for SNMPv3 packet authentication.
Encrypted settings Pass phrase	-	-	(None)	Sets the password to create a privacy key for SNMPv3 packet encryption. Set using 8 to 32 single-byte characters.
Encrypted settings Algorithm	-	-	DES	Specifies the algorithm for SNMPv3 packet encryption. This value cannot be changed.
New SNMP read community	-	-	public	Sets the SNMPv1 read community using 15 single-byte characters max.
New SNMP write community	-	-	public	Sets the SNMPv1 write community using 15 single-byte characters max.

■ SNMP Trap

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
Printer trap community setup	-	-	public	Sets the printer trap community using 31 single-byte characters max.
Address 1 to 5	-	-	0.0.0.0	Specifies the trap notification destination. You can specify up to 5 addresses max.

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
Trap send authorizations 1 to 5	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to use printer trap in TCP numbers 1 to 5.
Printer restart 1 to 5	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to send SNMP messages when the printer is restarted.
Illegal trap receipt 1 to 5	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to use the trap when the device is accessed using a utility name not set using [Printer trap community name setup].
Online 1 to 5	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to send SNMP messages whenever the device is online.
Offline 1 to 5	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to send SNMP messages whenever the device is offline.
No paper 1 to 5	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to send SNMP messages when the device is out of paper.
Paper jam 1 to 5	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to send SNMP messages when a paper jam occurs.
Cover open 1 to 5	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to send SNMP messages when the device cover is open.
Printer error 1 to 5	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to send SNMP messages when an error occurs.

■ IPP

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
IPP	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to use IPP.
Notices from the administrator	-	-	(None)	Enter a message according to the language selected using [Character code] and [Language].
Character code	-	-	UTF-8	Specifies the character set used when sending the settings to the device.
Language	-	-	EN-US	Specifies the language used in the setup, including the text strings.
AUTHENTICATION	-	-	NONE	Specifies whether to use authentication when implementing IPP printing.
User name 1 to 50	-	-	(None)	Specifies the user name using 63 single-byte characters max. If [BASIC] has been selected in [Secure print].
Password 1 to 50	-	-	(None)	Specifies the password using 16 single-byte characters max. If [BASIC] has been selected in [Secure print].

■ SNTP

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
SNTP	-	-	Manual	Sets whether to use or not use SNTP protocols.
NTP server (Primary)	-	-	None	Sets the IP address of the (primary) NTP server that acquires the time.
NTP server (Secondary)	-	-	None	Sets the IP address of the (secondary) NTP server that acquires the time.
Time zone	-	-	00:00	Sets the time difference from GMT.
Summertime	-	-	OFF	Sets summertime.

■ IEEE802.1X

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
IEEE802.1X	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to useIEEE802.1X.
EAP type	-	-	EAP-TLS	Specifies the EAP method.
EAP user	-	-	(None)	Sets the user name used by EAP using 64 single-byte characters max.
EAP password	-	-	(None)	Sets the password used by EAP using 64 single-byte characters max. Enabled only if [PEAP] is selected in [EAP type].
Client certificate setup	-	-	Do not use SSL/TLS in EAP authentication	Specifies whether to use SSL/TLS certificate in IEEE802.1X authentication. Cannot be used if SSL/TLS certificate is not installed. Enabled only if EAP-TLS are selected.
CA certificate setup	-	-	Authenticating the server	Specifies whether to authenticate the certificate received from the RADIUS server using CA certificate.

■ Security

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
NetBIOS over TCP	-	-	Enable	Specifies whether to use NetBIOS over TCP.
EtherTalk	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to use EtherTalk.
Web (port No.: 80)	Device setup (web) - Enabled	Web setup	Enable	Specifies whether to access the device using web pages.
Web	-	-	80	Specifies the port number to access the device web page.
IPP (port No.: 631)	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to use IPP.
Telnet	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to access the device using Telnet.
FTP	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to access the device using FTP.
SNMP	-	-	Enable	Specifies whether to access the device using SNMP.
POP	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to use POP3.
POP	-	-	110	Specifies the port number of POP3.
SNTP	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to use SNTP.
Local Ports	-	-	Enable	Specifies whether to use specific protocols.
SMTP sending	-	-	25	Specifies the SMTP send port number.
Network functions Change password	Change password	Change password	(Last 6 digits of MAC address)	Sets a new administrator password using 15 single-byte characters max. The password is case-sensitive. This password is used only when changing the setup from the utilities. The administrator password set using the device cannot be changed from this item.

■ IP filtering

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
IP filtering	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to use IP filtering. Make sure to make the following category settings if enabling IP filtering. Unless these settings are made, the device cannot be accessed via TCP/IP.
Start address 1 to 10	-	-	0.0.0.0	Specifies the IP address authorized by access to the device. You can specify individual addresses or the address range.
End address 1 to 10	-	-	0.0.0.0	
Print 1 to 10	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to authorize print jobs from the specified IP address.
Setup 1 to 10	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to authorize setup changes from the specified IP address.
IP address of the registered administrator	-	-	0.0.0.0	Automatically specifies the administrator IP address. Normally only this address can access the device. All accesses are authorized via proxy servers if the administrator accesses the server via a proxy server.

■ MAC address filtering

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
MAC address filtering	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to use MAC address filtering. This function is used to control access from the MAC address. Make sure to make the following category settings if enabling MAC address filtering. Unless these settings are made, the device cannot be accessed via a network.
Notifications from the following MAC addresses	-	-	Authorization	Specifies whether to authorize or deny access from the specified MAC address.
MAC address 1 to 50	-	-	00:00:00: 00:00:00	Specifies the MAC address to which filtering is applied.
MAC address of the registered administrator	-	-	00:00:00: 00:00:00	Automatically specifies the administrator MAC address. Normally only this address can access the device. All accesses are authorized via proxy servers if the administrator accesses the server via a proxy server.

■ Encryption (SSL/TLS)

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
HTTP/IPP	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to encrypt HTTP/IP communications.
HTTP/IPP encryption strength	-	-	Standard	Specifies the encryption strength of HTTP/IPP communication.
Incoming FTP	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to encrypt receiving via FTP.
FTP receiving encryption strength	-	-	Standard	Specifies the encryption strength of receiving via FTP.
SMTP receiving	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to encrypt receiving via SMTP.
SMTP receiving encryption strength	-	-	Standard	Specifies the encryption strength of receiving via SMTP.
Select the type of certificate used.	-	-	Using the certificate signed by you	Creates your signed certificate. Further, creates the CSR to be sent to the authenticator, and installs the certificate issued by the authenticator.
Common Name	-	-	(Printer IP address)	The device IP address is specified when your signed certificate is created.
Organization	-	-	(None)	Specifies the formal name of the organization to which the user belongs using 64 single-byte characters max.
Organizational Unit	-	-	(None)	Specifies the name of the sub-group (store, etc.) to which the user belongs using 64 single-byte characters max.
Locality	-	-	(None)	Specifies the region name to which the user belongs using 128 single-byte characters max.

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
State/Province	-	-	(None)	Specifies the state or prefectural name to which the user belongs using 128 single-byte characters max.
Country/ Region	-	-	(None)	Specifies the country code or region code using 2 single-byte characters.
Key exchange method	-	-	RSA	Specifies the key method for encrypted communications.
Key size	-	-	1024bit	Specifies the key size for encrypted communications.

■ IPSec

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
IPSec	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to use IPSec.
IP address 1 to 50	-	-	0.0.0.0	Specifies the host that authorizes communications using IPSec.
IKE encryption Algorithm	-	-	AES-CBC 128	Specifies the IKE encryption method.
IKE hash Algorithm	-	-	SHA-1	Specifies the IKE hash method.
Diffie-Hellman group	-	-	Group2	Specifies the Diffie - Hellman group used by "Phase 1 Proposal".
Lifetime	-	-	28800 (s)	Specifies the "ISAKMP SA" lifetime.
Advance common key	-	-	(None)	Specifies the advance common key.
Key PFS	-	-	NOPFS	Specifies whether to use Key PFS (Perfect Forward Secrecy).
Diffie - Hellman group when Key PFS is enabled	-	-	None	Specifies the Diffie - Hellman group used by Key PFS.
ESP encryption Algorithm	-	-	AES-CBC 128	Specifies the algorithm for the ESP encryption algorithm.
ESP authentication Algorithm	-	-	SHA-1	Specifies the algorithm for the ESP authentication algorithm.
AH authentication Algorithm	-	-	SHA-1	Specifies the AH authentication algorithm.
Lifetime	-	-	3600 (s)	Specifies the "IPSec SA" lifetime.

■ Maintenance

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
Restarting the network	-	-	Implement	Use to restart the network card.
Initializing the network	-	-	Implement	Use to restore the network settings to the factory settings.
Network scale	-	-	Normal	Use the factory settings. [Small] is recommended provided you are using a small-scale LAN connecting multiple PCs.
Sleep cancellation setting	-	-	Disable	Use the factory settings. Set to "Enable" to cancel sleep mode using MIB Get.

■ Web printing

Item			Factory Default Settings	Explanation
Web Page	Configuration Tool/ Network Setting Plug-in	Network Card Setup Utility (Mac OS X)		
Paper feed tray	-	-	Auto selection	Specifies the tray used in the print job.
Copies	-	-	1	Specifies the copies.
Batch printing	-	-	Disable	Specifies whether to sort the output.
Align to paper size	-	-	Enable	Specifies whether to align the document size to the paper size.
Duplex	-	-	None	Specifies whether to close, and the closure method, during 2-sided duplex.
Print page specification	-	-	Disable	Specifies the pages to be printed.
PDF password	-	-	Disable	If printing an encrypted PDF file, select the item and enter the required password.

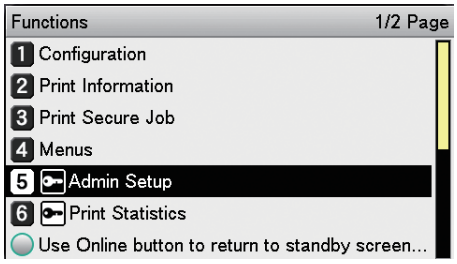
Initializing network settings

Note

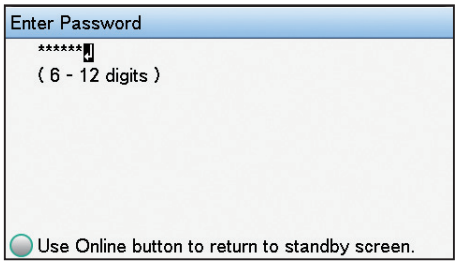
- Implementing this operation will initialize all network settings.

1 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.

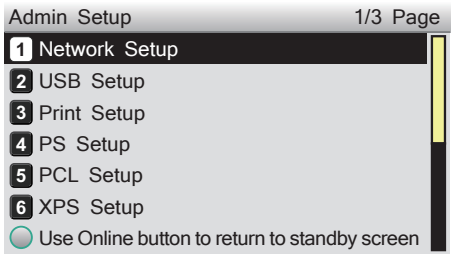
2 Select [Admin Setup], and press the [OK] button.



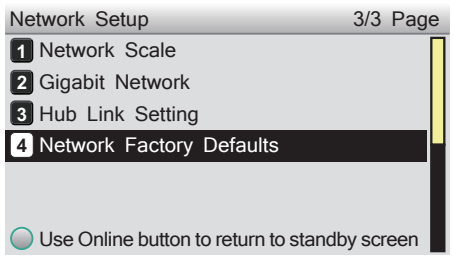
3 Enter the administrator password, and press the [OK] button.



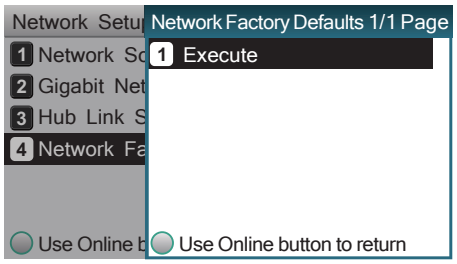
4 Select [Network Setup], and press the [OK] button.



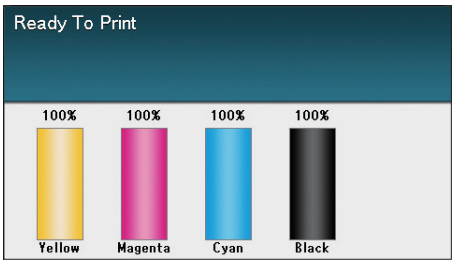
5 Select [Network Factory Defaults], and press the [OK] button.



6 [Execute] will be displayed, so press the [OK] button.



7 The display will return to the standby screen.



Using DHCP

The IP address can be acquired from the DHCP server.

Note

- PC administrator privileges are required for the setup.
- Incorrectly allocating the IP address may cause major malfunctions such as crashing the network. Thoroughly consult the network administrator before making the settings.

Setting the DHCP server

DHCP is the protocol that allocates IP addresses automatically to each TCP/IP network. You can set a subnet mask in addition to the IP address.

Note

- Set the DHCP server so that a fixed IP address is allocated to the device. Allocating IP addresses randomly may disable printing via the network. See the DHCP server manuals for how to allocate fixed IP addresses.

Memo

- Compatible with the following OS.
  - Windows Server 2012 R2/Windows Server 2012/Windows Server 2008 R2/Windows Server 2008
- The following procedure uses Windows Server 2008 R2 as an example. Depending on the OS, descriptions may differ.

1 Click [Start], and select [Admin tools]>[Server manager].

If [DHCP] is already displayed in [Admin tools], go to Step 8.

2 Select [Add role] in [Role summary].

3 In the [Add role wizard], click [Next].

4 Enable the [DHCP server] check box, and click [Next].

5 Make settings as necessary following the on-screen instructions.

6 Check the settings using the [Check installation options], and click [Install].

7 When the installation has finished, click the [Exit] button.

8 Click [Start], and select [Admin tools]>[DHCP] to start the [DHCP] wizard.

9 Select the server to be used from the DHCP list.

10 Select [New scope] from the [Operations] menu.

11 Use the [New scope wizard] to make the settings as necessary by following the on-screen instructions.

Memo

- Make sure to set the default gateway.
- Select [Activate immediately] in the [Activate scope] screen.

12 Click [Finish].

13 Select the new scope from the DHCP list, and select [Reserve].

14 Select [New reservation] from the [Operations] menu.

15 Make the settings.

16 Click [Add].

17 Click [Exit].

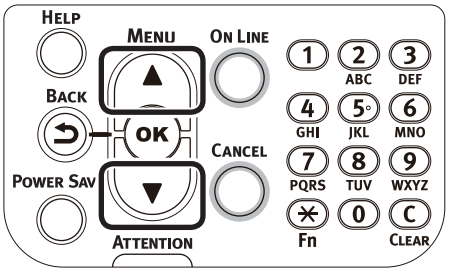
18 Select [Finish] from the [File] menu.

Setting the printer

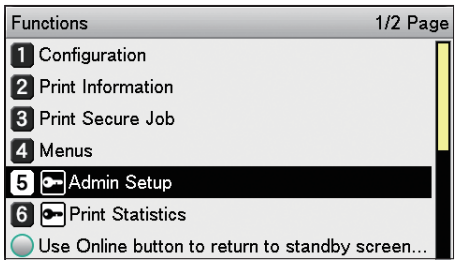
To use the device on a DHCP environment, set the IP address setup method to automatic.

Further, the default factory setting is to set the IP address automatically, so implementing this procedure is unnecessary.

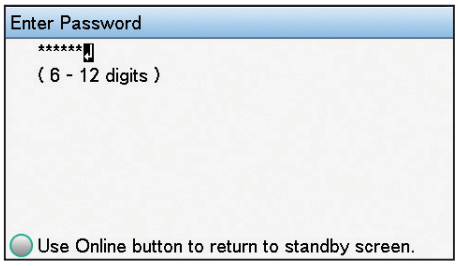
1 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



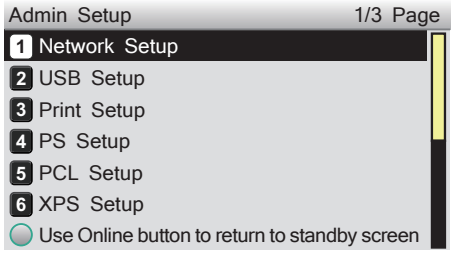
2 Select [Admin Setup], and press the [OK] button.



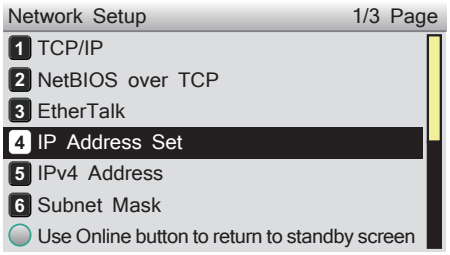
3 Enter the administrator password, and press the [OK] button.



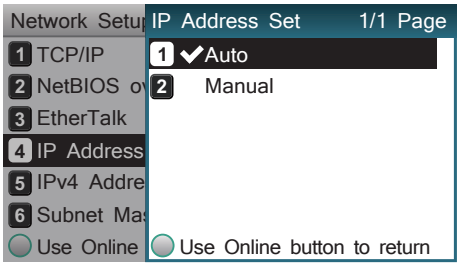
4 Select [Network Setup], and press the [OK] button.



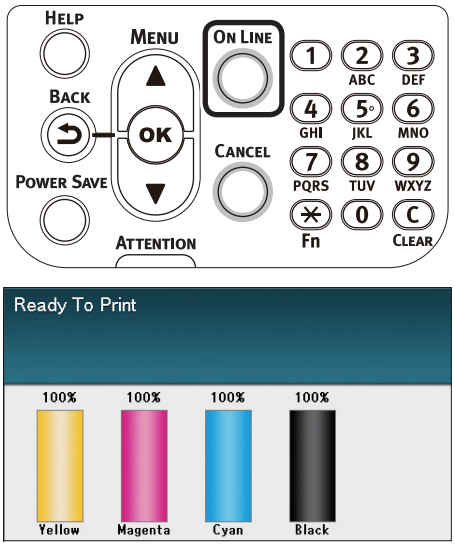
5 Select [IP Address Set], and press the [OK] button.



6 Select [Auto], and press the [OK] button.



7 Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.



■ Using on a BOOTP environment

To use the device on a BOOTP environment, set the IP address setup method to BOOTP.

1. Access the device web page, and log in as an administrator.
2. Select [Admin Setup].
3. Select [Network Setup]>[TCP/IP]>[Change Settings]>[Get IP address automatically (BOOTP)].
4. Click [Submit].

Using SNMP

Use SNMP manager compatible with SNMPv3 to encrypt the device controls using SNMP.

1 Access the device web page, and log in as an administrator.

2 Select [Admin Setup].

3 Select [Network Setup]>[SNMP]>[Setup].

4 Implement advanced setup by following the on-screen instructions.

5 Click [Submit].

6 The network will restart, and the new settings will be enabled.

Memo

- The device is mounted to the SNMP agent. You can use a commercially-available SNMP agent to check and change the device settings. For the device MIB, see the "Software DVD-ROM", and check the "ASN" file in the [Misc]>[MIB Files] folder.

About IPv6

The device is compatible with IPv6, and the IPv6 address is acquired automatically. IPv6 addresses cannot be set manually.

The device is compatible with the following protocols.

- Print:
  - LPR
  - IPP
  - RAW (Port9100)
  - FTP
- Setup:
  - HTTP
  - SNMPv1/v3
  - Telnet

Checking IPv6 addresses

IPv6 addresses are allocated automatically.

1 Access the device web page, and select [Device information].

2 Select [Network]>[TCP/IP].

Memo

- If all the global addresses are displayed as "0", it is possible an error has occurred in the router being used.

Reference

- Press the scroll buttons ▲ and ▼, and select [Print Information]>[Network] to check the IPv6 address using the device network report. For reports and how to print reports, see "Printing printer information" (P.264).

Setting the network from the web browser

Operations environment

PCs with Microsoft Internet Explorer Ver. 6.0 or later, Safari Ver. 3.0 or later, or Firefox 3.0 or later installed.

PCs operating using TCP/IP

Memo

- Check that the web browser security is set to medium.

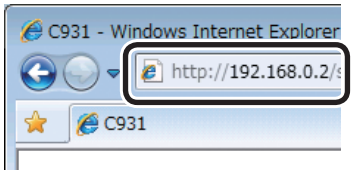
The following explanation uses the following environments as examples.

- Printer name: C931
- Printer IP address: 192.168.0.2
- MAC Address: 00:80:87:84:9C:9B
- Web browser: Microsoft Internet Explorer Ver.8.0

Starting up

1 Start the web browser.

2 Enter the URL "http://printer IP address/" in the address bar, and press the Enter key.



The printer status screen will be displayed.

Note

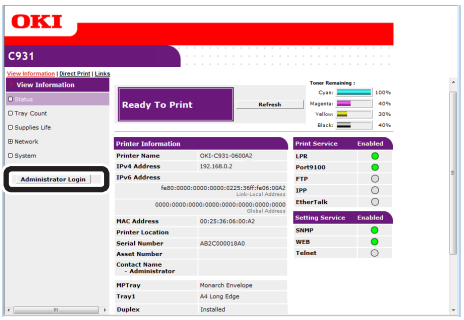
- If including values to 1 or 2 digits in the IP address, do not enter "0" before the value. Otherwise, communications may be disabled.
  E.g.: Correct input value: http://192.168.0.2/
  Incorrect input value: http://192.168.000.002/

Logging in as an administrator

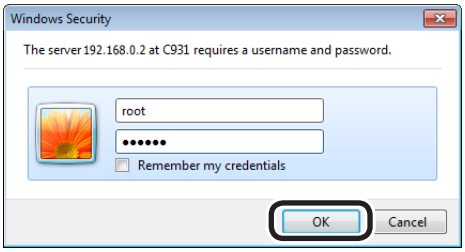
Note

- To change the device settings using the web browser, it is necessary to log in as a device administrator.

1 Click [Administrator Login].



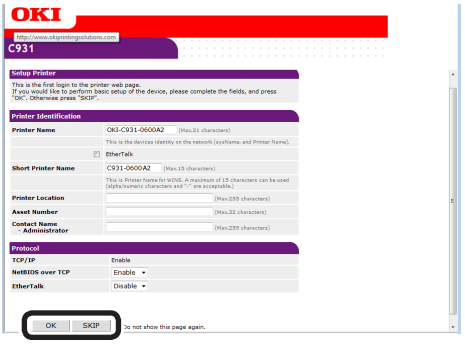
2 Enter "root" in [Username], and the current password in [Password], and click [OK].



Memo

- The password is the same as for the "Administrator password" in the control panel.

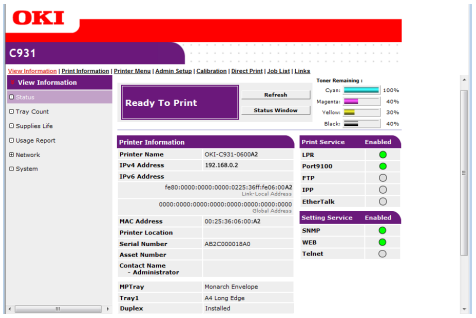
3 Set the printer information that can be checked using the network, and click either [OK] or [SKIP].



Note

- Click [SKIP] to omit the setup.
- Enable the [Do not show this page again] check box, and click either [OK] or [SKIP] to disable this display for subsequent logins.

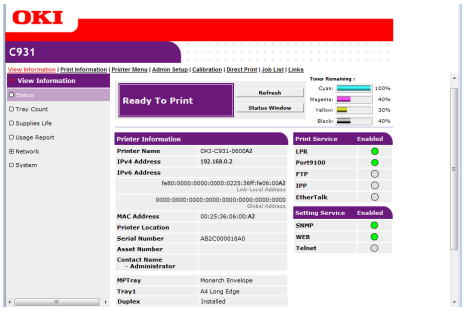
4 The following screen will be displayed.



Items table

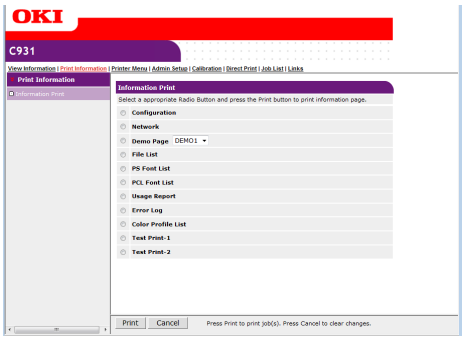
◎ : Displayed if logged in as a printer administrator.

■ View Information



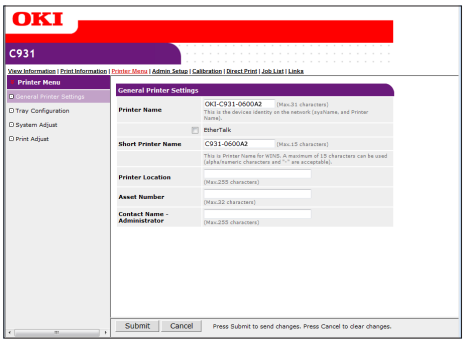
Item	Explanation
Status	Displays the current printer status. Displays all warnings and errors that occurred in the printer as "malfunction information". Further, you can also check the operations status of the network services, printer information tables, and IP addresses set in the printer. For the status window, see the "Checking the "Status Window"" (P.234) page.
Tray Count	Displays the print quantity for each tray.
Supplies Life	Displays the remaining consumables quantity and service life.
Usage Report	Displays the total print results.
Network	You can check the network settings information such as general information, TCP/IP status, maintenance information, etc.
System	Displays the versions, available memory, available flash memory, and system information.

■ Print Information ◎



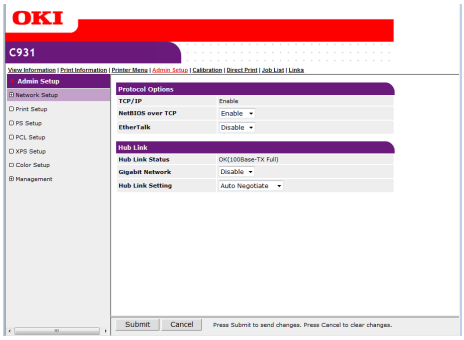
Item	Explanation
Information Print	You can print and check the information set in the printer, such as the networks and want lists, etc.

■ Printer Menu ◎



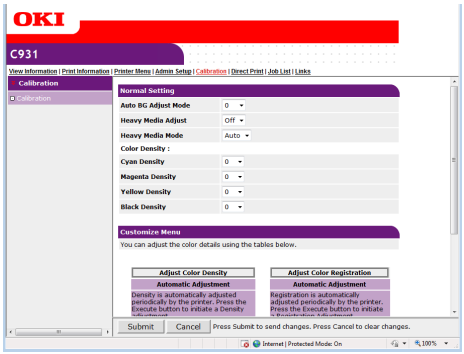
Item	Explanation
General Printer Settings	You can set the printer name, printer management number, and installation location, etc.
Tray Configuration	You can set paper information such as the paper size per tray and automatic tray switching, etc.
System Adjust	You can set printer operations per status, such as power save ON time, alarm cancellations, timeout printing, etc.
Print Adjust	You can set the print position compensation and print quality, etc.

■ Admin Setup ◎



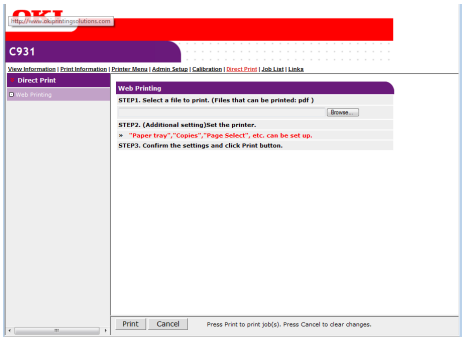
Item	Explanation
Network Setup	You can set the protocols such as TCP/IP and EtherTalk, etc.
Print Setup	You can set print information such as 2-sided printing and toner save, etc.
PS Setup	You can set the PS communications protocol mode.
PCL Setup	You can set PCL information such as PCL fonts and blank page output, etc.
XPS Setup	You can set XPS information such as XPS file unpacking methods, and whether or not to output blank pages, etc.
Color Setup	You can set the color information, such as the CMYK data conversion process using PostScript printing.
Management	You can set printer information such as power settings and job cancel settings, etc.

■ Calibration ◎



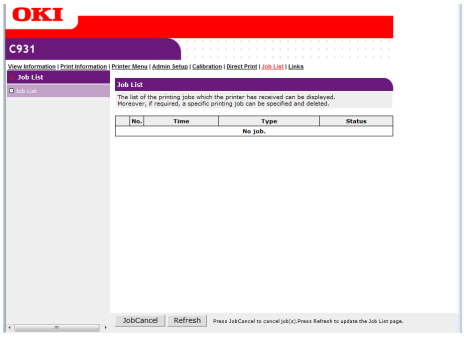
Item	Explanation
Normal Setting	Adjusts the print image quality such as the color densities, etc.
Customize Menu	Implements density compensation and color misalignment compensation.

■ Direct Print



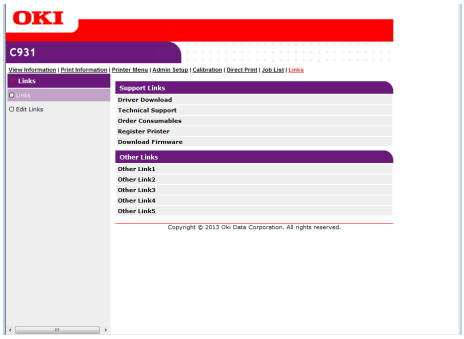
Item	Explanation
Web Printing	You can print by specifying a user-selected PDF file. Reference See "Printing without printer drivers (Direct printing)" (P.261).

■ Job List ◎



Item	Explanation
Job List	Displays a table of the print jobs sent to the printer. It is possible to delete unnecessary jobs.

■ Links

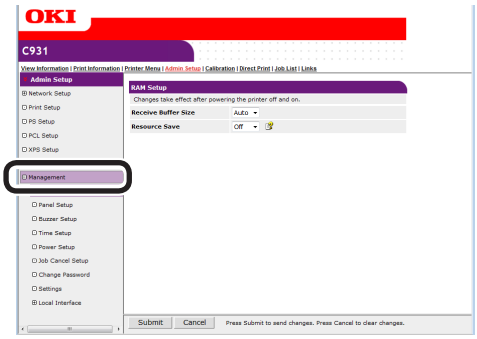


Item	Explanation
Links	Displays the links set by the administrator in addition to links set by the manufacturer.
Edit Links	The administrator can set links they like. You can register 5 support links and 5 other links. Enter URLs including http://.

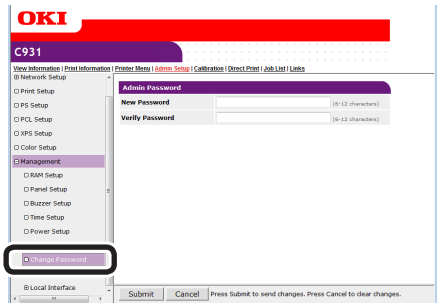
Changing administrator passwords

You can change the password used when logging in as a device administrator.

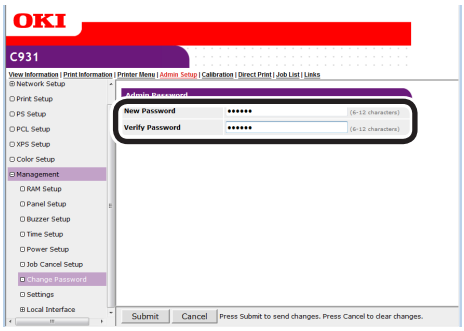
1 Click [Admin Setup]>[Management].



2 Click [Change Password].



3 Enter the new password in [New Password], and then reenter the new password in [Verify Password].



Note

- When entering a password, "●●●●●" will be displayed on screen.
- Enter an alphanumeric password from 6 to 12 characters.
- If entering alphanumerics in the password, correctly enter capital and small letters.

4 Click [Submit].

5 The settings will be saved to the device.

It is not necessary to restart the device. Use the new password when logging in as an administrator the next time.

Note

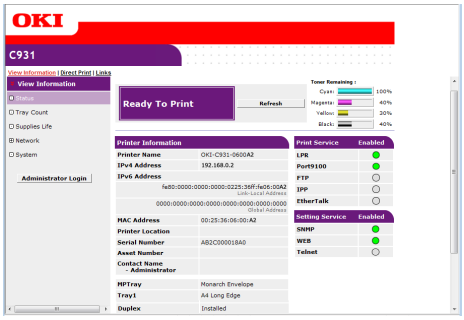
- This password is different from the TELNET password. When the password is changed here, the password when logging onto the administrator setup menu in the control panel will also be changed.

Checking printer status from the PC

You can check the status of the device via the network from the PC.

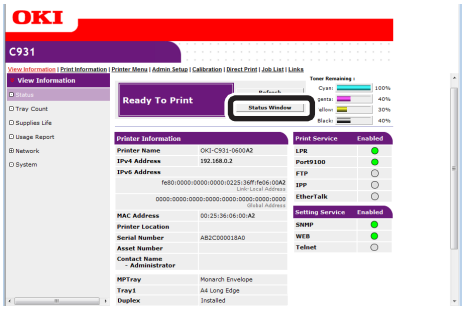
■ Checking using the "Status screen"

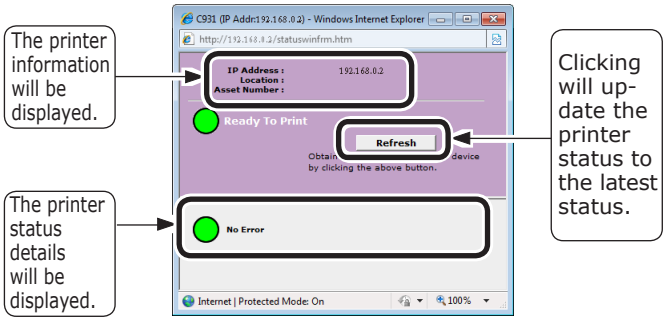
1 Start the web browser, and display the "Status" screen.



■ Checking the "Status Window"

Click [Status Window] to display the following screen.



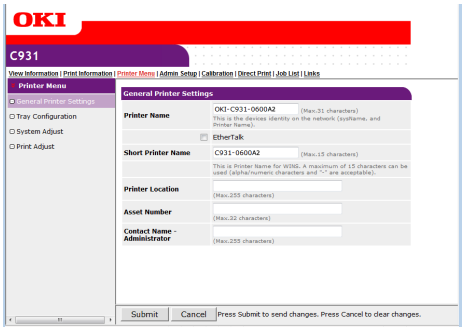


Printer status icon	Advanced
●	No errors/online
●	Minor malfunction (printing is possible)
●	Major malfunction (printing is not possible)
●	Offline

Changing printer settings from the PC

You can change the device setup.

1 Access the device web page, and log in as an administrator.



2 Make the necessary changes,and click [Submit].

Encrypting communications (SSL/TLS)

When setting from web pages, during IPP prints, and when receiving prints using FTP protocols, you can encrypt the communications between the PC (client) and printer.

(Communications are encrypted using SSL/TLS)

■ Setup method

Display the methods for creating certificates on the printer using the web.

There are 2 types of certificates that can be created.

- Personal signature certificate
- Authenticator certificate (creates CSR)

Memo

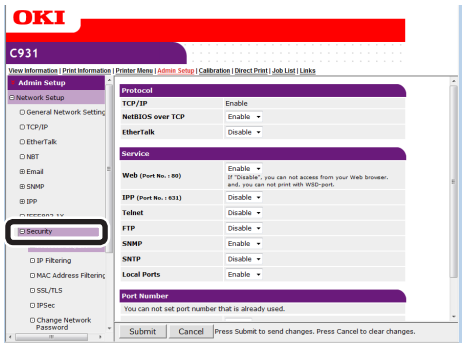
- If the device IP address is changed after the certificate has been created, that certificate will become invalid. Do not change the device IP address after the certificate has been created.

1 Log in as an administrator.

Reference

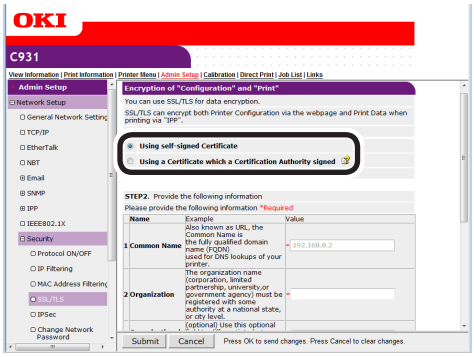
- See "Logging in as an administrator" (P.230).

2 Click [Admin Setup]>[Network Setup]>[Security] tab.



3 Click [SSL/TLS].

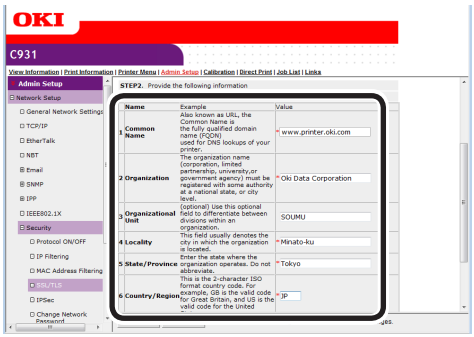
4 Select the type of certificate created in Step 1.



5 Enter the Common Name, Organization, and other items.

Note

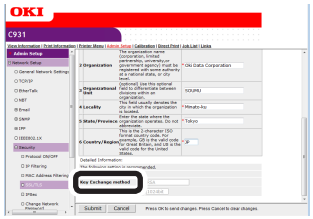
- If "Using a Certificate which a Certification Authority signed" is selected, follow the authenticator procedure for the advanced certificate issuing procedures such as input details, etc.

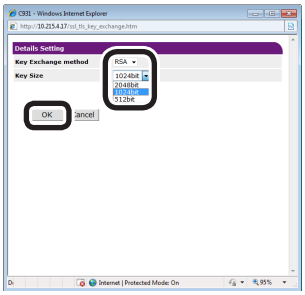


Memo

- If personal certificate is selected, the device IP address will be set in "Common Name".

If changing the key exchange method and key size, click "Key Exchange method". (Initial values are RSA, 1024bits. Normally, use without making any changes.)



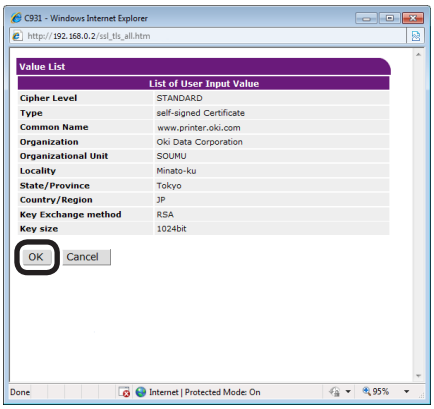


❑ Personal certificates

If creating an authenticator certificate, go to "Authenticator certificates".

6 The input details will be displayed.

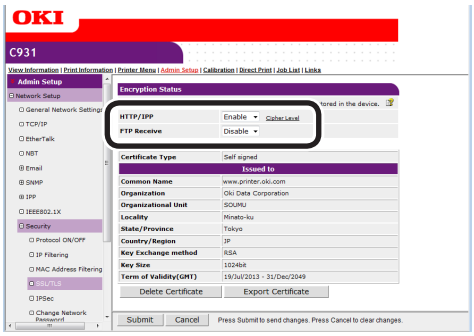
Check the details, and click [OK]. Create the certificate.



This completes the personal signed certificate creation.

The settings will be save in the printer, and the network functions will restart.

7 Follow Steps 1 to 3 to display the encrypted (SSL/TLS) setup screen, and set the protocols to enable the encryption.



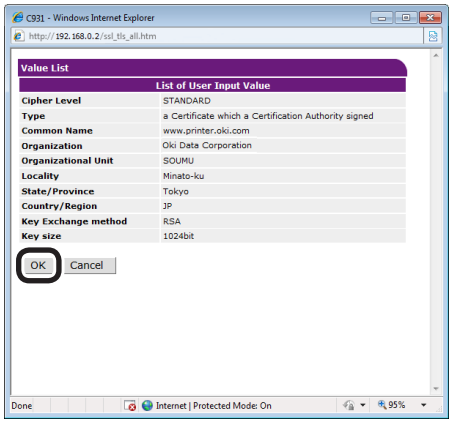
8 Click [Submit].

Go to "Usage methods" (P.237).

❑ Authenticator certificates

6 The input details will be displayed.

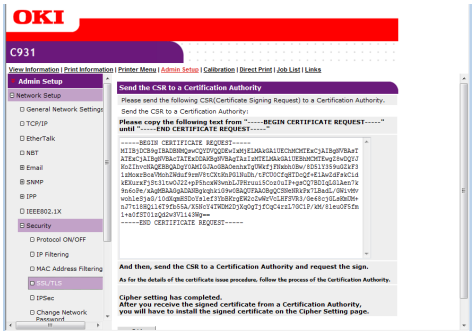
Check the details, and click [OK].



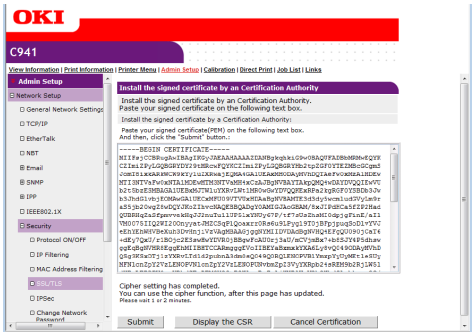
7 Extract and send the CSR to the authenticator. (For authenticator certificates.)

! Note

- Copy from "----- BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST -----" to "----- END CERTIFICATE REQUEST -----" in the text box. CSR send method may be for the authenticator to paste to the web page, send as a file, or attach to an e-mail.



8 Install the certificate issued by the authenticator (using the web). (For authenticator certificates.)



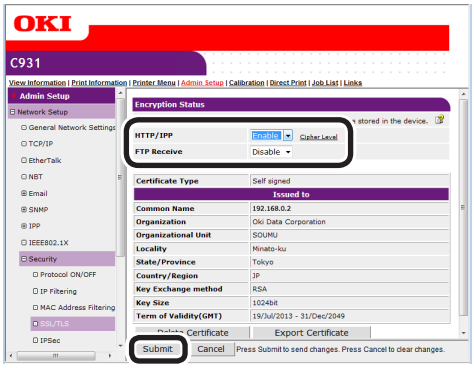
Follow steps 1 to 3 to display the encryption (SSL/TLS) setup screen.

Paste the issued certificate from "----- BEGIN CERTIFICATE -----" to "----- END CERTIFICATE -----" to the text box, and click [Submit].

This completes the authenticator signed certificate creation.

The settings will be save in the printer, and the network functions will restart.

9 Follow Steps 1 to 3 to display the encrypted (SSL/TLS) setup screen, and set the protocols to enable the encryption.



10 Click [Submit].

■ Usage methods

1 Start the web browser, and enter "https://printer IP address" in the adress field to connect.



Printing using IPP

You can print using IPP.

■ Enabling IPP Communications

1 Access the device web page, and log in as an administrator.

2 Select [Admin Setup].

3 Select [Network Setup]>[IPP]>[Setup].

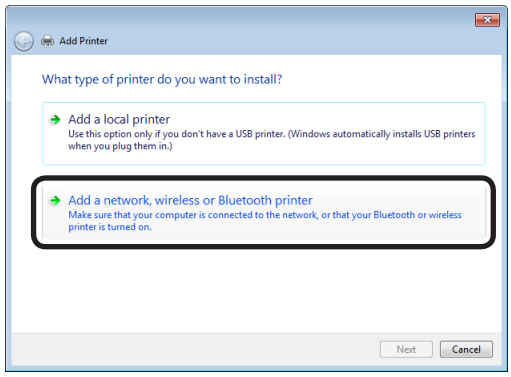
4 Implement advanced setup by following the on-screen instructions.

5 Click [Submit].

■ Setting up the device as an IPP printer (Windows)

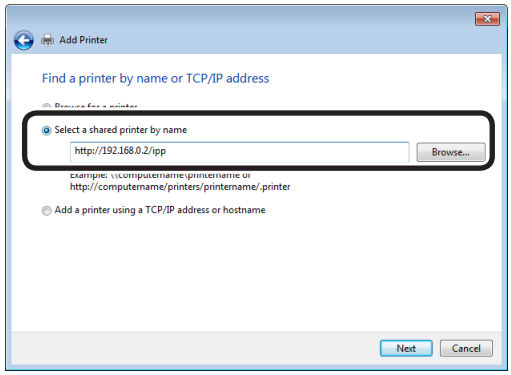
1 Click [Start], and then select [Devices and Printers]>[Add printer].

2 Use the [Add printer] wizard to select [Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer].



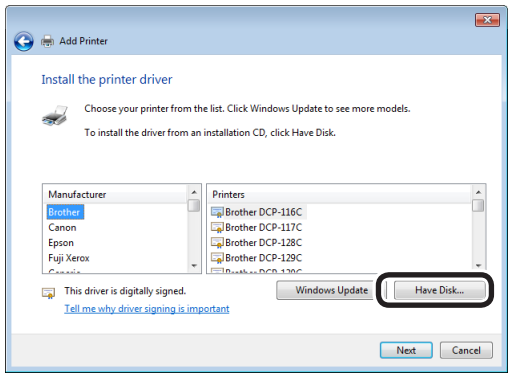
3 Select [The printer that I want isn't listed] from the table of usable printers.

4 Select [Select a shared printer by name].



5 Enter "http://printer IP address/ipp" or "http://printer IP address/ipp/lp", and click [Next].

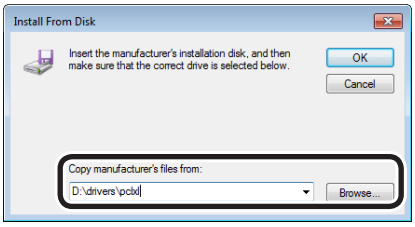
6 Click [Have Disk].



7 Insert the "Software DVD-ROM" into the computer.

8 Enter the following values in [Copy manufacturer's files from], and click [Find].

- PCL drivers:
  "D:\Drivers\PCLXL"
- PS drivers: "D:\Drivers\PS"
- XPS drivers:
  "D:\Drivers\XPS"



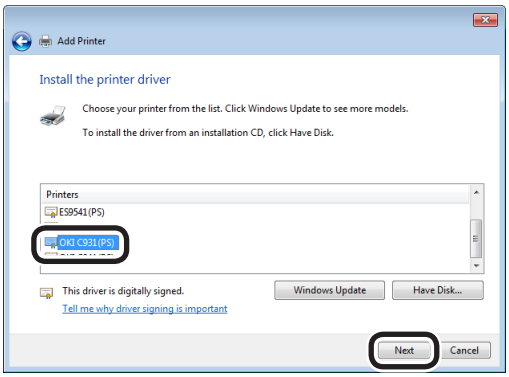
Memo

- The described values are examples where drive D is the DVD-ROM drive.
- Select PS if printing from an application (Adobe Illustrator, etc.) compatible with PostScript. If printing from another application, select any one.

9 Select the INF file, and click [Open].

10 Click [OK].

11 Select the printer name, and click the [Next] button.



12 Click [Next].

13 Click [Finish].

14 When the installation has finished, print a test page.

Encrypting communications (IPSec)

Manipulation prevention and encryption between the PC (client) and printer are possible at the network level.

Memo

- The IKE protocol supported by the device is "IKEv1". The communications mode supported by the device is "Transport mode". "Tunnel mode" is not operational. If IPSec is enabled, printer response may be slow depending on the network communications status.

Note

- IPSec cannot operate with mail sending functions and SNMP Trap functions.

■ Setup flow

Set up the printer before setting the PC.

■ Printer setup

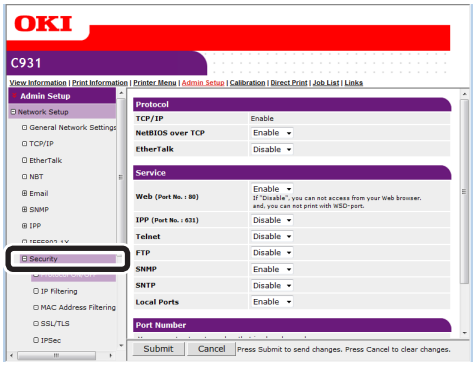
Use the web, and follow the procedure to enable IPSec.

1 Log in as an administrator.

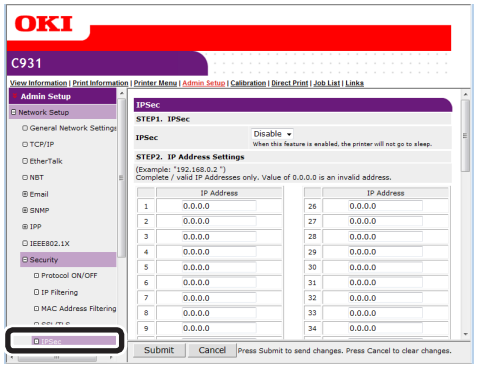
Reference

- See "Logging in as an administrator" (P.230).

2 Click [Admin Setup]>[Network Setup]>[Security] tab.



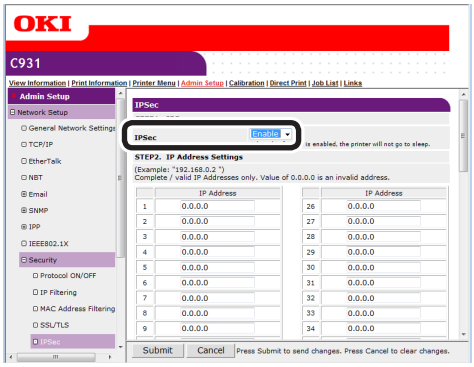
3 Click the [IPSec] tab.



4 Enable [IPSec] in "STEP1".

Note

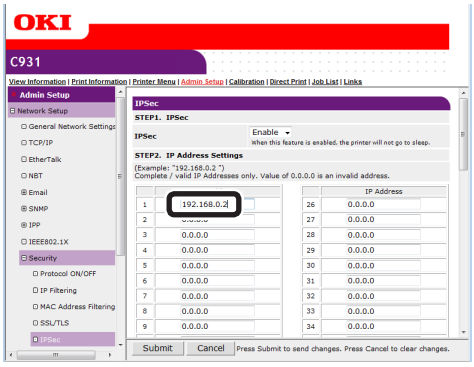
- When IPSec is "Enable", communications from the PC with the IP address set in "STEP2" will be encrypted.
- If IPSec settings fail because the set parameters and PC do not match, etc., opening the web page will be disabled. In this case, either disable [IPSec] in the network settings from the device control panel, or disable IPSec by implementing network initialization.



5 Enter the host IP address in "STEP2".

Note

- Use the IP address to specify the host that authorizes the printing and setup.
- For the IPv4 address, use single-byte numbers separated by "."
- For the IPv6 global address, use single-byte alphanumerics separated by "." Abbreviated notations cannot be used.
- Disabled if the IP address entered is 0.0.0.0.



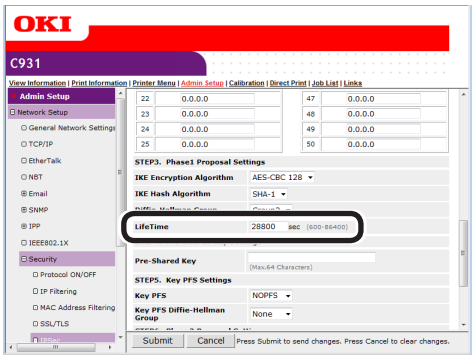
6 Set the phase 1 proposal parameters in "STEP3".

(1) Select from AES-CBC 256, AES-CBC 192, AES-CBC 128, 3DES-CBC, DES-CBC and set in [IKE Encryption Algorithm].

(2) Select from SHA-1 and MD5, and set in [IKE Hash Algorithm].

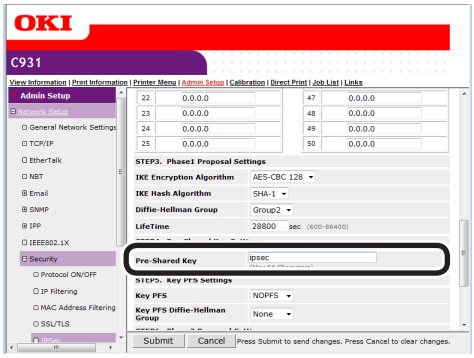
(3) Select from Group 2 and Group 1, and set in the [Diffie-Hellman Group].

(4) Enter the range from 600(s) to 86400(s) in [LifeTime] to set.



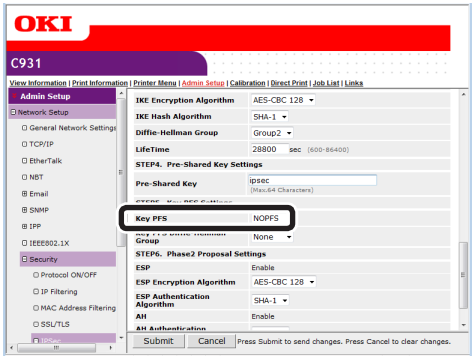
7 Set the advance common key in "STEP4".

Enter in [Pre-Shared Key] using 1 to 64 single-byte alphanumerics to set. This section uses entering "ipsec" in the string as an example.

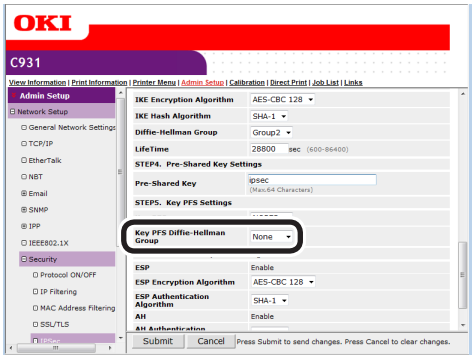


8 Set the Key PFS in "STEP5".

(1) Select from KEYPFS and NOPFS, and set in [Key PFS].



(2) If [Key PFS] is selected, select from Group 2, Group 1,and None, and set in [Key PFS Diffie-Hellman Group].

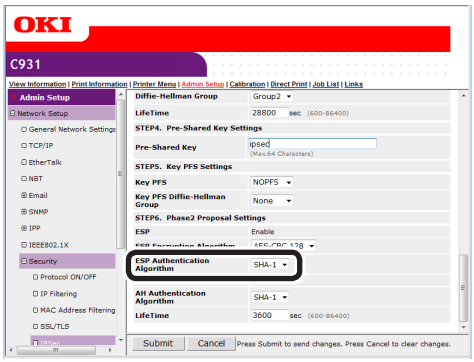


9 Set the Phase 2 proposal in "STEP6".

- Setting [ESP]

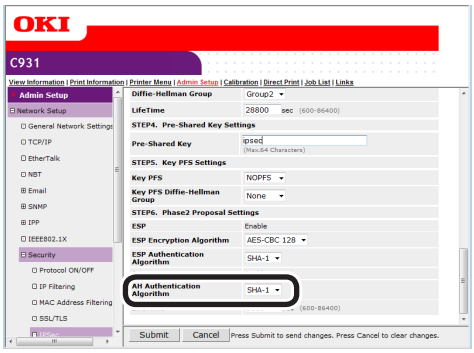
(1) Select from AES-CBC 256, AES-CBC 192, AES-CBC 128, 3DES-CBC, DES-CBC and set in [ESP Encryption Algorithm].

(2) Select from SHA-1, MD5, and OFF, and set in [ESP Authentication Algorithm]. If OFF is selected, the ESP authentication algorithm is not applied.

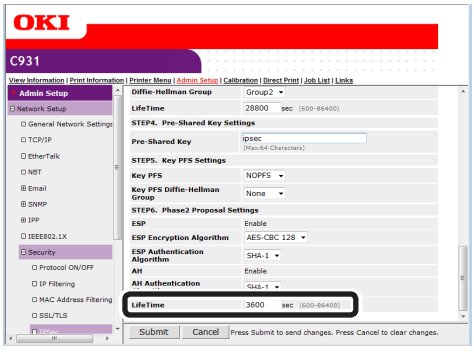


- Setting [AH]

(1) Select from SHA-1 and MD5, and set in [AH Authentication Algorithm].



(2) Enter the range from 600(s) to 86400(s) in [LifeTime] to set.

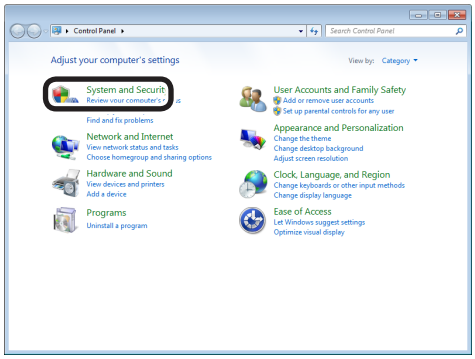


10 Click [Submit].

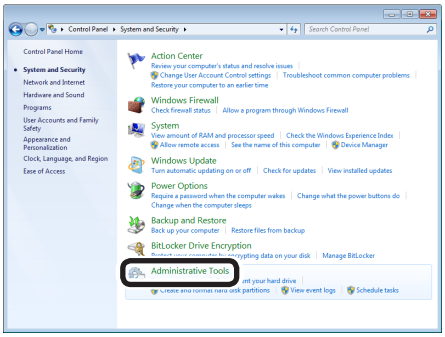
11 The settings will be save in the printer, and the network functions will restart.

■ Computer setup

1 Click [Start], and select [Control Panel]>[System and Security].

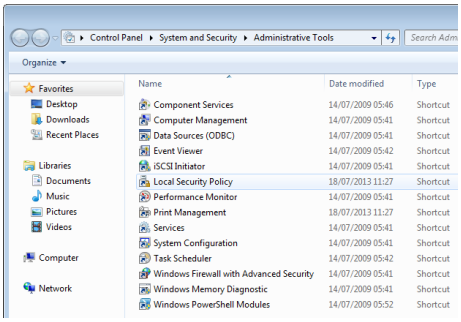


2 Click [Administrative Tools].

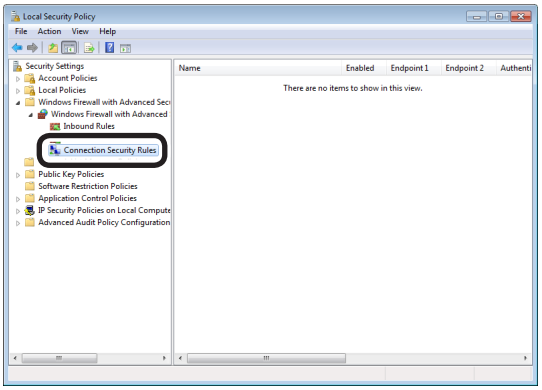


❑ Connection security regulations

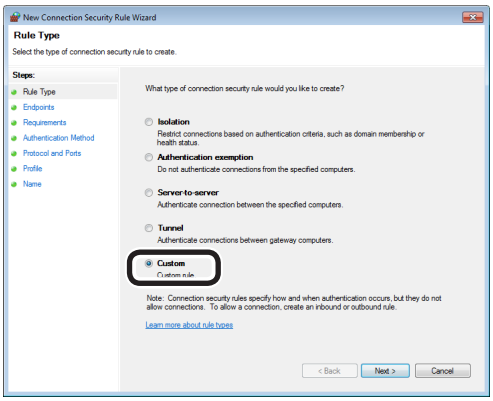
3 Double-click [Local Security Policy].



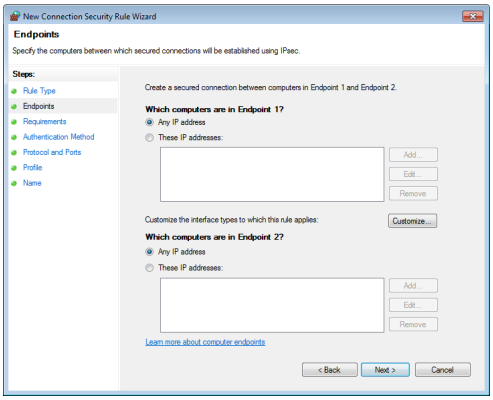
4 Right-click [Windows Firewall with Advanced Security]-[Windows Firewall with Advanced Security-Local Group Policy Object]-[Connection Security Rules], and select [New Rule].



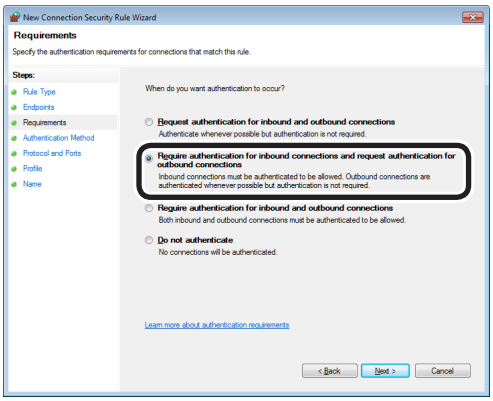
5 Select [Custom], and click [Next].



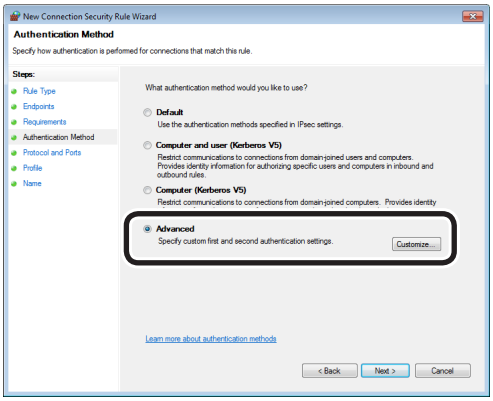
6 Select end points 1 and 2. Specify as necessary, and click [Next].



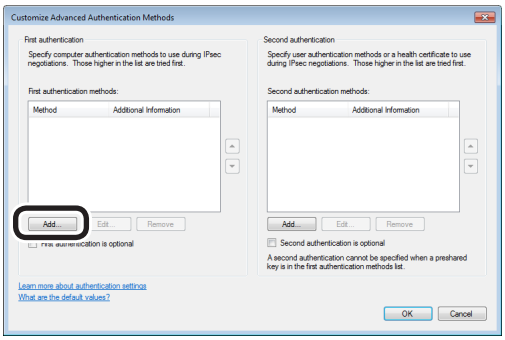
7 Enable the [Require authentication for inbound connections and request authentication for outbound connections] check box, and click [Next].



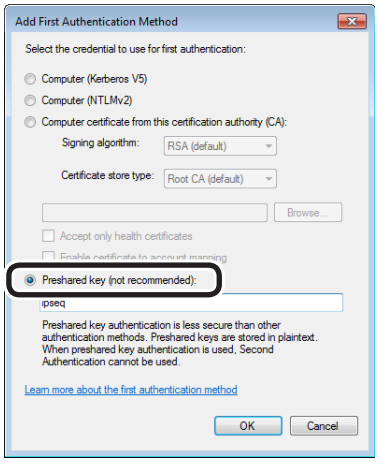
8 Select [Advanced], and click the [Customize] button.



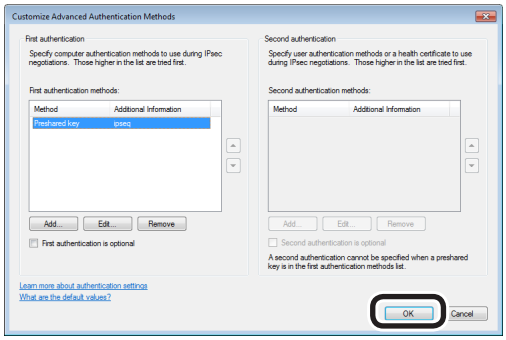
9 Click the [Add] button in [First authentication].



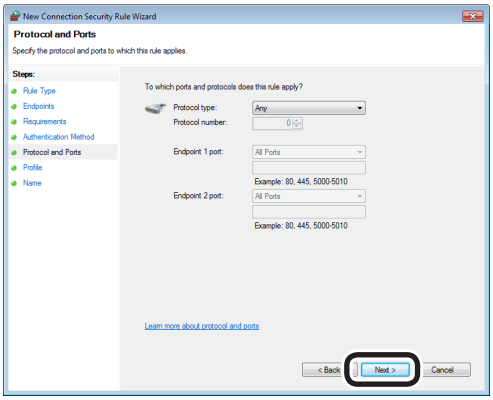
10 Select [Preshared key], and enter the key.



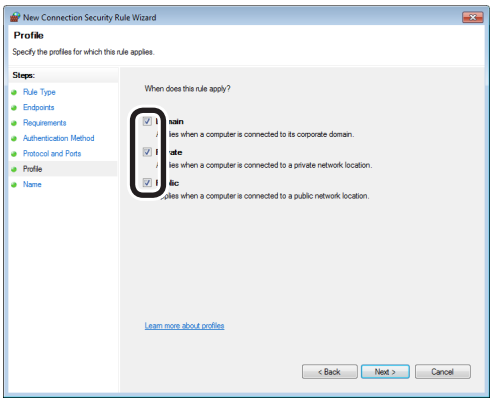
11 Click the [OK] button.



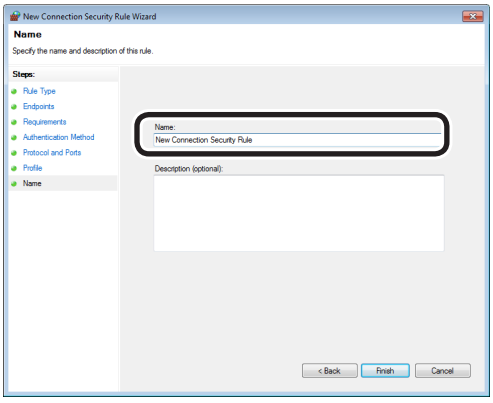
12 Click [Next].



13 Check that all check boxes have been selected, and click [Next].

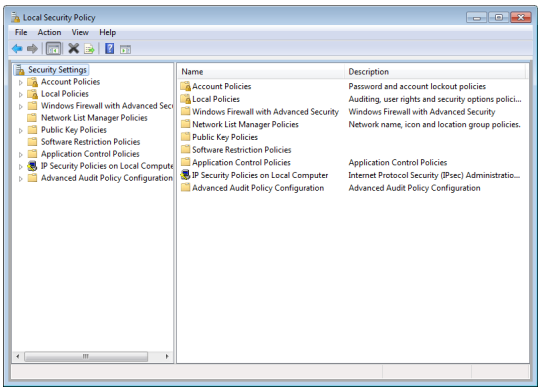


14 Enter a name, and click [Finish].

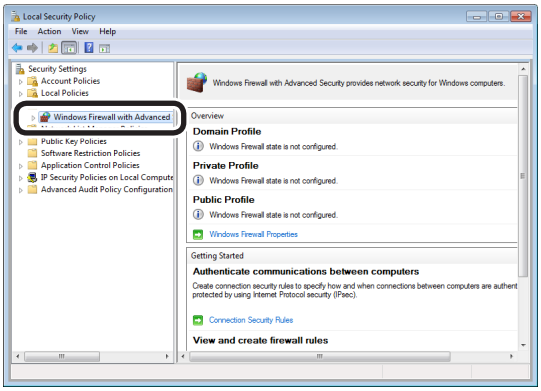


❑ IPSec setup

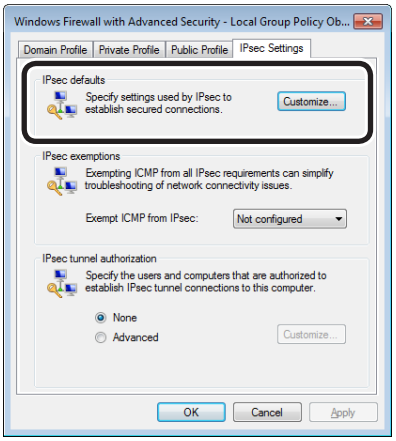
15 Open the local security policy in the management tools.



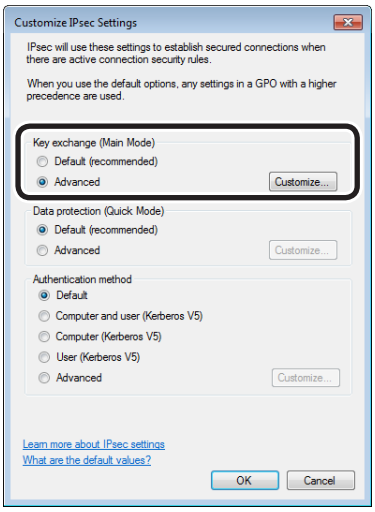
16 Select [Windows Firewall with Advanced Security], right-click, and select [Properties].



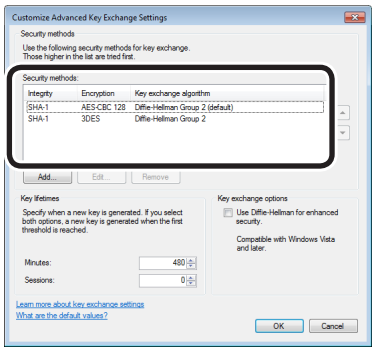
17 Select the [IPSec Settings] tab, and click the [Customize] button in [IPSec defaults].



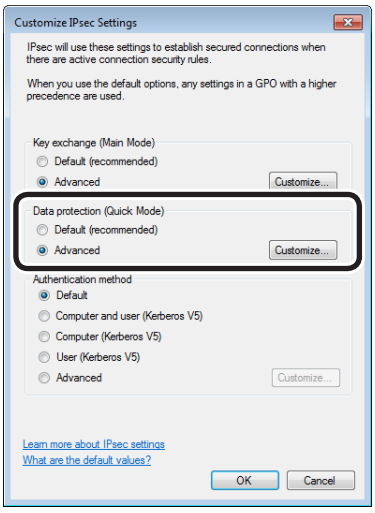
18 Select [Advanced] in [Key exchange (Main Mode)], and click the [Customize] button.



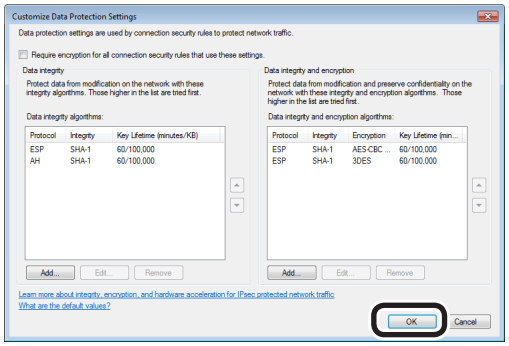
19 Change the [Security methods] to the desired settings, and click [OK].



20 Select [Advanced] in [Data protection (Quick Mode)], and click the [Customize] button.



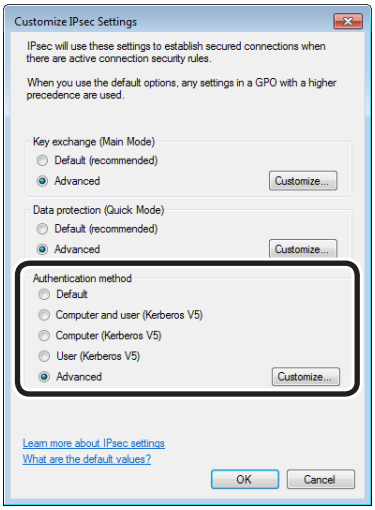
21 Enter the desired value, and click [OK].



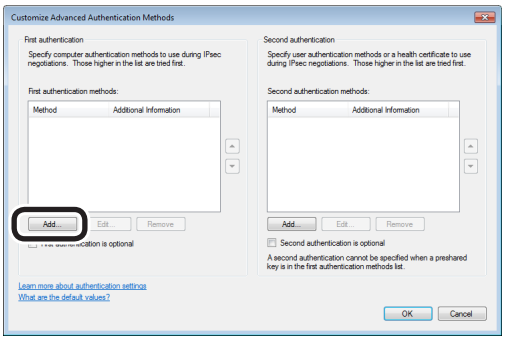
Note

- Only the time is supported as the key enabled time. Set the maximum value to disable the conditions using the session (IPSec communications data size).

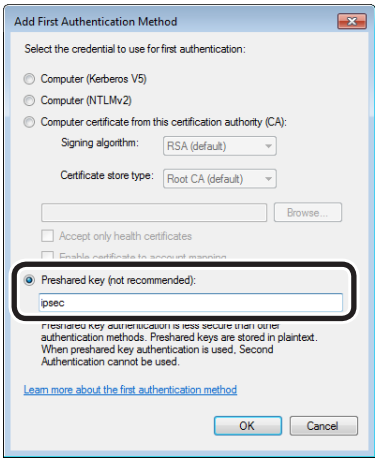
22 Select [Advanced] in [Authentication method], and click [Customize].



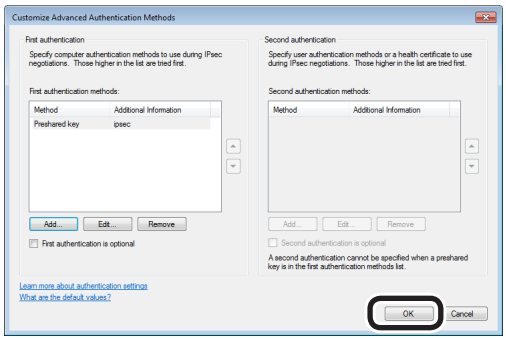
23 Click [Add] in [First authentication].



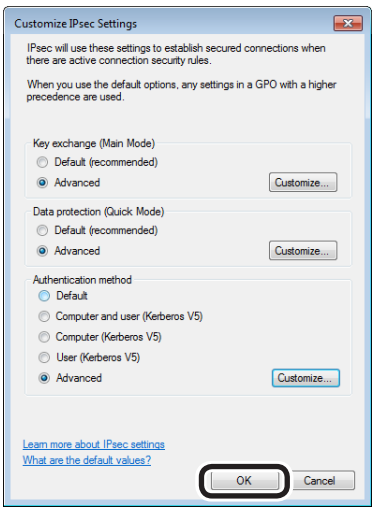
24 Select [Preshared key] and enter the key.



25 Click [OK].



26 Click the [OK] button to finish [Customize IPsec Settings].



27 Click the [OK] button.

Using the access restriction function (IP filter) with IP addresses

You can manage access to the device using the IP address.

Note

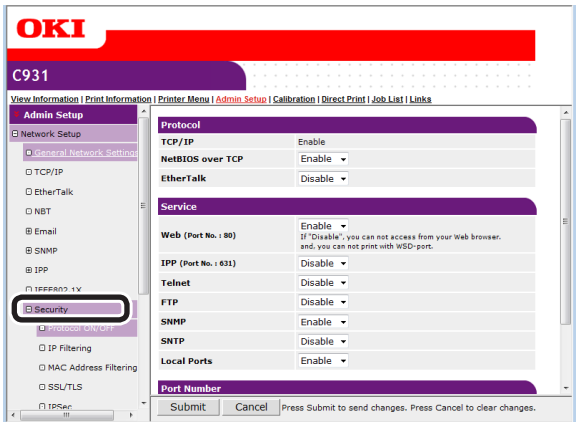
- The default device settings to [Disable] the [IP Filtering].
- If the IP address is entered incorrectly, access to the device using IP protocols will be disabled. Be very careful during setup.

1 Log in as an administrator.

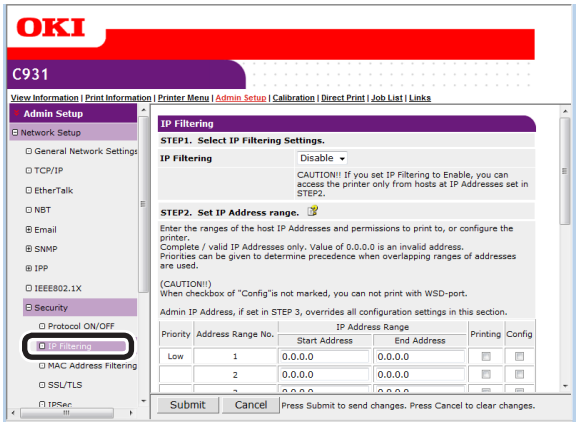
Reference

- See "Logging in as an administrator" (P.230).

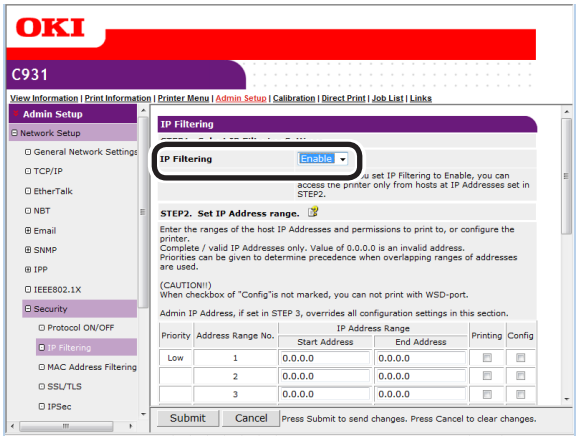
2 Click [Admin Setup]>[Network Setup]>[Security] tab.



3 Click [IP Filtering].



4 [Enable] the [IP Filtering] in [STEP1].



Note

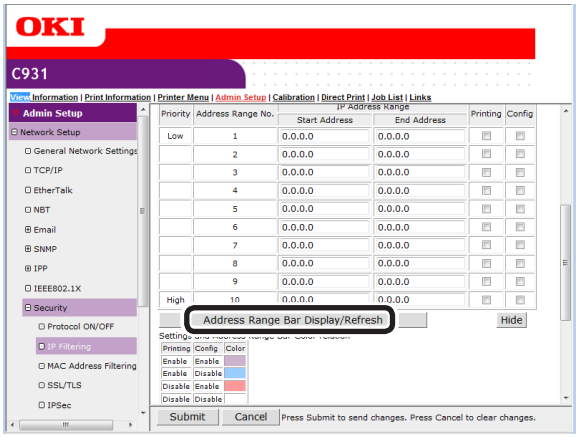
- [Enable] IP filtering to disable all access from IP address hosts outside the range set in [STEP2].

5 Set the IP address range in [STEP2].

Note

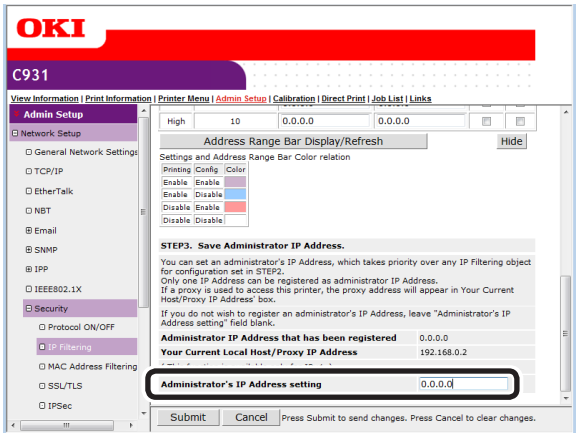
- Use the IP address to enter the range that authorizes the printing and setup.
- For the IP address, use single-byte numbers separated by "."
- Disabled if the IP address entered is 0.0.0.0.
- If IP address ranges overlap, the settings for the address range with the highest [Priority] will be prioritized.
- Regardless of the specifications in Step 2, the administrator addresses that can be printed and set can be set in Step 3.

6 Click the [Address Range Bar Display/Refresh].



To correct the IP address range, reenter the relevant IP address, and click the [Address Range Bar Display/Refresh] again.

7 Set the value in [Administrator's IP Address setting] in [STEP3].

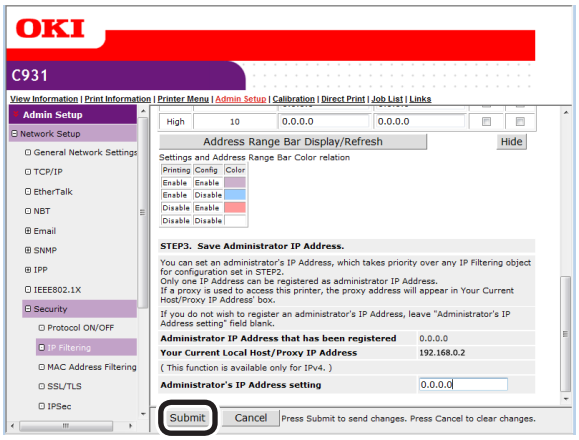


Even if the incorrect settings were made in [Step 2] by entering the administrator IP address in [Administrator's IP Address setting], the administrator can reset from the IP address host set in [Administrator's IP Address setting].

Note

- If accessing the device via a proxy, the address of the proxy device will be displayed as [Your Current Local Host/Proxy IP Address]. Consequently, the "Your host IP address" displayed in your host address may differ.
- If nothing is registered as the administrator IP address, access to the device may be completely disabled depending on the settings in Step 2.
- If you do not wish to register an administrator IP address, leave the [Administrator's IP Address setting] field blank.

8 Click [Submit].



9 The settings will be save in the printer, and the network functions will restart.

Using the access restriction function with MAC addresses

You can manage access to the device using the MAC address.

Note

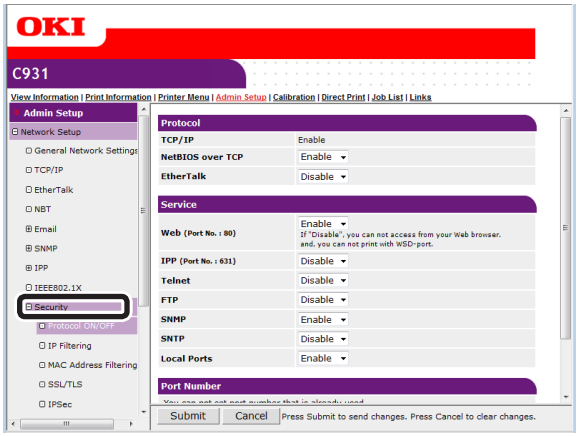
- If the MAC address is entered incorrectly, access to the device using a network will be disabled. Be very careful during setup.

1 Log in as an administrator.

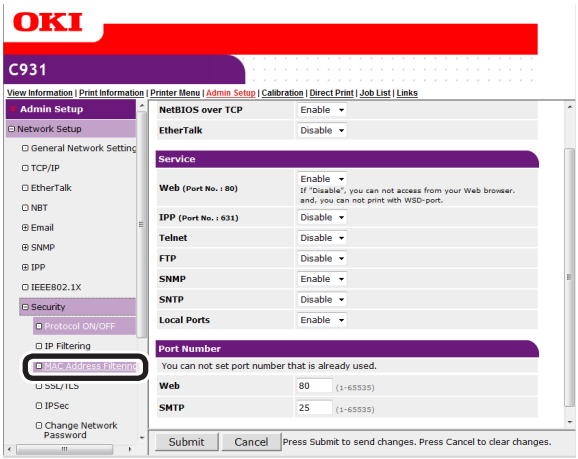
Reference

- See "Logging in as an administrator" (P.230).

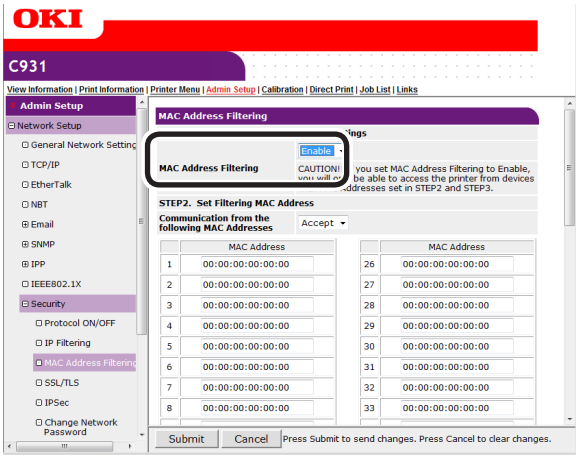
2 Click [Admin Setup]>[Network Setup]>[Security].



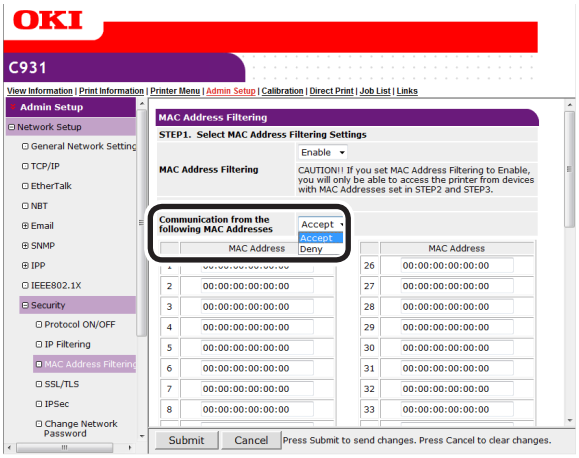
3 Click [MAC Address Filtering].



4 [Enable] the [MAC Address Filtering] in [STEP1].



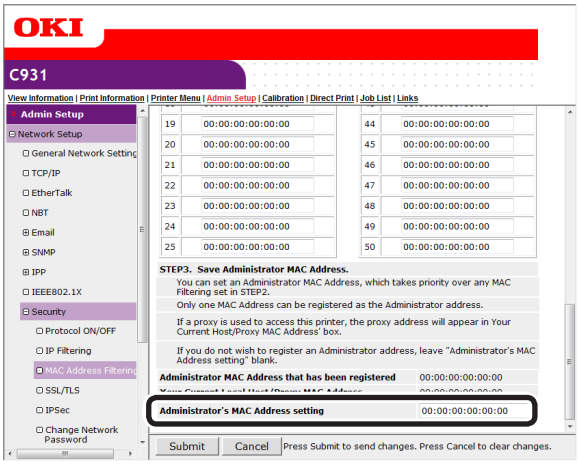
5 Select whether to [Accept (Deny)] communications from a specific MAC address in [STEP2].



Note

- Use the MAC address to enter the host MAC address that authorizes (or denies) the communications.
- For the MAC address, use single-byte numbers separated by ":".
- Regardless of the specifications in Step 2, the administrator addresses that can communicate can be set in Step 3.

6 Set the value in [Administrator's MAC Address setting] in [STEP3].

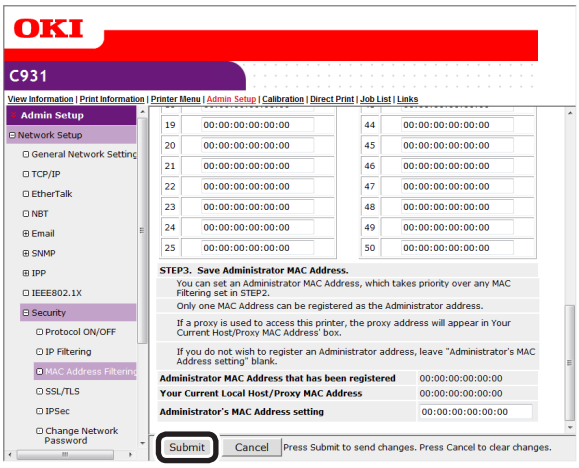


Even if the incorrect settings were made in [STEP2] by entering the administrator MAC address in [Administrator's MAC Address setting], the administrator can reset from the MAC address host set in [Administrator's MAC Address setting].

Note

- If accessing the device via a proxy, the address of the proxy device will be displayed as [Your host MAC address]. Consequently, the [Your host MAC address] displayed in your host address may differ.
- If nothing is registered as the administrator MAC address, access to the device may be completely disabled depending on the settings in Step 2.
- If you do not wish to register an administrator MAC address, enter "00:00:00:00:00:00" in the [Administrator's MAC Address setting].

7 Click [Submit].



8 The settings will be save in the printer, and the network functions will restart.

Notifying errors using e-mail

The device is equipped with a mail send function (SMTP). You can send an e-mail if an error occurs in the printer. You can select to send periodically whether or not an error has occurred, and set to send mails when an error occurs.

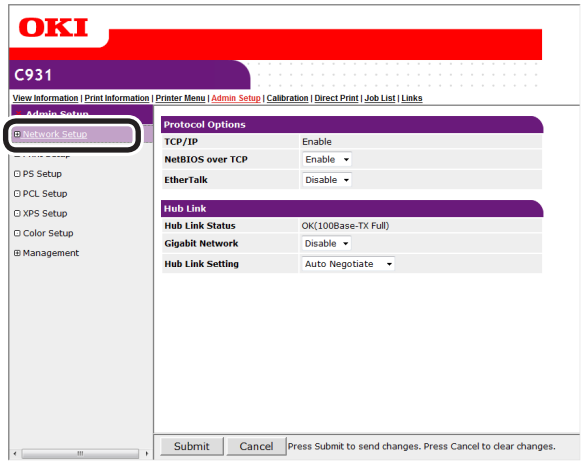
■ Setting e-mail sending

1 Log in as an administrator.

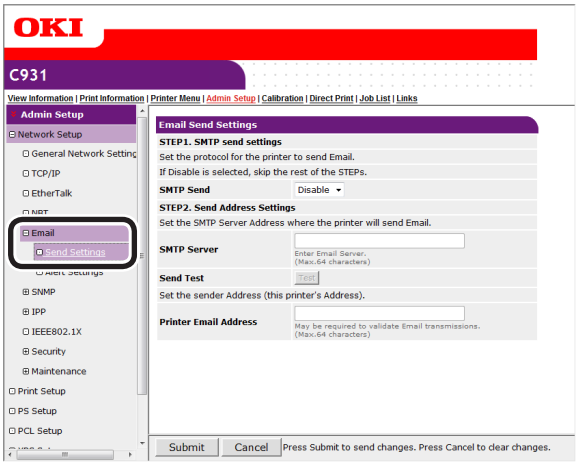
Reference

● See "Logging in as an administrator" (P.230).

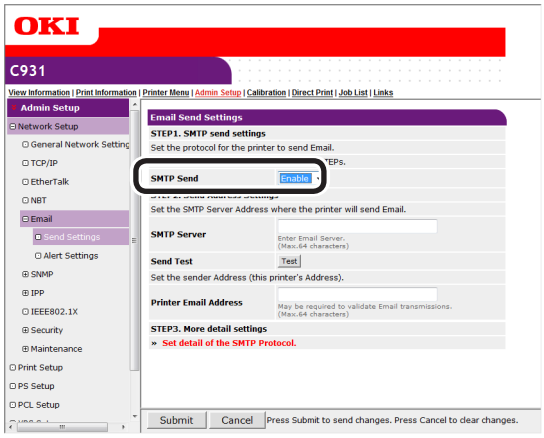
2 Click [Admin Setup]>[Network Setup].



3 Click [Email]>[Send Settings].



4 Enable [SMTP Send] in [STEP1].



5 Set the address required to send in [STEP2].

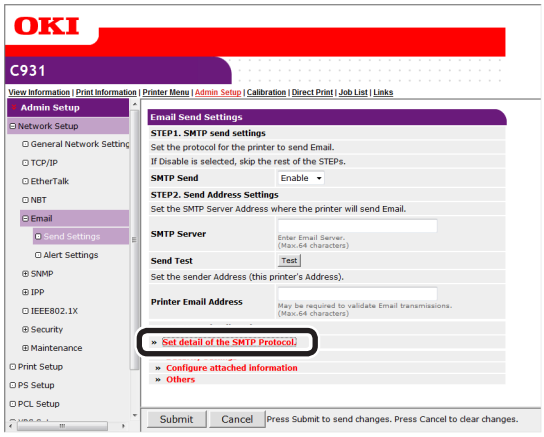
(1) Set the mail server domain name or IP address in [SMTP Server].

(2) Set the mail address allocated to the printer in [Printer Email Address].

Note

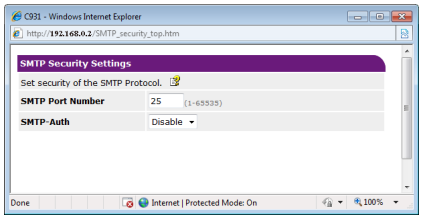
- If setting the [SMTP Server] in the domain name, it is necessary to set the DNS server in the [TCP/IP] settings.
- It is necessary to authorize sending mail from the device in the mail server. Consult your network administrator for the mail server settings.
- If using Internet Explorer using the default settings, send tests are disabled.
  To implement send tests, it is necessary to change the Internet Explorer 7 settings.
  Enable [Tools]>[Customize security level]> [Authorize input requests for information using scripted Windows in web sites].

6 To make more advanced settings subsequently, click [Set detail of the SMTP Protocol] in [STEP3].



For all other presses, go to Step 16.

7 Select [Security Settings].



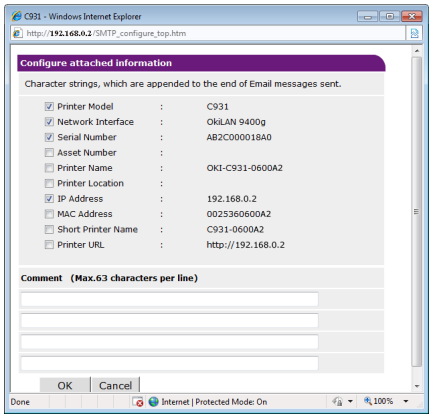
8 Set the mail server port number in [SMTP Port Number].

9 [Enable] the [SMTP-Auth].

(1) Set the user ID to connect to the mail server in [User ID].

(2) Set the password to connect to the mail server in [Password].

10 Click [Configure attached information].

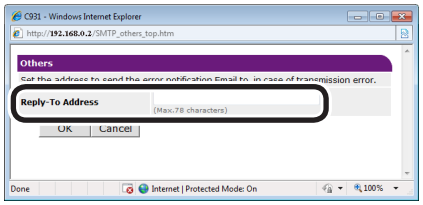


11 Select or enter the information to be added to the end of the e-mail message to be sent.

12 Click [OK].

13 Click [Others].

14 Set the return mail address for the mail sent from the printer in [Reply-To Address]. Normally, set the mail address of the printer administrator.



15 Click [OK].

16 Click [Submit].

17 The settings will be save in the printer, and the network functions will restart.

Memo

- The authentication method is selected automatically from the authentication methods supported by the mail server.

Notifying errors periodically using e-mail

■ Notifying malfunctions periodically

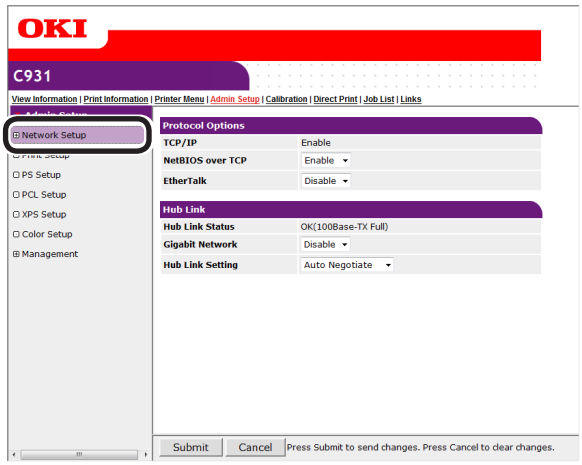
If using periodic notifications, disable sleep mode.

1 Log in as an administrator.

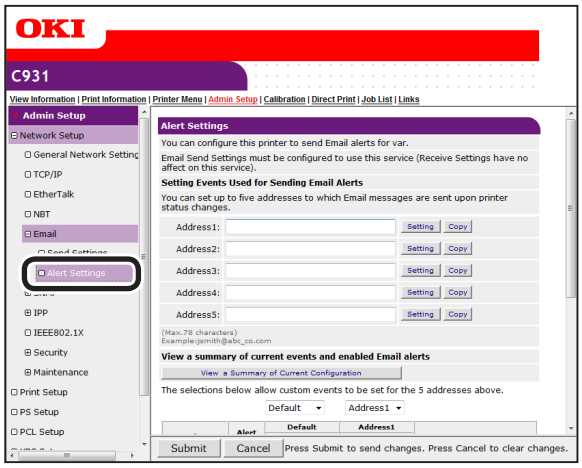
Reference

- See "Logging in as an administrator" (P.230).

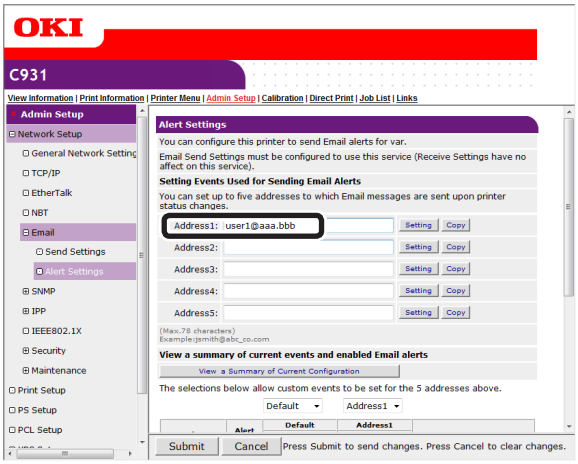
2 Click [Admin Setup]>[Network Setup].



3 Click [Email]>[Alert Settings].



4 Enter the mail address of the malfunction notice recipient.

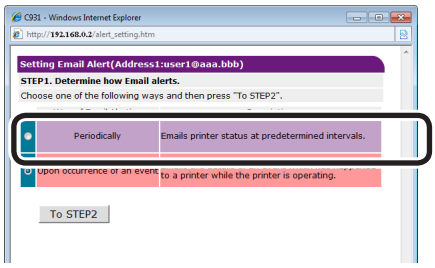


5 Click the [Setting] button for the e-mail address that has been set.

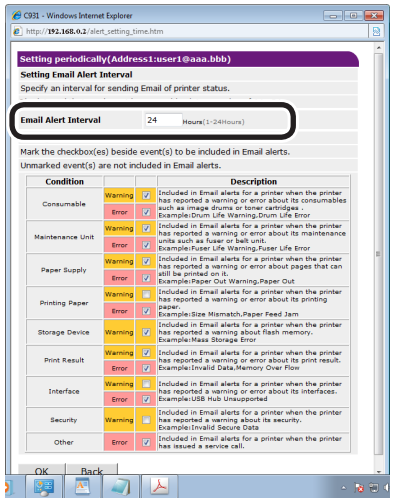
Memo

- Click the [Copy] button to copy the malfunction notice information settings to another address. It is convenient to set the same malfunction notification conditions in multiple addresses.

6 Enable the [Periodically] check box, and click [To STEP2].



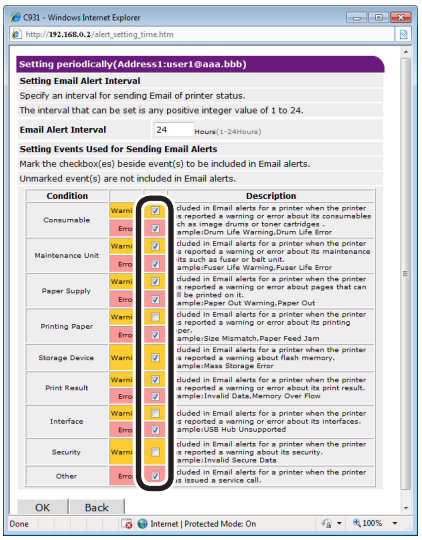
7 Set the interval for sending mail in [Email Alert Interval].



Memo

- If no errors for notification occur within the period, no mail will be sent.

8 Enable each error to be notified in [Setting Events Used for Sending Email Alerts].



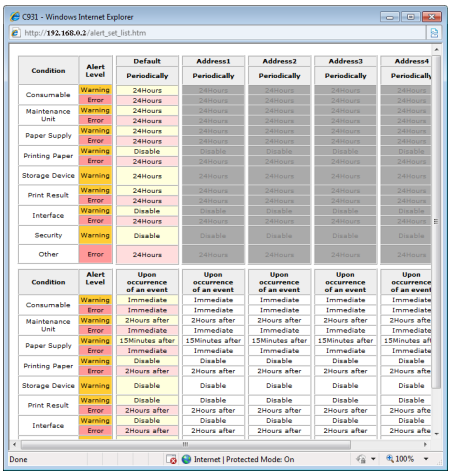
9 Click [OK].

10 Check the set details of the malfunction notifications conditions.

- Displaying tables

(1) Click the [Show current settings table] button.

(2) Check the set details, and close the window.



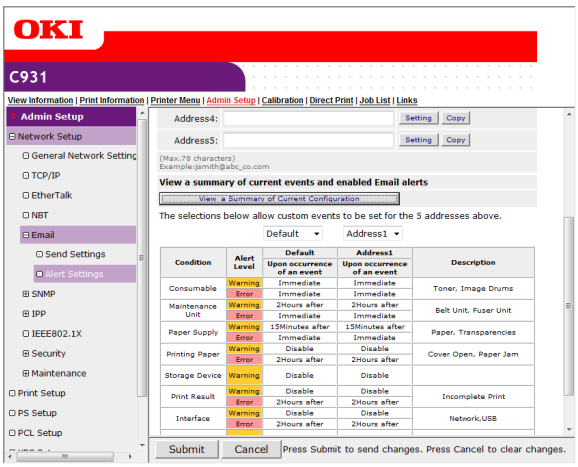
- Comparing the set conditions for 2 addresses

(1) Use the list box to select each address to be compared.

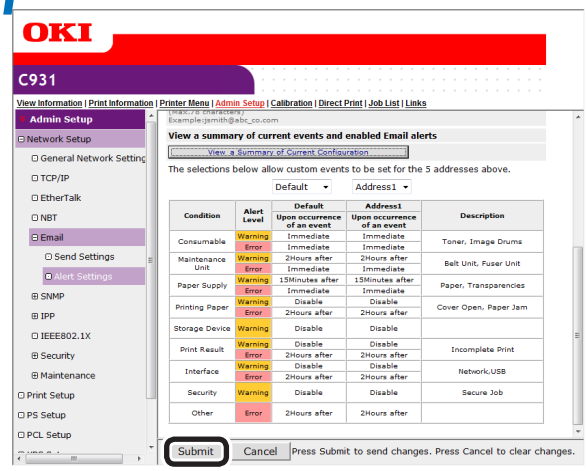
(2) Check the settings details that are displayed.

Memo

- You can change the notification condition settings by clicking the set conditions comparison details.



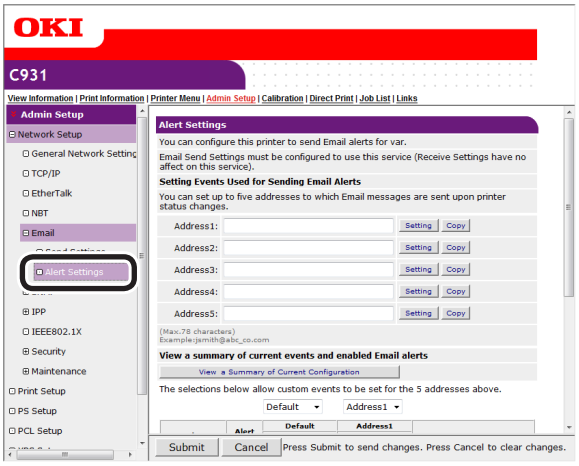
11 Click [Submit].



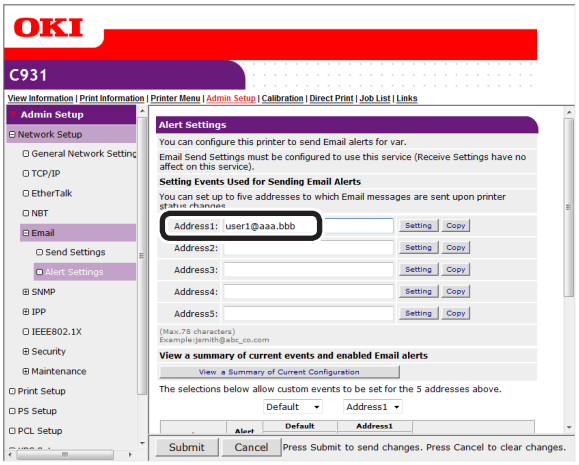
12 The settings will be save in the printer, and the network functions will restart.

■ Notifying the occurrence of malfunctions

1 Click [Email]>[Alert Settings].



2 Enter the mail address of the malfunction notice recipient.

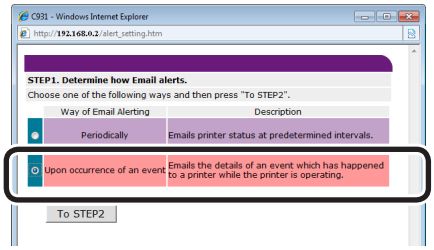


3 Click the [Setting] button for the e-mail address that has been set.

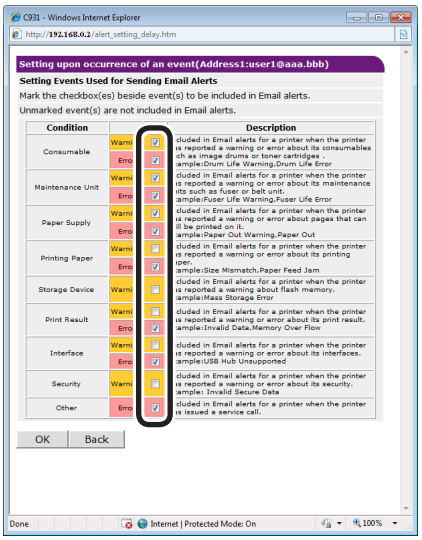
Memo

- Click the [Copy] button to copy the malfunction notice information settings to another address. It is convenient to set the same malfunction notification conditions in multiple addresses.

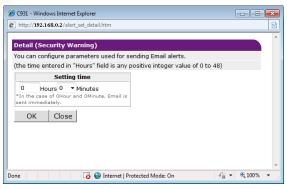
4 Enable the [Upon occurrence of an event] check box, and click [To STEP2].



5 Enable each error to be notified in [Setting Events Used for Sending Email Alerts].



6 Set the mail delay time from error occurrence to sending.



Memo

- You can notify only those errors who continue to occur over a long time using the delay time settings.
- Set the delay time to "0 Hours 0 Minutes" to send an e-mail the instant an error occurs.

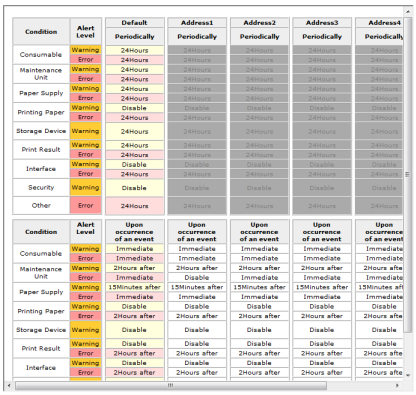
7 Click [OK].

8 Check the set details of the malfunction notifications conditions.

- Displaying tables

(1) Click the [Show current settings table] button.

(2) Check the set details, and close the window.



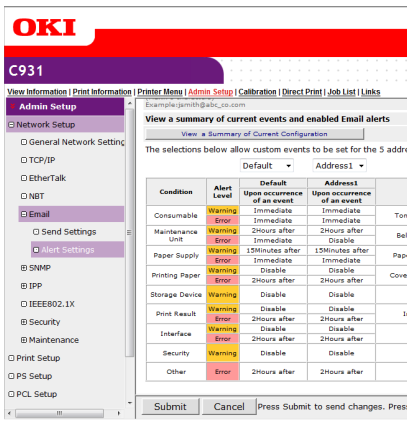
- Comparing the set conditions for 2 addresses

(1) Use the list box to select each address to be compared.

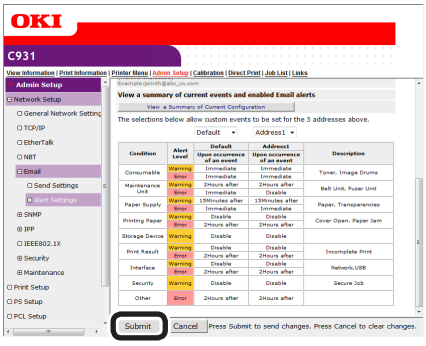
(2) Check the settings details that are displayed.

Memo

- You can change the notification condition settings by clicking the set conditions comparison details.



9 Click [Submit].



10 The settings will be save in the printer, and the network functions will restart.

Using SNMPv3

The device is equipped with a SNMPv3-compatible agent.

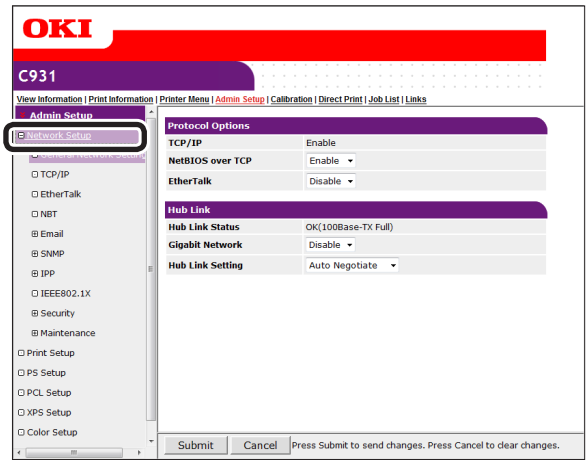
You can safely encrypt the device management using SNMP if using the SNMPv3-compatible SNMP manager.

1 Log in as an administrator.

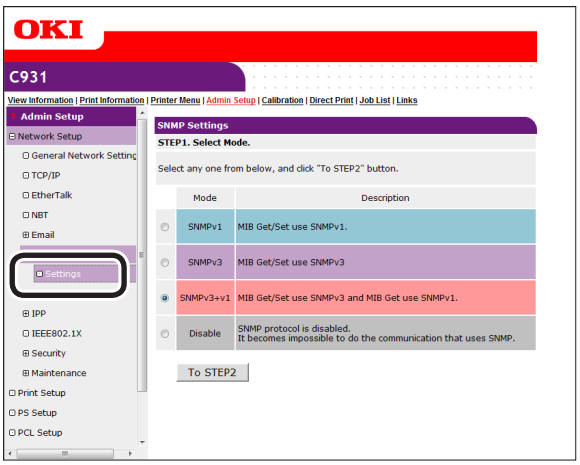
Reference

- See "Logging in as an administrator" (P.230).

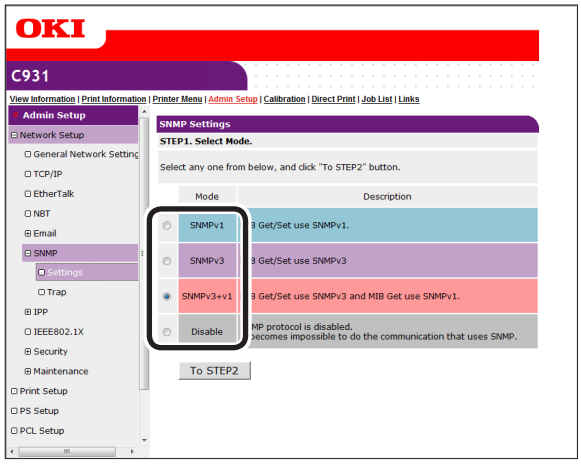
2 Click [Admin Setup]>[Network Setup] tab.



3 Click [SNMP]>[Settings].



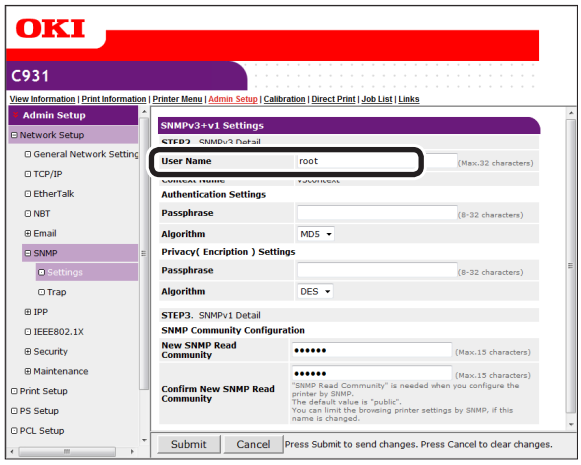
4 Enable the SNMP version to be used check box in [STEP1], and click [To STEP2].



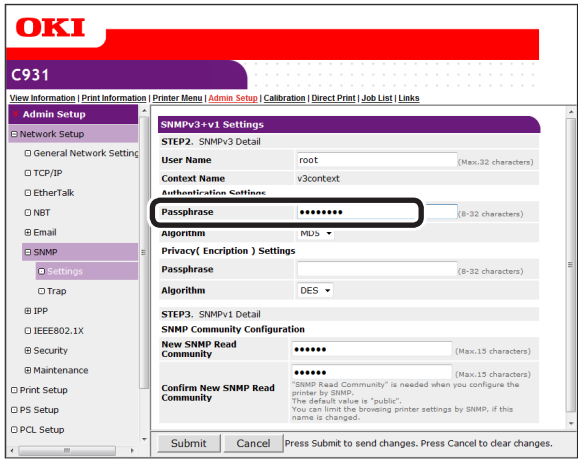
Memo

- If [SNMPv3] is selected, referencing and setups using SNMPv1 will be disabled. If [SNMPv3+v1] is selected, both SNMPv1 and SNMPv3 can be used for referencing, but only NMPv3 can be set.

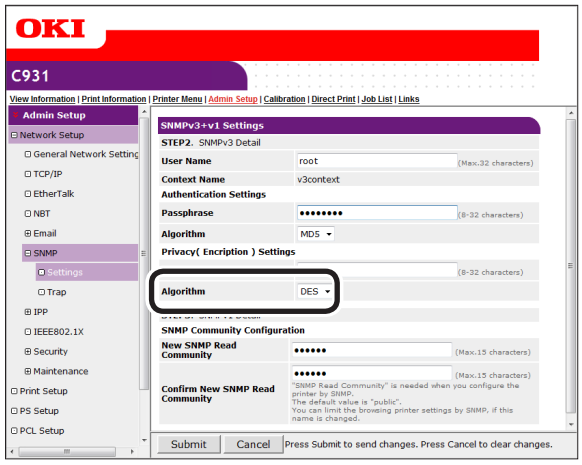
5 Enter the SNMPv3 user name in [User Name] in [STEP2].



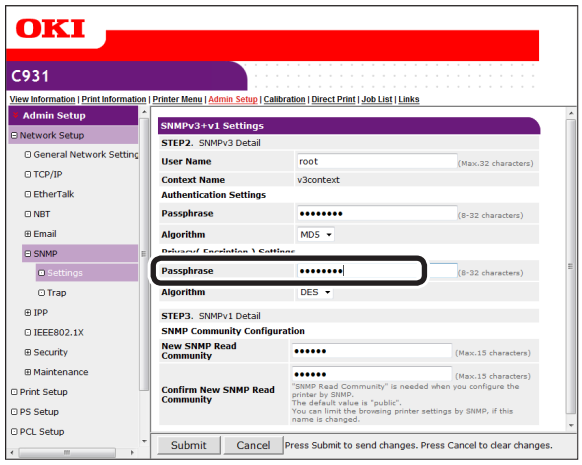
6 Enter the authentication password in [Passphrase] in [Authentication Settings].



7 Select [Algorithm].



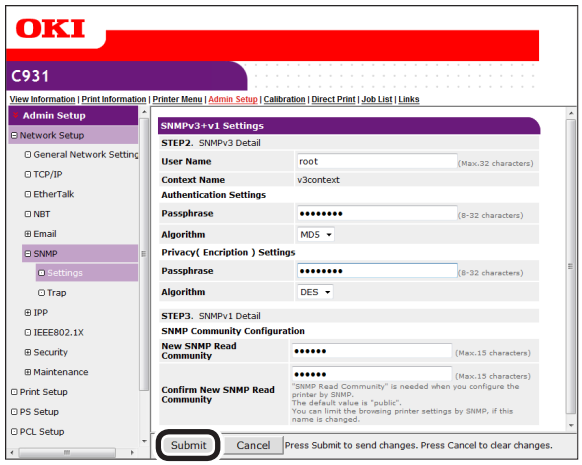
8 Enter the encryption pass phrase in [Passphrase] in [Privacy (Encription) Settings].



Memo

- Only [DES] can be selected as the encryption algorithm.

9 Click [Submit].



10 The settings will be save in the printer, and the network functions will restart.

Memo

- Set the context name for the SNMP manager to be used in "v3context".

Using IEEE802.1X

Compatible with authentication functions using IEEE802.1X.

■ IEEE802.1X setup flow

To set IEEE802.1X in the device, first connect the device and PC for setup via a regular hub. After completing the IEEE802.1X setup, connect the device to the authentication switch.

1. Connect the printer and PC.
2. Set the IP address for setup in the PC.
3. Set the IP address for setup in the printer.

   For how to connect the printer and PC, and set the printer and (Windows) PC IP addresses, see "Basic".
4. Set IEEE802.1X in the printer.
5. Connect the printer to the authentication switch.

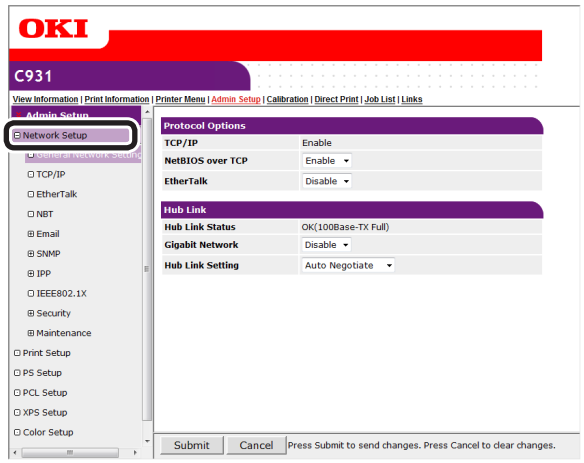
■ Setting IEEE802.1X

1. Log in as an administrator.

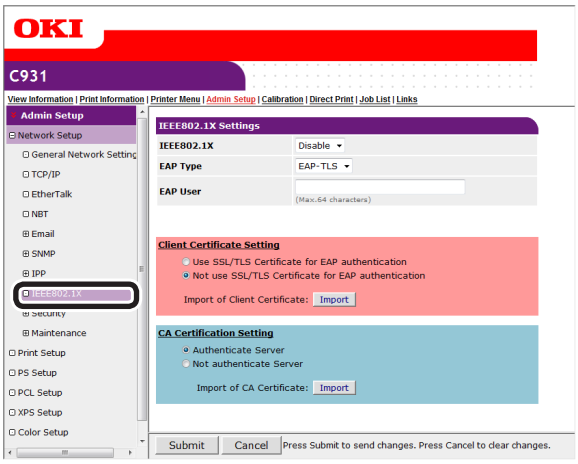
Reference

- See "Logging in as an administrator" (P.230).

2. Click [Admin Setup]>[Network Setup] tab.



3. Click [IEEE802.1X].



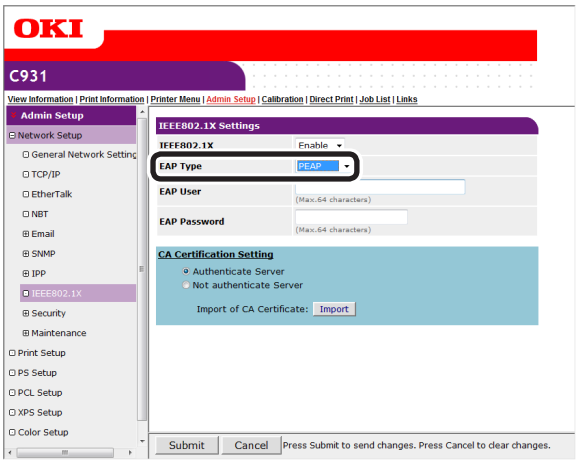
Reference

- If using PEAP, go to "■ Using PEAP". If using EAP-TLS, go to "■ Using EAP-TLS".

■ Using PEAP

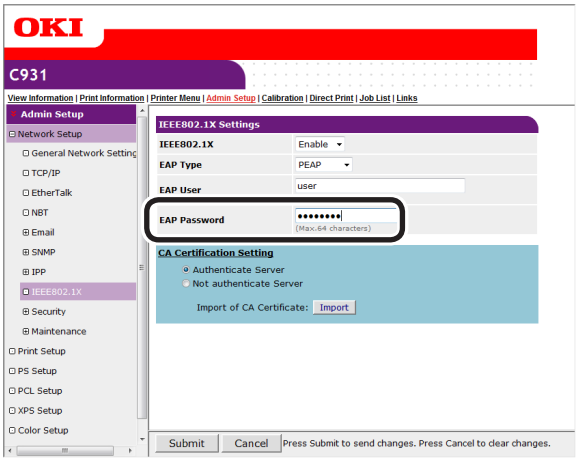
4 Select [Enable] in [IEEE802.1X].

5 Select [PEAP] in [EAP Type].



6 Enter the user name in [EAP User].

7 Enter the password in [EAP Password].

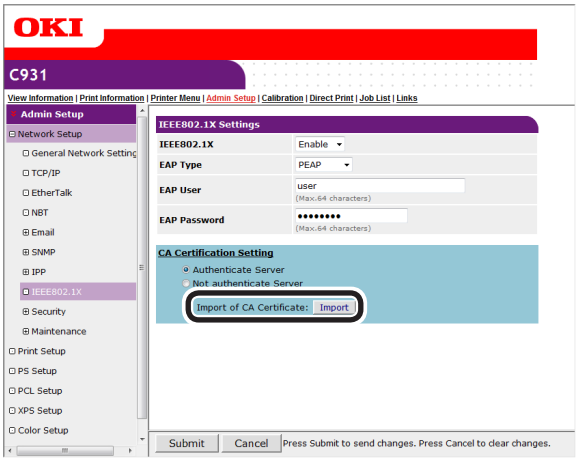


8 Enable [Authenticate Server].

9 Click [Import of CA Certificate].

Memo

- If [Not authenticate Server] is enabled, it is not necessary to import the CA certificate.
  If [Not authenticate Server] is enabled, disable whether or not to connect to the correct authentication server.

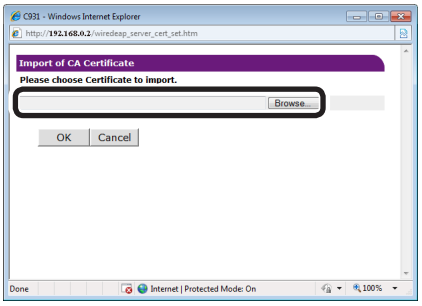


The "Import of CA Certificate" screen will be displayed.

10 Enter the CA certificate file name, and click [OK].

Memo

- The imported CA certificate is the authenticator certificate issued by the RADIUS server certificate.
- Importable file formats are PEM, DER, and PKCS#7 formats.



The CA certificate will be imported to the printer.

11 Click [Submit].

12 The settings will be save in the device, and the network functions will restart.

If the standby screen is displayed in the control panel, turn OFF the device power supply.

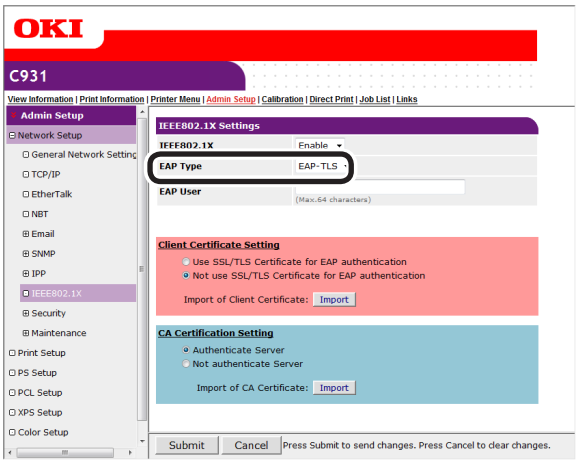
Reference

- For how to turn OFF the power supply, see "Basic".
- Go to "Connecting the device to the authentication switch" (P.259).

■ Using EAP-TLS

4 Select [Enable] in [IEEE802.1X].

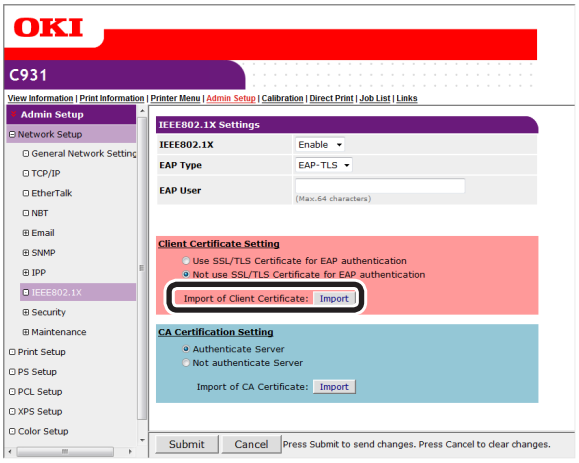
5 Select [EAP-TLS] in [EAP Type].



6 Enter the user name in [EAP User].

7 Enable the [Not use SSL/TLS Certificate for EAP authentication] check box.

8 Click [Import of Client Certificate].



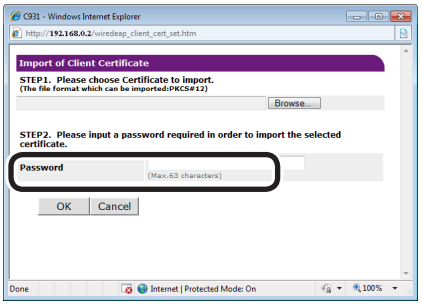
The "Import of Client Certificate" screen will be displayed.

9 Enter the client certificate file name.

Memo

- The importable certificate file format is PKCS#12.

10 Enter the client certificate password, and click [OK].



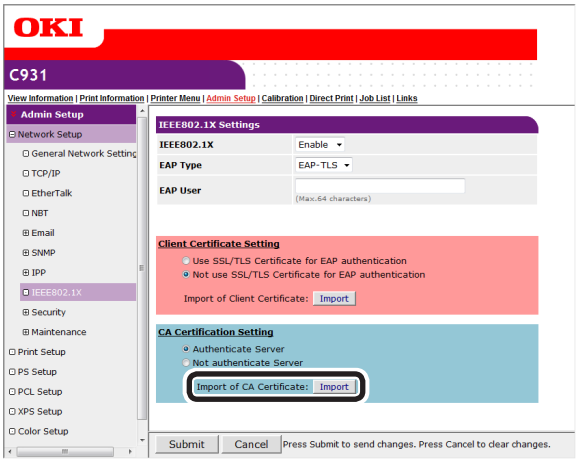
The client certificate will be imported to the printer.

11 Enable [Authenticate Server].

12 Click [Import of CA Certificate].

Memo

- If [Not authenticate Server] is enabled, it is not necessary to import the CA certificate.
  If [Not authenticate Server] is enabled, disable whether or not to connect to the correct authentication server.

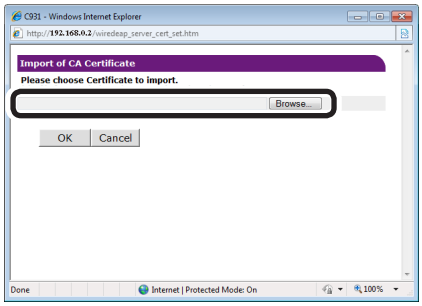


The "Import of CA Certificate" screen will be displayed.

13 Enter the CA certificate file name, and click [OK].

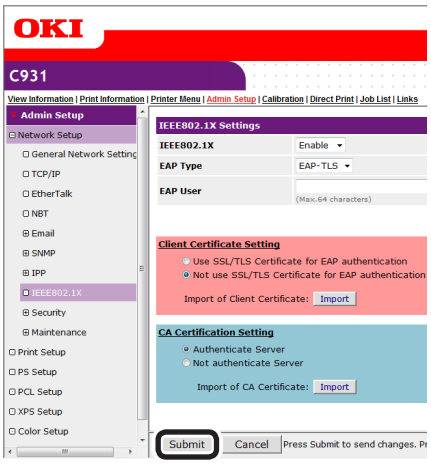
Memo

- The imported CA certificate is the authenticator certificate issued by the RADIUS server certificate.
- Importable file formats are PEM, DER, and PKCS#7 formats.



The CA certificate will be imported to the device.

14 Click [Submit].



15 The settings will be save in the printer, and the network functions will restart.

If the standby screen is displayed in the control panel, turn OFF the device power supply.

Reference

- For how to turn OFF the power supply, see "Basic".
- Go to "Connecting the device to the authentication switch" (P.259).

■ Connecting the device to the authentication switch

Memo

- Check that the device power supply is turned OFF.

1 Insert the LAN cable into the device LAN (network) interface connector.

2 Insert the LAN cable into the authentication switch authentication port.

3 Turn ON the device power supply.

4 Check that the standby screen is displayed in the control panel.

5 Set the device IP address according to the environment in use.

Changing EtherTalk printer names (Macintosh)

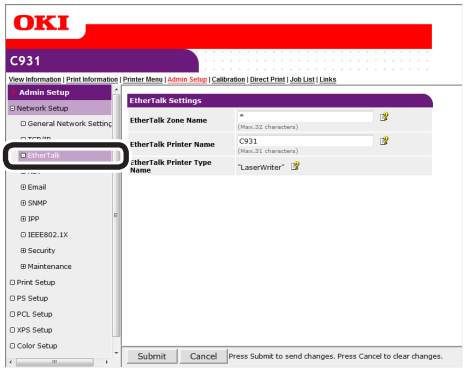
If using EtherTalk, you can add easily identifiable names to the device.

1 Log in as an administrator.

Reference

- See "Logging in as an administrator" (P.230).

2 Click [Admin Setup]>[Network Setup]>[EtherTalk] tab.



3 Enter a new name in [EtherTalk Printer Name], and click [Submit].

Note

- Settable printer names are 32 single-byte alphanumeric characters max.
- Do not use symbols (=:*@~≈), etc., in the printer name.

Changing EtherTalk zones (Macintosh)

You can change the printer from the current zone to another zone using EtherTalk delineated using multiple logical zones.

Note

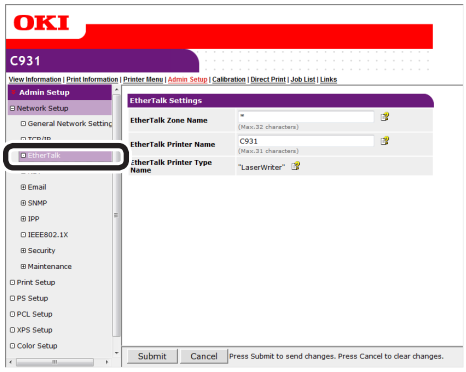
- Selectable zones are within the same segments.

1 Log in as an administrator.

Reference

- See "Logging in as an administrator" (P.230).

2 Click [Admin Setup]>[Network Setup]>[EtherTalk] tab.



3 Enter a new name in [EtherTalk Zone Name], and click [Submit].

Printing without printer drivers (Direct printing)

Printing PDF files

You can print PDF files even if the printer drivers have not been installed.

Specify the file from the web browser to send to the device.

Note

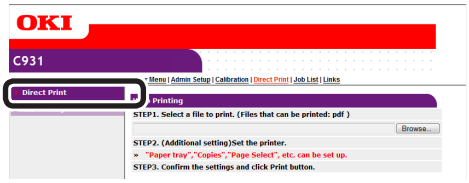
- Some PDF files may not print correctly. If printing is incorrect, print from an application such as Acrobat Reader.
- If printing by specifying the print page, device processing may take some time.

1 Log in as an administrator.

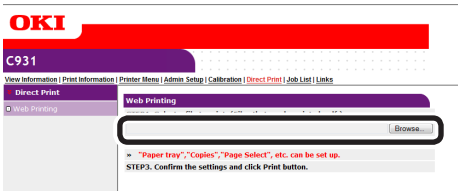
Reference

- See "Logging in as an administrator" (P.230).

2 Select the [Direct Print] tab.

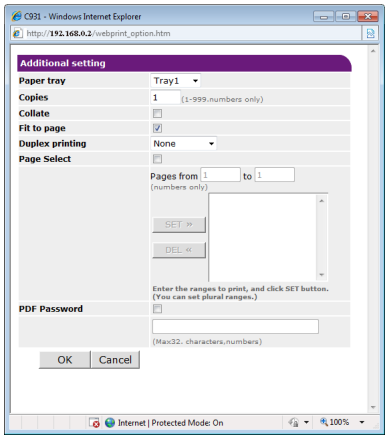


3 Specify the file to be printed in [STEP1].

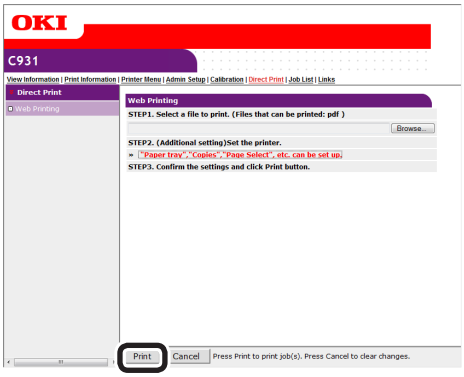


Click [Browse] to select the file using the file dialog box.

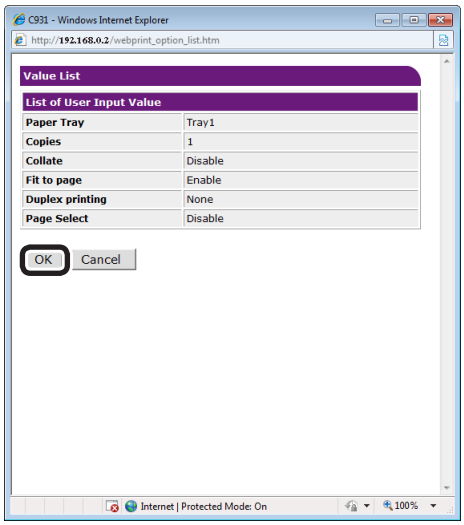
4 Set up printing in [STEP2].



5 Click [Print] in [STEP3].



6 Check the print setup, and click [OK].



Setting the server to print mail attachments

The printer can print the file attached to the received mail.

Memo

- A maximum of 10 files can be printed. However, the maximum size of the files is 8 MB.
- PDF, JPEG and TIFF files can be printed.
- Some PDF files may not be printed correctly. If files cannot be printed properly, open the file with Adobe Reader for printing.

■ Setting POP

1 Access the web page of the printer and log in as administrator.

2 Select [Admin Setup].

3 Select [Network Setup]>[Email]>[Receiving Settings].

4 Select [POP3], and click [STEP2].

5 Perform the settings following the on-screen instructions.

Memo

- Make correct settings for the mail server you are using. If the APOP protocol is disabled, when you enable APOP, mails may not be correctly received.
- If you specify a domain name of the mail server, set the DNS server in the [TCP/IP] setting.

6 Click [Submit].

■ Setting SMTP

1 Access the web page of the printer and log in as administrator.

2 Select [Admin Setup].

3 Select [Network Setup]>[Email]>[Receiving Settings].

4 Select [SMTP] and click [STEP2].

5 Perform the settings following the on-screen instructions.

6 Click [Submit].

5

Checking and Changing Printer Settings Using the Control Panel

Printing printer information 264

Checking print quantities 276

Checking remaining consumables and maintenance unit quantities 277

Table of setting items in the device setup screen 278

Printing printer information

Printable report tables

List name	Explanation	Reference pages.
Settings details	Prints a table of all menu category items and the current settings. Further, the advanced printer settings are also printed in the page header.	Page 265
Network functions	Prints the network information.	Page 266
Demo pages	Prints the demo print data stored in the printer.	Page 267
File list	Prints a table of the files registered to the file system.	Page 267
PS font list	Prints the PS font samples.	Page 269
PCL font list	Prints the PCL font samples.	Page 269
IBM PPR Font List	Prints the IBM PPR font samples.	Page 269
EPSON FX Font List	Prints the EPSON FX font samples.	Page 269
Total print results	Prints the total print results.	Page 268
Error log	Prints the errors detected and saved by the printer.	Page 268
Color profile list	Prints the color profile list.	Page 269
Color matching pattern	Prints patterns to match the shading characteristics.	Page 123
User media list*1	Prints the user media list information.	Page 270
Test print-1	Prints the patterns for analyzing the print quality.	Page 270
Test print-2	Prints the patterns for analyzing the CYMK print quality.	Page 270
Test print-3*2	Prints the patterns for checking the media shrinkage in the case of spot color overprint.	Page 270
Test print-4*3	Prints the patterns for analyzing print quality of the spot colors (white or clear*4).	Page 270

*1: Displayed when the user media is registered.

*2: Displayed when white toner is used in C941/ES9541/Pro9541.

*3: Displayed with C941/C942/ES9541/ES9542/Pro9541/Pro9542 only.

*4: C941/ES9541/Pro9541 only

Note

- When printing reports, set A4 size paper in the tray to be used before printing.

Printing printer settings lists

Settings details

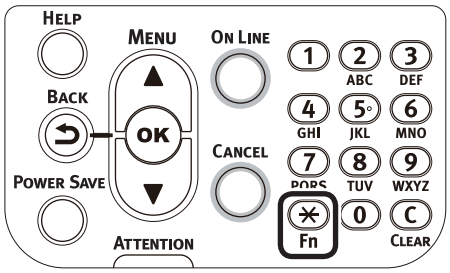
Print the device information.

Print to see the remaining quantity of consumables and other set values such as IP addresses and MAC addresses, and to check whether the device print unit is operating correctly, etc.

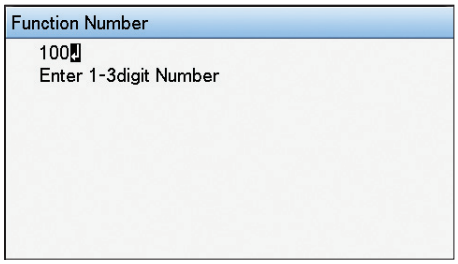
■ How to print

1 Press the [Fn] key.

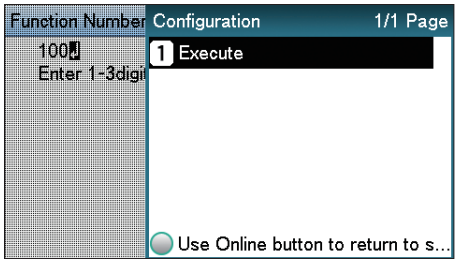
The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



2 Press functions numbers [1], [0], [0], and press the [OK] button.



3 Check that [Execute] has been selected, and press the [OK] button.



■ Print results samples



Printing printer information lists

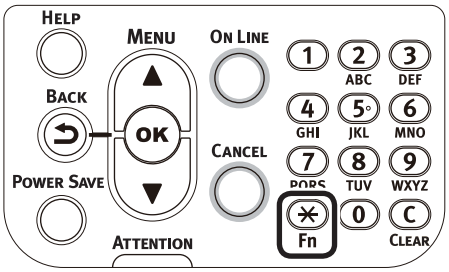
Network information

Print the device network information.

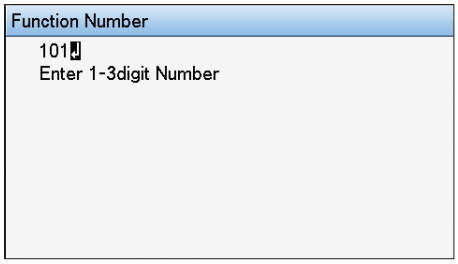
■ How to print

1 Press the [Fn] key.

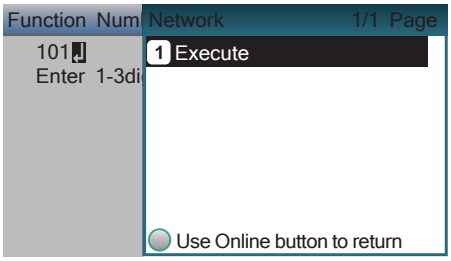
The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



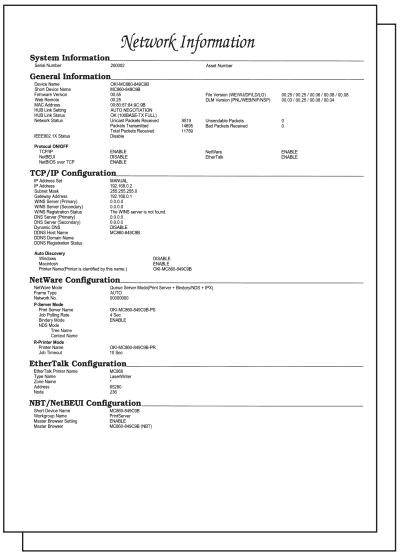
2 Press functions numbers [1], [0], [1], and press the [OK] button.



3 Check that [Execute] has been selected, and press the [OK] button.



■ Print results samples

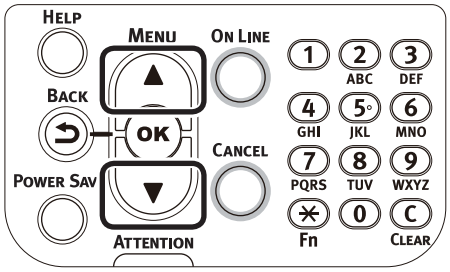


File list

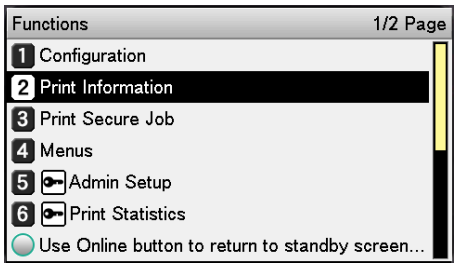
Prints a table of the files registered to the file system.

■ How to print

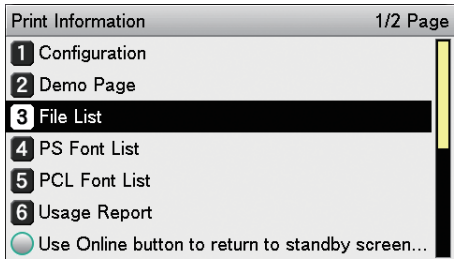
1 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



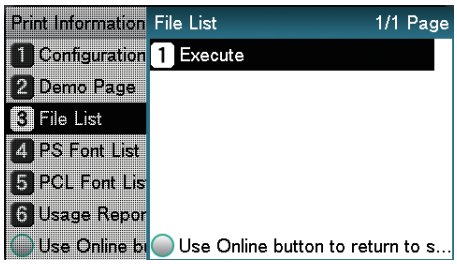
2 Select [Print Information], and press the [OK] button.



3 Select [File List], and press the [OK] button.



4 Check that [Execute] has been selected, and press the [OK] button.

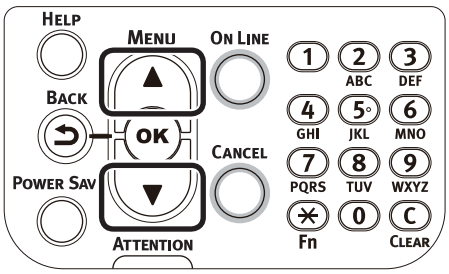


Demo pages

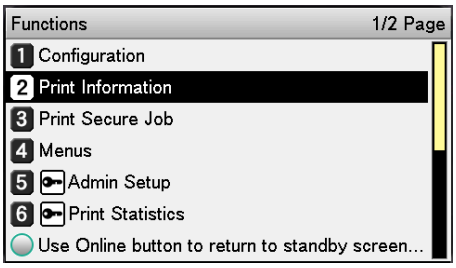
Prints demonstration pages.

■ How to print

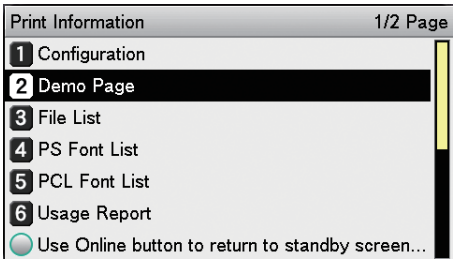
1 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



2 Select [Print Information], and press the [OK] button.

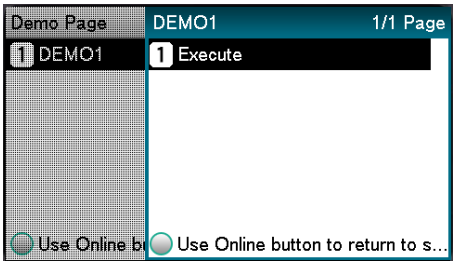


3 Select [Demo Page], and press the [OK] button.



4 [DEMO1] will be displayed. Select an item to print, and press the [OK] button.

5 Check that [Execute] has been selected, and press the [OK] button.



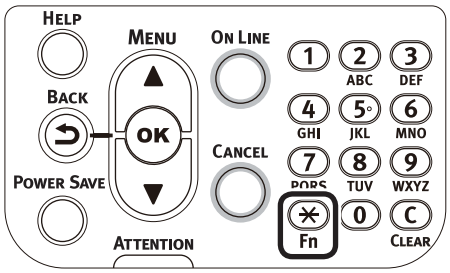
Error log

Prints a history of the errors that have occurred in the device.

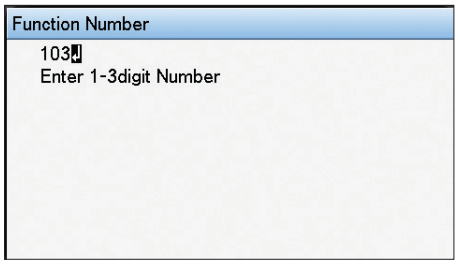
■ How to print

1 Press the [Fn] key.

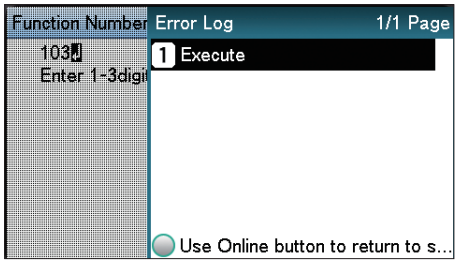
The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



2 Press functions numbers [1], [0], [3], and press the [OK] button.



3 Check that [Execute] has been selected, and press the [OK] button.



Total print results

Prints the total print results.

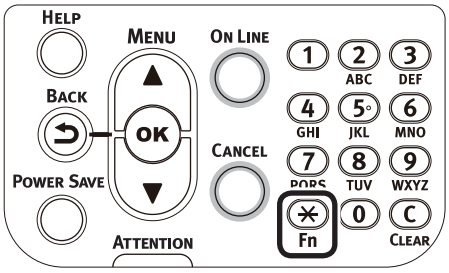
Memo

- Not displayed if [Usage Report] of [Print Statistics] is set to [Disable].

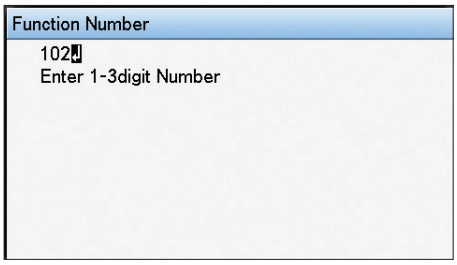
■ How to print

1 Press the [Fn] key.

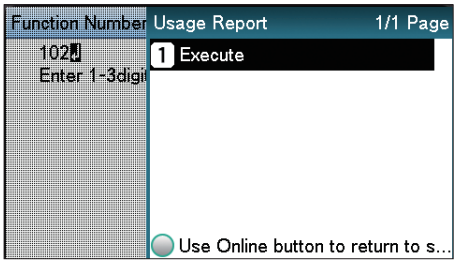
The numerical values input screen will be displayed.



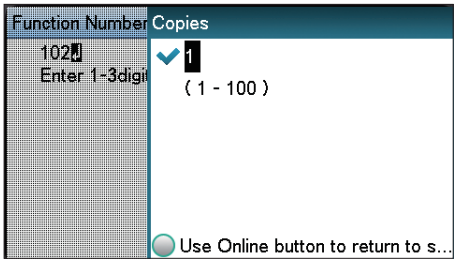
2 Press functions numbers [1], [0], [2], and press the [OK] button.



3 Check that [Execute] has been selected, and press the [OK] button.



4 Specify the print quantity using the scroll buttons ▲▼, and press the [OK] button.



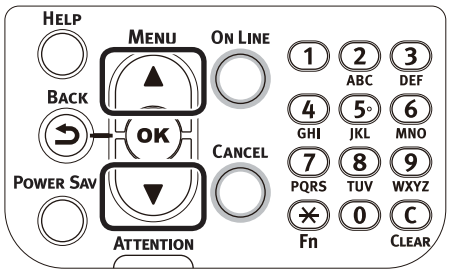
Total print results Printing print lists

Font list

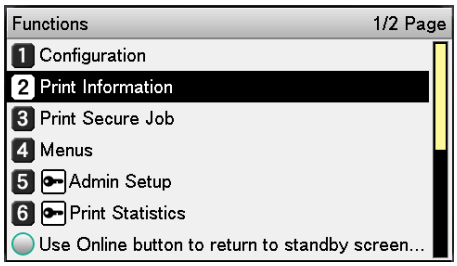
Prints the font samples stored in the device.

■ How to print

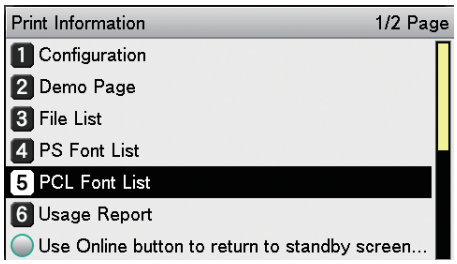
1 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



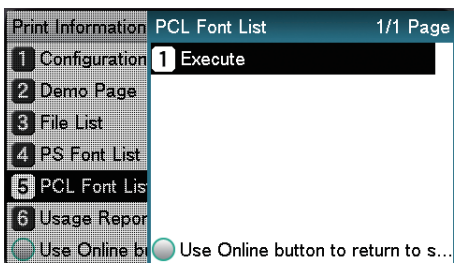
2 Select [Print Information], and press the [OK] button.



3 Select [PCL Font List], [PS Font List], [IBM PPR Font List] or [EPSON FX Font List] and press the [OK] button.



4 Check that [Execute] has been selected, and press the [OK] button.

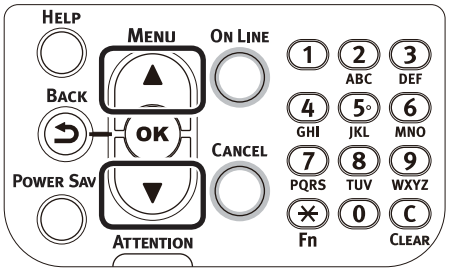


Color profile list

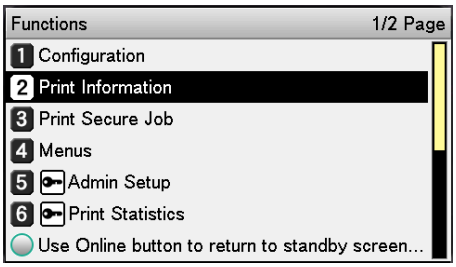
Prints a table of the ICC profiles registered to the file system.

■ How to print

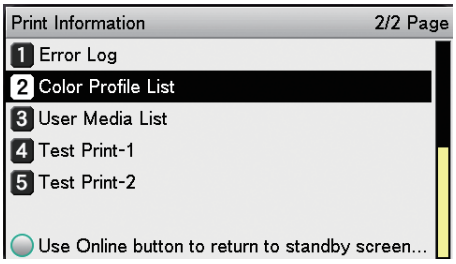
1 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



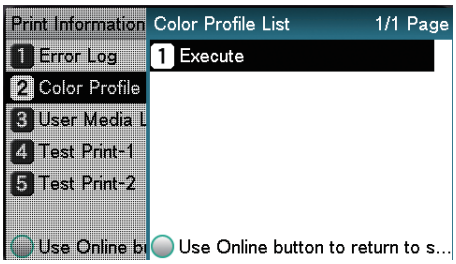
2 Select [Print Information], and press the [OK] button.



3 Select [Color Profile List], and press the [OK] button.



4 Check that [Execute] has been selected, and press the [OK] button.



User media list

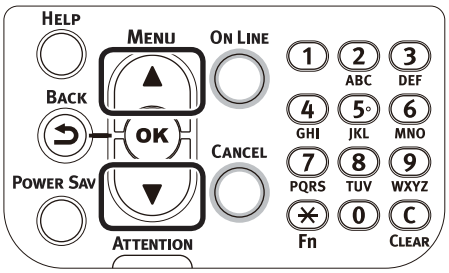
Prints a table of the user media registered to the device.

Memo

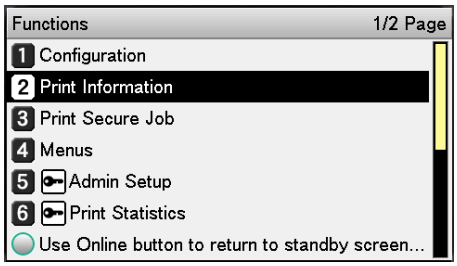
- Displayed when the user media is registered.

■ How to print

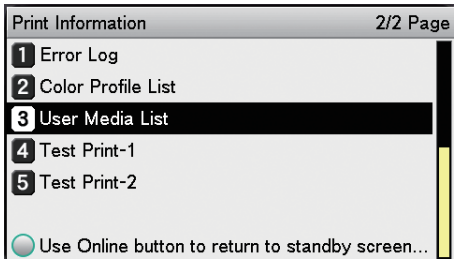
1 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



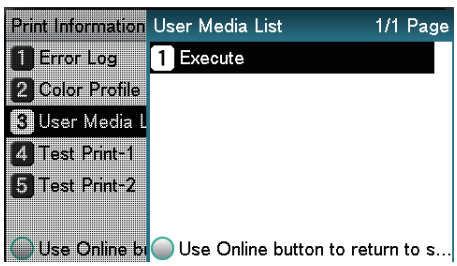
2 Select [Print Information], and press the [OK] button.



3 Select [User Media List], and press the [OK] button.



4 Check that [Execute] has been selected, and press the [OK] button.



Test prints

Prints the print quality lists.

- Test print-1

Prints the patterns for analyzing the print quality.

- Test print-2

Prints the patterns for analyzing the CMYK print quality.

- Test print-3

Prints the patterns for checking the media shrinkage in the case of spot color overprint.

Memo

- Displayed when white toner is used in C941/ES9541/Pro9541.

- Test print-4

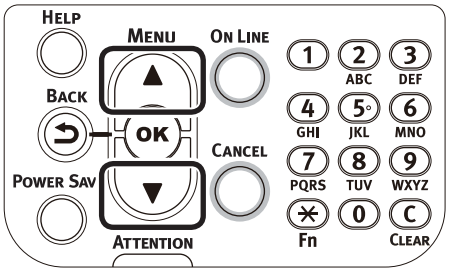
Prints the patterns for analyzing print quality of the spot colors (white or clear*).
*C941/ES9541/Pro9541 only.

Memo

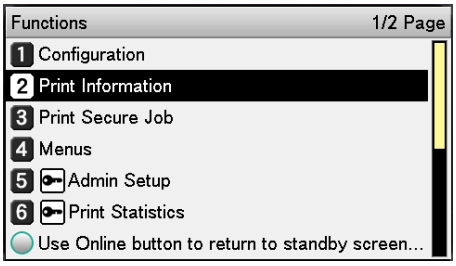
- Displayed with C941/C942/ES9541/ES9542/Pro9541/Pro9542 only.

■ How to print

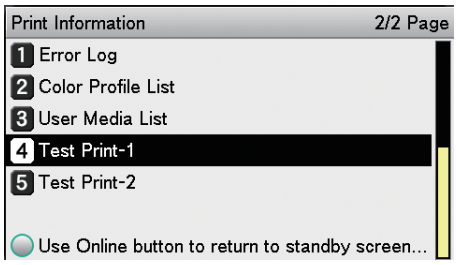
1 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



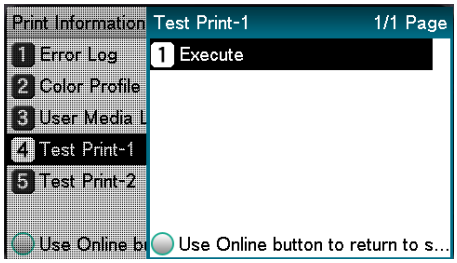
2 Select [Print Information], and press the [OK] button.



3 Select [Test Print-1], [Test Print-2], [Test Print-3], or [Test Print-4] and press the [OK] button.



4 [Execute] will be displayed, so press the [OK] button.

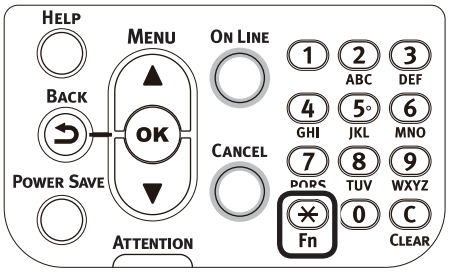


Registering custom sizes (irregular paper)

If using custom sizes, set the width and length of the paper using the control panel.

1 Press the [Fn] key.

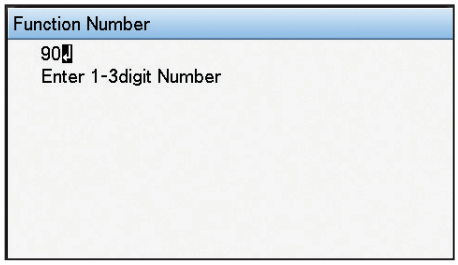
The numerical input screen will be displayed.



2 Enter a function number according to the paper feed tray to be set.

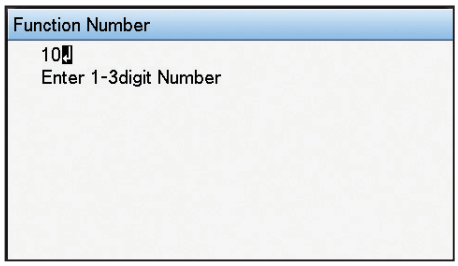
- Multi-purpose tray settings

  Press functions numbers [9], [0], and press the [OK] button.



- Using tray 1

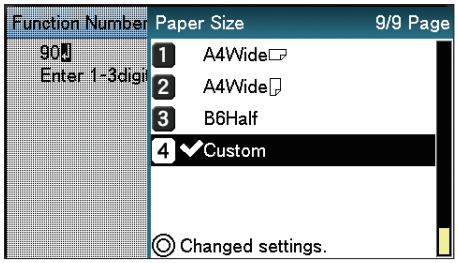
  Press functions numbers [1], [0], and press the [OK] button.



Memo

- The function numbers for trays 2 to 5 are as described below.
  - Tray 2: [Fn] key, [2], [0], and [OK] buttons.
  - Tray 3: [Fn] key, [3], [0], and [OK] buttons.
  - Tray 4: [Fn] key, [4], [0], and [OK] buttons.
  - Tray 5: [Fn] key, [5], [0], and [OK] buttons.

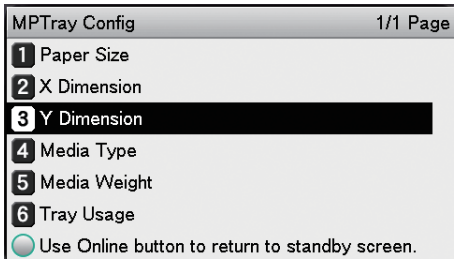
3 Select [Custom], and press the [OK] button.



4 Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of [Custom], and press the [BACK] button.

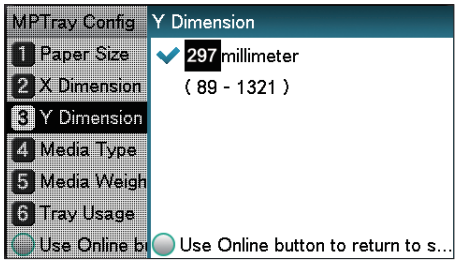
5 Set the custom size length and width.

(1) Select [Y Dimension], and press the [OK] button.

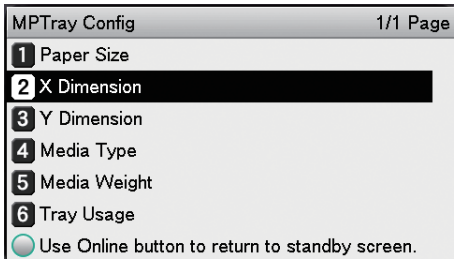


(2) Use the 10-key pad or the scroll buttons ▲▼ to enter the length.

(3) After entering the length, press the [OK] button. Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the entered value, and press the [BACK] button.



(4) Select [X Dimension], and press the [OK] button.

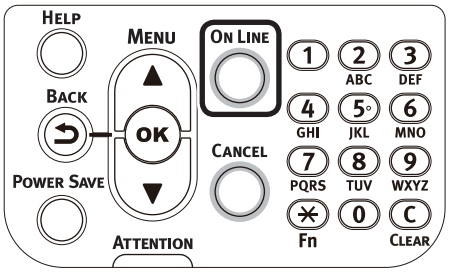


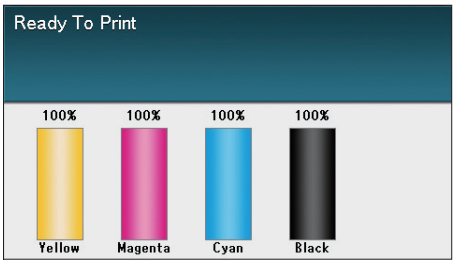
(5) Use the 10-key pad or the scroll buttons ▲▼ to enter the width.

(6) After entering the width, press the [OK] button. Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the entered value, and press the [BACK] button.



6 Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.

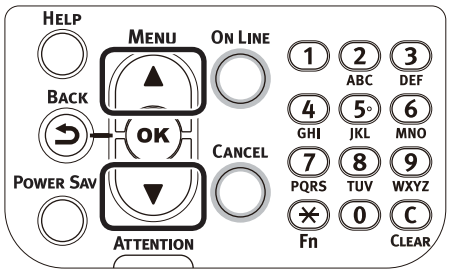




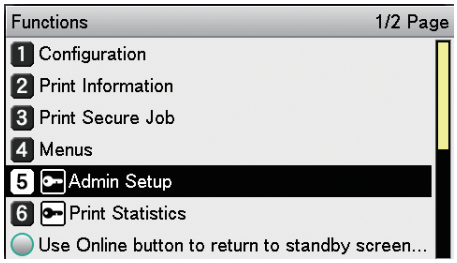
Changing administrator passwords

Change an administrator password. The default factory setting is [aaaaaa].

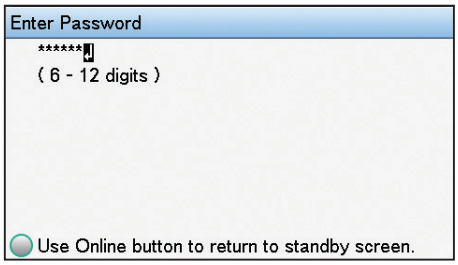
1 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



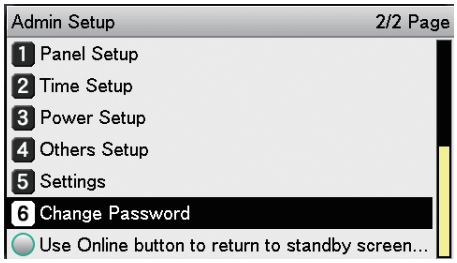
2 Select [Admin Setup], and press the [OK] button.



3 Enter the administrator password, and press the [OK] button.



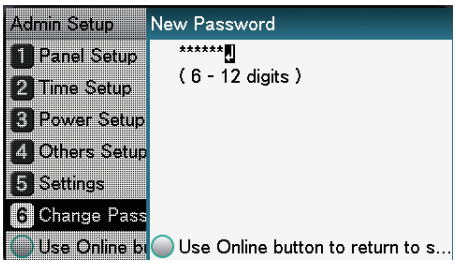
4 Select [Change Password], and press the [OK] button.



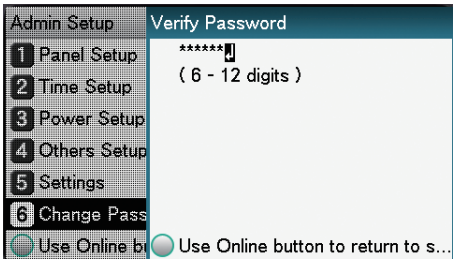
5 Enter the new password, and press the [OK] button.

Note

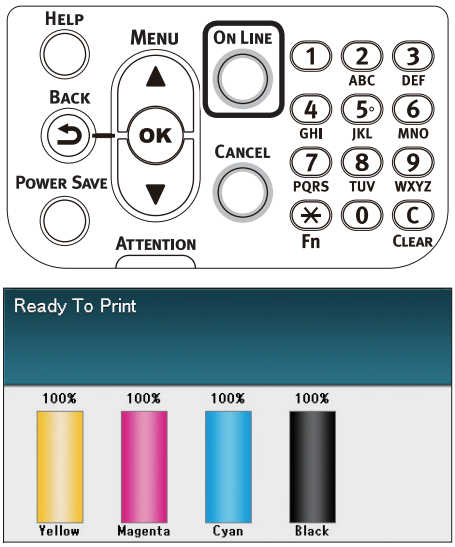
- Set a password with 6 characters min.



6 Re-enter the new password, and press the [OK] button.



7 Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.

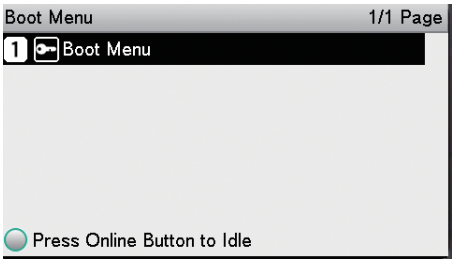


Restricting button operations (panel lockout)

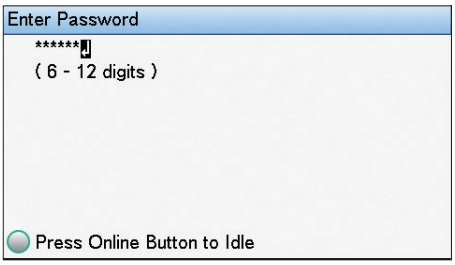
Set to restrict button operations so that the device settings are not changed unintentionally.

1 Press and hold the [OK] button, and press the power switch.

2 Check that [Boot Menu] has been selected, and press the [OK] button.



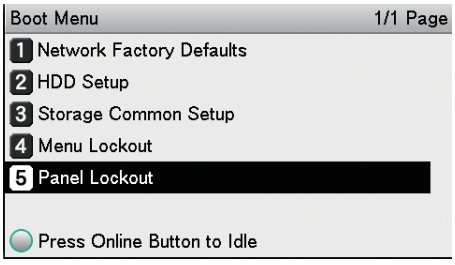
3 Enter the password, and press the [OK] button.



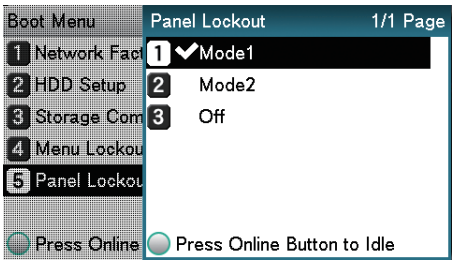
Memo

- This is the same as the administrator password. The default factory setting is [aaaaaa].

4 Select [Panel Lockout], and press the [OK] button.



5 Specify the operations buttons mode to be restricted, and press the [OK] button.



- Mode1:

  The [BACK] button, scroll buttons ▲▼, and 10-key pad are disabled.

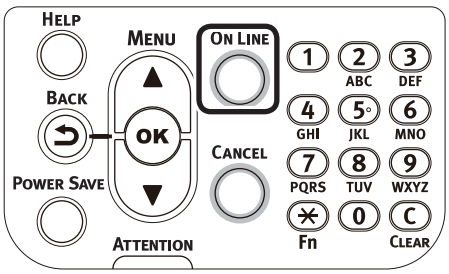
- Mode2:

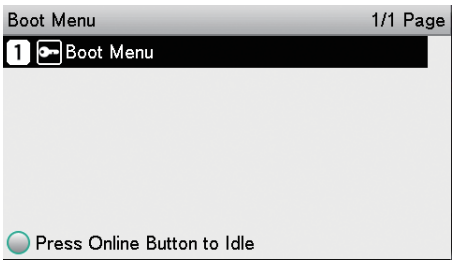
  The [HELP] button, [BACK] button, [POWER SAVE] button, scroll buttons ▲▼, [CANCEL] button, and 10-key pad are disabled.

- Off:

  All operations buttons are enabled.

6 Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of the designated mode, and press the [ON LINE] button. The display will return to the Boot Menu.





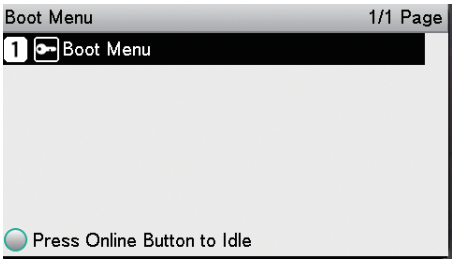
7 Restart the printer.

Restricting menu displays (menu lockout)

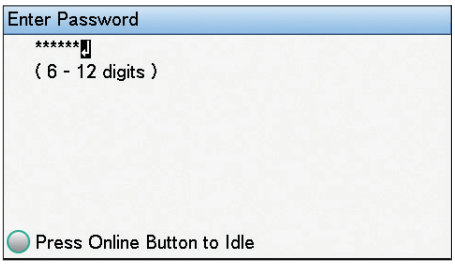
Set to restrict menu operations so that the device settings are not changed unintentionally.

1 Press and hold the [OK] button, and press the power switch.

2 Check that [Boot Menu] has been selected, and press the [OK] button.



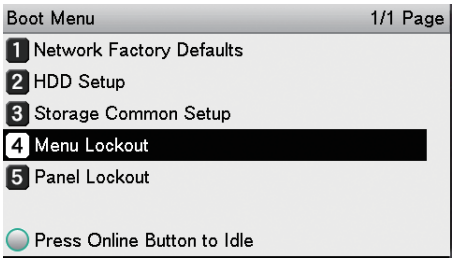
3 Enter the password, and press the [OK] button.



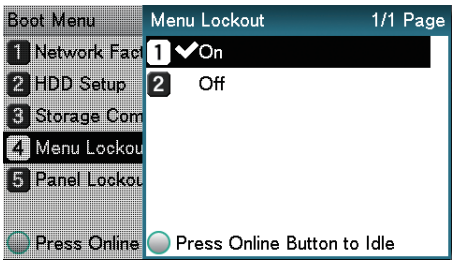
Memo

- This is the same as the administrator password. The default factory setting is [aaaaaa].

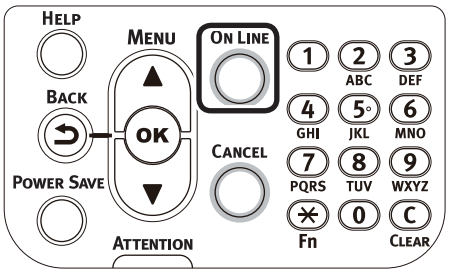
4 Select [Menu Lockout], and press the [OK] button.

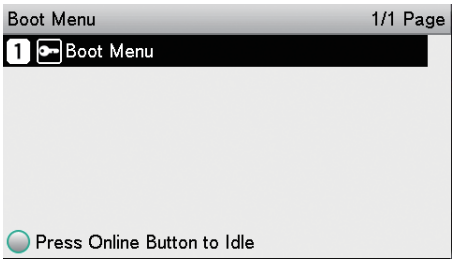


5 Select [On], and press the [OK] button.



6 Check that ✔ is displayed to the left of [On], and press the [ON LINE] button. The display will return to the Boot Menu.



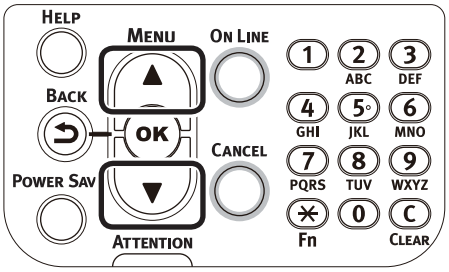


7 Restart the printer.

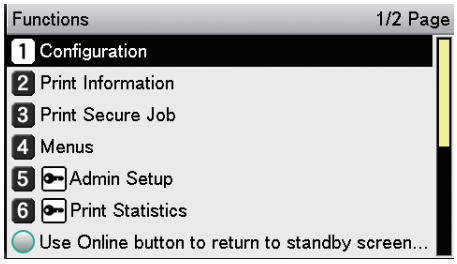
Checking print quantities

You can check the quantity of printed paper to date. You can also check the quantities printed (fed) from each tray.

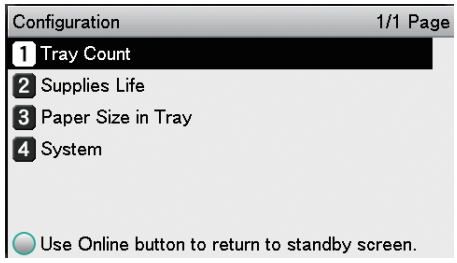
1 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



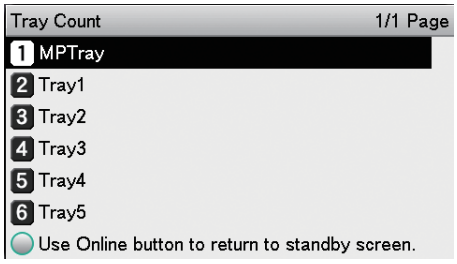
2 Select [Configuration], and press the [OK] button.



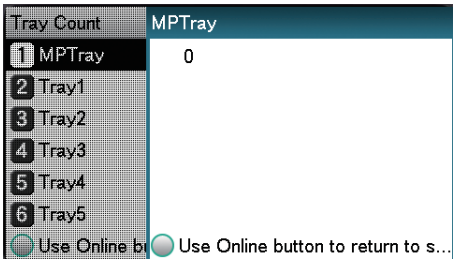
3 Select [Tray Count], and press the [OK] button.



4 Select the tray to be checked.

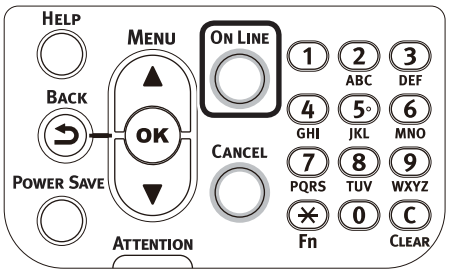


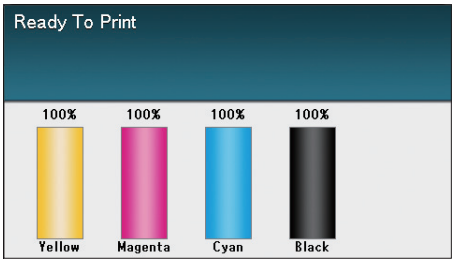
5 Press the [OK] button.



To continue checking other items, press the [BACK] button and return to 4.

6 Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.

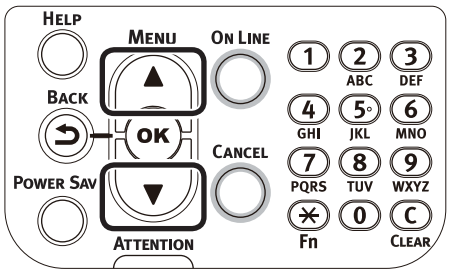




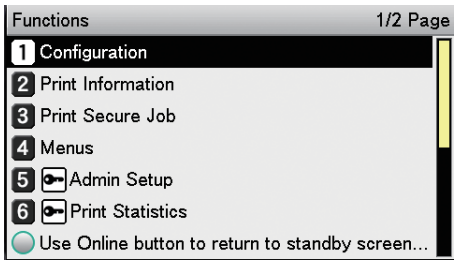
Checking remaining consumables and maintenance unit quantities

You can check the remaining quantities and service life of the toner, image drum, belt unit, fuser unit, and waste toner box.

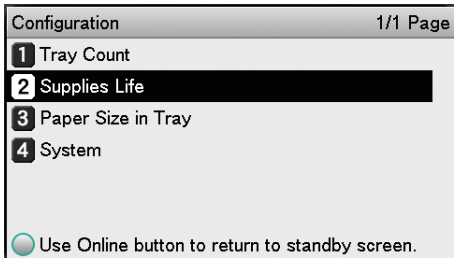
1 Press the scroll button ▲ or ▼.



2 Select [Configuration], and press the [OK] button.



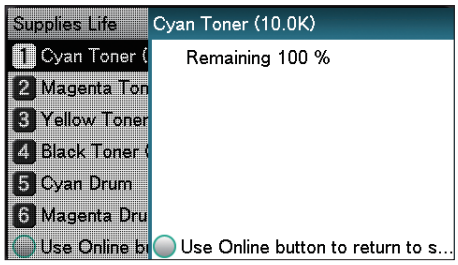
3 Select [Supplies Life], and press the [OK] button.



4 Select the consumable or maintenance unit to be checked (Toner, image drum, belt unit, fuser unit, or waste toner box).

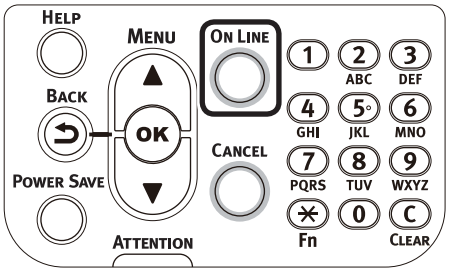


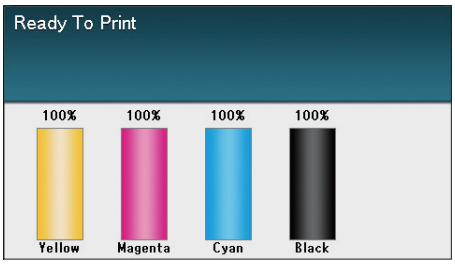
5 Press the [OK] button.



To continue checking other items, press the [BACK] button and return to 5.

6 Press the [ON LINE] button to return to the standby screen.





Memo

- The value to the right of the toner in the remaining consumables quantity screen changes depending on the type of toner cartridge installed.
  "10.0K" is displayed at the time of product purchase and when a standard toner cartridge is mounted.
  "24.0K" is displayed when a large-capacity toner cartridge is mounted.

Table of setting items in the device setup screen

Device setup screen

Item	Details
Configuration	You can check the device information (I.e., total number of sheets in each tray, remaining consumables quantity, paper size set in each tray, system information, etc.).
Print Information	You can print the settings and font list of this machine.
Print Secure Job	You can save print jobs to the device HDD, and enter a password to print. Displayed when the HDD is mounted.
Menus	You can set the tray configuration, system settings, print position compensation, and color, etc.
Admin Setup	This is the menu by which the administrator sets the network settings, changes passwords, etc.
Print Statistics	You can check the print use status of the user.
Calibration	You can adjust the color densities and shades, and color misalignment, etc.
Boot Menu	You can set whether or not to restart the printer when a malfunction occurs in the HDD or file system, etc.

[Configuration]

Item			Details
Tray Count	MPTray	nnnnnn	Displays the total print quantity for the Multi-Purpose Tray. (This is the number of sheets fed from the Multi-Purpose Tray.)
	Tray1	nnnnnn	Displays the total print quantity for tray 1. (This is the number of sheets fed from the tray 1.)
	Tray2[*1] Tray3[*1] Tray4[*1] Tray5[*1] *1: The optional expansion tray unit is displayed when mounted.	nnnnnn	Displays the total print quantity for each tray. (This is the number of sheets fed from each tray.)
Supplies Life	Cyan Toner (n.nK)	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining toner amount percentage for each color.
	Magenta Toner (n.nK)	Remaining nnn%	
	Yellow Toner (n.nK)	Remaining nnn%	
	Black Toner (n.nK)	Remaining nnn%	
	White Toner (n.nK)[*2] *2: Displayed with C941/C942/ES9541/ ES9542/Pro9541/ Pro9542 only.	Remaining nnn%	
	Clear Toner (n.nK)[*3] *3: Displayed with C941/ES9541/ Pro9541 only.	Remaining nnn%	
	Cyan Drum	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining service life percentage of the cyan image drum.
	Magenta Drum	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining service life percentage of the magenta image drum.
	Yellow Drum	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining service life percentage of the yellow image drum.
	Black Drum	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining service life percentage of the black image drum.
	White Drum[*2] *2: Displayed with C941/C942/ES9541/ ES9542/Pro9541/ Pro9542 only.	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining service life percentage of the white image drum.
	Clear Drum[*3] *3: Displayed with C941/ES9541/ Pro9541 only.	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining service life percentage of the clear image drum.
	Waste Toner Box	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining service life percentage of the waste toner box.
	Belt	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining service life percentage of the belt unit.
	Fuser	Remaining nnn%	Displays the remaining service life percentage of the fuser unit.

Item			Details
Network	Printer Name	********** ********** **********	Displays the printer name used by DNS and Network PnP
	Short Printer Name	******* ********	Displays the short printer name.
	IPv4 Address	xxx.xxx. xxx.xxx	Changes the IP address. Displays the control panel [Administrator menu]>[Network setup]>[IPv4 address] setup when TCP/IP is enabled.
	Subnet Mask	xxx.xxx. xxx.xxx	Displays the subnet mask. Displays the control panel [Administrator menu]>[Network setup]>[Subnet mask] setup when TCP/IP is enabled.
	Gateway Address	xxx.xxx. xxx.xxx	Displays the gateway address. Displays the control panel [Administrator menu]>[Network setup]>[Gateway address] setup when TCP/IP is enabled.
	MAC Address	xx:xx:xx: xx:xx:xx	Displays the MAC address.
	Network FW Version	xx.xx	Display the Network firewall version.
	Web Remote Version	xx.xx	Displays the web page version.
	IPv6 Address (Local)	xxxx:xxxx: xxxx:xxxx: xxxx:xxxx: xxxx:xxxx	Displays the (local) IPv6 address. If TCP/IP is disabled, or the IP version is IPv4, this menu is not displayed.
	IPv6 Address (Global)	xxxx:xxxx: xxxx:xxxx: xxxx:xxxx: xxxx:xxxx	Displays the (global) IPv6 address. If TCP/IP is disabled, or the IP version is IPv4, this menu is not displayed.
Paper Size in Tray	MPTray	A4	Displays the paper size for the Multi-Purpose Tray.
	Tray1	A4	Displays the paper size for tray 1.
	Tray2*1 Tray3*1 Tray4*1 Tray5*1 *1: The optional expansion tray unit is displayed when mounted.	A4	Displays the paper size for each tray.

Item			Details
System	Serial Number	xxxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxxxx xxxxxx	Displays the serial number.
	Asset Number	xxxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxxxx xxxxxxxxxxxx	Displays the asset number of the printer manager.
	Firmware Version	xxx.xx_x_x	Displays the version number of FirmSuite.
	CU Version	xx.xx	Displays the control unit firmware version.
	PU Version	xx.xx.xx	Displays the print unit firmware version.
	RAM	xxMB	Displays the total availability of all mounted RAM.
	Flash Memory	xxMB[Fxx]	Displays the total availability of all flash memory and flash system versions installed.
	HDD*1 *1: Displayed when the HDD (option) is mounted.	xx.xxGB [Fxx]	Displays the HDD size and file system version installed.
	Date and Time	y y y y / m m / d d hh:mm	Displays the current date and time.

[Print Information]

Item			Details
Configuration		Print	Prints the device setup details.
Network		Print	Prints the network information.
Demo Page	DEMO1	Print	Prints demo pages.
File List		Print	Prints the color profile list.
PS Font List		Print	Prints the PostScript font samples.
PCL Font List		Print	Prints the PCL font samples.
Usage Report[*1] *1: Not displayed if [Print Statistics]>[Usage Report] is set to [Disable] on the control panel.		Print	Prints the total print results.
Error Log		Print	Prints the error log.
Color Profile List		Print	Prints the color profile list.
User Media List		Print	Prints the user media list information. → A method for registering user media
Test Print-1		Print	Prints the patterns for analyzing the print quality.
Test Print-2		Print	Prints the patterns for analyzing the CMYK print quality.
Test Print-3[*1] *1: Displayed when white toner is used in C941/ES9541/Pro9541.		Print	Prints the patterns for checking the media shrinkage in the case of spot color overprint.
Test Print-4[*2] *2: Displayed with C941/C942/ES9541/ES9542/Pro9541/Pro9542 only.		Print	Prints the patterns for analyzing print quality of the spot colors (white or clear[*3]). *3: C941/ES9541/Pro9541 only.

[Print Secure Job]

Note

- Displayed when the HDD (option) is mounted.
- To enter this menu, it is necessary to enter the password for secure printing.

Item		Details
Encrypted Job	Not Found	This message is displayed when there is no encrypted secure print job allocated to the password that has been entered.
	Print	Prints the encrypted secure print jobs stored on the HDD.
	Delete	Deletes the encrypted secure print jobs stored on the HDD.
Stored Job	Not Found	This message is displayed when there is no secure print job allocated to the password that has been entered.
	Print	Prints the secure print jobs stored on the HDD.
	Delete	Deletes the secure print jobs stored on the HDD.

[Menus]

■ Tray Configuration

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
MPTray Config	Paper Size	A3Nobi A3Wide A3 A4 ▭ A4 ▯ A5 ▭ A5 ▯ A6 B4 B5 ▭ B5 ▯ B6 Legal14 Legal13.5 Legal13 Tabloid Extra Tabloid Letter ▭ Letter ▯ Executive 16K (184x260mm) ▭ 16K (195x270mm) ▭ 16K (197x273mm) ▭ 16K (184x260mm) ▯ 16K (195x270mm) ▯ 16K (197x273mm) ▯ 8K (260x368mm) 8K (270x390mm) 8K (273x394mm) Statement Com-6 3/4 Envelope Com-9 Envelope Com-10 Envelope Monarch Envelope A2 Envelope A6 Envelope A7 Envelope DL Envelope C4 Envelope C5 Envelope Nagagata #3 Nagagata #4 Nagagata #40 Yougata #0 Yougata #2 Yougata #4 Kakugata #2 Kakugata #3 Kakugata #8 Index Card A4Wide ▭ A4Wide ▯ B6Half Custom	Sets the paper size for the Multi-Purpose Tray.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
MPTray Config	X Dimension*1 *1: Displayed when [Paper size] is set to [Custom] on the control panel.	2.5" to 8.3" to 13"	Sets the custom paper width for the Multi-Purpose Tray.
		64mm to 210mm to 330mm	
	Y Dimension*1 *1: Displayed when [Paper size] is set to [Custom] on the control panel.	3.5" to 11.7" to 52.0"	Sets the custom paper length for the Multi-Purpose Tray.
		89mm to 297mm to 1321mm	
	Media Type	Plain Letterhead Transparency Labels Bond Recycled Card Stock Rough Glossy Envelope USERTYPE1*1 USERTYPE2*1 USERTYPE3*1 USERTYPE4*1 USERTYPE5*1 USERTYPE6*1 USERTYPE7*1 USERTYPE8*1 USERTYPE9*1 USERTYPE10*1 USERTYPE11*1 USERTYPE12*1 USERTYPE13*1 USERTYPE14*1 USERTYPE15*1 USERTYPE16*1 USERTYPE17*1 USERTYPE18*1 USERTYPE19*1 USERTYPE20*1 *1: USERTYPE 1-20 will be displayed if registered.	Sets the paper type for the Multi-Purpose Tray.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
MPTray Config	Media Weight	Auto Ultra Light Light Medium Light Medium Medium Heavy Heavy Ultra Heavy1 Ultra Heavy2 Ultra Heavy3 Ultra Heavy4 Ultra Heavy5	Sets the paper weight for the Multi-Purpose Tray.
	Tray Usage	Normal Tray When Mismatching Do Not Use	Sets how to use the Multi-Purpose Tray. Normal Tray: (Tray selection/switching) Use as regular tray. When Mismatching: If the output tray paper size or paper type is different from the print data, print from the Multi-Purpose Tray. Do Not Use: Auto tray selection and auto tray switching are not possible. However, if [Menu]>[Tray configuration]>[Paper feed tray]>[Multi-Purpose Tray] is specified in the control panel, operations will be the same as regular trays (Uses the Multi-Purpose Tray as the auto tray).
Tray1 Config	Paper Size	Cassette Size Custom Other Size	Sets the paper size for tray 1.
	X Dimension*1 *1: Displayed when [Paper size] is set to [Custom] on the control panel.	3.9" to 8.3" to 13.0"	Sets the custom paper width for tray 1.
		99mm to 210mm to 330mm	
	Y Dimension*1 *1: Displayed when [Paper size] is set to [Custom] on the control panel.	5.8" to 11.7" to 18.0"	Sets the custom paper length for tray 1.
		147mm to 297mm to 457mm	

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
Tray1 Config	Media Type	Plain Letterhead Transparency Labels Bond Recycled Card Stock Rough Glossy USERTYPE1*1 USERTYPE2*1 USERTYPE3*1 USERTYPE4*1 USERTYPE5*1 USERTYPE6*1 USERTYPE7*1 USERTYPE8*1 USERTYPE9*1 USERTYPE10*1 USERTYPE11*1 USERTYPE12*1 USERTYPE13*1 USERTYPE14*1 USERTYPE15*1 USERTYPE16*1 USERTYPE17*1 USERTYPE18*1 USERTYPE19*1 USERTYPE20*1 *1: USERTYPE 1-20 will be displayed if registered.	Sets the paper type for tray 1.
	Media Weight	Auto Ultra Light Light Medium Light Medium Medium Heavy Heavy Ultra Heavy1 Ultra Heavy2 Ultra Heavy3 Ultra Heavy4 Ultra Heavy5	Sets the paper weight for tray 1.
	A3Nobi Paper	A3Nobi A3Wide Tabloid Extra	Set when using A3Nobi (328 x 453mm), A3WIDE (320 x 450mm), or tabloid extra (12 x 18") paper size in tray 1.
	Legal14 Paper	Legal14 Legal13.5	Set when using legal14 (8.5 x 14") or legal13.5 (8.5 x 13.5") paper in tray 1.
	A5LEF/A6/ Paper	A5 A6	Set when using A5 and A6 paper in Tray 1.
	A5SEF Paper	A5	Set when using A5 paper in Tray 1.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
Tray1 Config	Other Size	A4Wide A4Wide B6 16K (184x260mm) 16K (195x270mm) 16K (197x273mm) 16K (184x260mm) 16K (195x270mm) 16K (197x273mm) 8K (260x368mm) 8K (270x390mm) 8K (273x394mm)	Specifies other fixed paper sizes in tray 1.
Tray2*1 Tray3*1 Tray4*1 Tray5*1 *1: The optional expansion tray unit is displayed when mounted.	Paper Size	Cassette Size Custom Other Size	Sets the paper size for trays 2 to 5.
	X Dimension*2 *2: Displayed when [Paper size] is set to [Custom] on the control panel.	3.9" to 8.3" to 13.0"	Sets the custom paper width for trays 2 to 5.
		99mm to 210mm to 330mm	
	Y Dimension*2 *2: Displayed when [Paper size] is set to [Custom] on the control panel.	5.8" to 11.7" to 18.0"	Sets the custom paper length for trays 2 to 5.
		147mm to 297mm to 457mm	

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
Tray2[*1] Tray3[*1] Tray4[*1] Tray5[*1] *1: The optional expansion tray unit is displayed when mounted.	Media Type	Plain Letterhead Bond Recycled Card Stock Rough Glossy USERTYPE1[*1] USERTYPE2[*1] USERTYPE3[*1] USERTYPE4[*1] USERTYPE5[*1] USERTYPE6[*1] USERTYPE7[*1] USERTYPE8[*1] USERTYPE9[*1] USERTYPE10[*1] USERTYPE11[*1] USERTYPE12[*1] USERTYPE13[*1] USERTYPE14[*1] USERTYPE15[*1] USERTYPE16[*1] USERTYPE17[*1] USERTYPE18[*1] USERTYPE19[*1] USERTYPE20[*1] *1: USERTYPE 1-20 will be displayed if registered.	Sets the paper type for trays 2 to 5.
	Media Weight	Auto Ultra Light Light Medium Light Medium Medium Heavy Heavy Ultra Heavy1 Ultra Heavy2 Ultra Heavy3 Ultra Heavy4	Sets the paper weight for trays 2 to 5.
	A3Nobi paper	A3Nobi A3Wide Tabloid Extra	Set when using A3Nobi (328 x 453mm), A3WIDE (320 x 450mm), or tabloid extra (12 x 18") paper size in trays 2 to 5.
	Legal14 Paper	Legal14 Legal13.5	Set when using legal14 (8.5 x 14") or legal13.5 (8.5 x 13.5") paper in trays 2 to 5.
	A5LEF/A6/ Paper	A5 A6	Set when using A5 and A6 paper in Trays 2 to 5.
	A5SEF Paper	A5	Set when using A5 paper in Trays 2 to 5.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
Tray2*1 Tray3*1 Tray4*1 Tray5*1 *1: The optional expansion tray unit is displayed when mounted.	Other Size	A4Wide A4Wide B6 16K (184x260mm) 16K (195x270mm) 16K (197x273mm) 16K (184x260mm) 16K (195x270mm) 16K (197x273mm) 8K (260x368mm) 8K (270x390mm) 8K (273x394mm)	Specifies other fixed paper sizes in trays 2 to 5.
Paper Feed		MPTray Tray1 Tray2*1 Tray3*1 Tray4*1 Tray5*1 *1: The optional expansion tray unit is displayed when mounted.	Specifies the feed paper tray.
Auto Tray Switch		On Off	Sets whether to switch automatically to another tray when the paper in the current printing tray runs out.
Tray Sequence		Down Up Paper Feed	Specifies the selection order of the tray when using auto tray selection or auto tray switching.
Unit of Measurement		inch millimeter	Specifies the units for custom paper sizes.
Duplex Last Page		Skip Blank Page Always Print	Skip Blank Page: Prints the final page as 1-sided when using 2-sided printing on odd-numbered data pages. Always Print: Implements regular 2-sided printing. Not operable with some applications.

■ System Adjust

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Power Save Time	1 minute 2 minutes 3 minutes 4 minutes 5 minutes 10 minutes 15 minutes 30 minutes 60 minutes	Sets the time until the printer enters power save mode.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Sleep Time	1 minute 2 minutes 3 minutes 4 minutes 5 minutes 10 minutes 15 minutes 30 minutes 60 minutes	Sets the time until the printer enters sleep mode from power save mode.
Auto Power Off Time	1 hour 2 hours 3 hours 4 hours 8 hours 12 hours 18 hours 24 hours	Sets the time until the printer enters OFF mode from standby status.
Clearable Warning	ONLINE Job	Sets the time until clearable warning display turns OFF.
Auto Continue	On Off	Sets whether to implement auto printer recovery when a memory overflow or tray request occurs.
Manual Timeout	Off 30 seconds 60 seconds	Sets the time to wait for the paper feed during manual feed. If paper is not set within the specified time, the job is canceled.
Timeout print	Off 5 seconds 10 seconds 20 seconds 30 seconds 40 seconds 50 seconds 60 seconds 90 seconds 120 seconds 150 seconds 180 seconds 210 seconds 240 seconds 270 seconds 300 seconds	Sets the time from loss of the receipt of data until force-printing. With PS, the job is canceled without printing being implemented.
Low Toner	Continue Stop	Sets the printer operations when toner is detected. Continue: Print continuation is possible while online. Stop: Device is offline.
Jam Recovery	On Off	Sets whether to implement jam recovery print when a jam occurs. Setting [Off] cancels jobs that include pages to which the jam occurs.
Error Report	On Off	Sets whether to print error reports when an error occurs in PCL, XPS, and PS.
Hex Dump	Execute	Prints the received data in hexadecimal format. Turns OFF the power when the hexdump print finishes.

■ Print Adjust

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item				Details
Print Position Adjust	MPTray	X Adjust	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position perpendicularly (horizontally) over the direction of paper travel (0.25mm intervals).
		Y Adjust	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position in the direction of paper travel (vertically) (0.25mm intervals).
		Duplex X Adjust	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position perpendicularly (horizontally) over the direction of paper travel (0.25mm intervals) when printing the front during 2-sided printing.
		Duplex Y Adjust	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position in the direction of paper travel (vertically) (0.25mm intervals) when printing the front during 2-sided printing.
		Overprint X Adjust*1 *1: Displayed with C941/ES9541/ Pro9541 only.	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position perpendicularly (horizontally) over the direction of paper travel (0.25mm intervals) during spot color overprinting.
		Overprint Y Adjust*1 *1: Displayed with C941/ES9541/ Pro9541 only.	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position perpendicularly (vertically) over the direction of paper travel (0.25mm intervals) during spot color overprinting.
		Y Scaling	-0.25% to 0.00% to +0.5%	Zoom the print image in the paper running direction. (By 0.05%)
	Tray1	X Adjust	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position perpendicularly (horizontally) over the direction of paper travel (0.25mm intervals).
		Y Adjust	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position in the direction of paper travel (vertically) (0.25mm intervals).
		Duplex X Adjust	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position perpendicularly (horizontally) over the direction of paper travel (0.25mm intervals) when printing the front during 2-sided printing.
		Duplex Y Adjust	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position in the direction of paper travel (vertically) (0.25mm intervals) when printing the front during 2-sided printing.
		Overprint X Adjust*1 *1: Displayed with C941/ES9541/ Pro9541 only.	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position perpendicularly (horizontally) over the direction of paper travel (0.25mm intervals) during spot color overprinting.
		Overprint Y Adjust*1 *1: Displayed with C941/ES9541/ Pro9541 only.	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position perpendicularly (vertically) over the direction of paper travel (0.25mm intervals) during spot color overprinting.
		Y Scaling	-0.25% to 0.00% to +0.5%	Zoom the print image in the paper running direction. (By 0.05%)

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item				Details
Print Position Adjust	Tray2*1 Tray3*1 Tray4*1 Tray5*1 *1: The optional expansion tray unit is displayed when mounted.	X Adjust	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position perpendicularly (horizontally) over the direction of paper travel (0.25mm intervals).
		Y Adjust	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position in the direction of paper travel (vertically) (0.25mm intervals).
		Duplex X Adjust	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position perpendicularly (horizontally) over the direction of paper travel (0.25mm intervals) when printing the front during 2-sided printing.
		Duplex Y Adjust	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position in the direction of paper travel (vertically) (0.25mm intervals) when printing the front during 2-sided printing.
		Overprint X Adjust*2 *2: Displayed with C941/ ES9541/ Pro9541 only.	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position perpendicularly (horizontally) over the direction of paper travel (0.25mm intervals) during spot color overprinting.
		Overprint Y Adjust*2 *2: Displayed with C941/ ES9541/ Pro9541 only.	0.00 to ±2.00mm	Adjusts the overall image print position perpendicularly (vertically) over the direction of paper travel (0.25mm intervals) during spot color overprinting.
		Y Scaling	-0.25% to 0.00% to +0.5%	Zoom the print image in the paper running direction. (By 0.05%)
Paper Black Setting			0 +1 +2 +3 -3 -2 -1	Implements fine adjustment if black or white spots appear faded when printing on plain paper in mono mode. Lower the setting value if there are only fewer white spots, or raise the setting value if the high-density portion is thinner.
Paper Color Setting			0 +1 +2 +3 -3 -2 -1	Implements fine adjustment if color spots appear faded when printing on plain paper in color mode. Lower the setting value if there are only fewer white spots, or raise the setting value if the high-density portion is thinner.
Trans. Black Setting			0 +1 +2 +3 -3 -2 -1	Implements fine adjustment if black or white spots appear faded when printing on transparency in mono mode. Lower the setting value if there are only fewer white spots, or raise the setting value if the high-density portion is thinner.
Trans. Color Setting			0 +1 +2 +3 -3 -2 -1	Implements fine adjustment if color spots appear faded when printing on transparency in color mode. Lower the setting value if there are only fewer white spots, or raise the setting value if the high-density portion is thinner.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
SMR Setting	Cyan	0 +1 +2 +3 -6 -5 -4 -3 -2 -1	With cyan, compensates for print results variation due to differences in the temperature and humidity environments, print density, and print frequency. Change the settings if there is burr in the image.
	Magenta	0 +1 +2 +3 -6 -5 -4 -3 -2 -1	With magenta, compensates for print results variation due to differences in the temperature and humidity environments, print density, and print frequency. Change the settings if there is burr in the image.
	Yellow	0 +1 +2 +3 -6 -5 -4 -3 -2 -1	With yellow, compensates for print results variation due to differences in the temperature and humidity environments, print density, and print frequency. Change the settings if there is burr in the image.
	Black	0 +1 +2 +3 -6 -5 -4 -3 -2 -1	With black, compensates for print results variation due to differences in the temperature and humidity environments, print density, and print frequency. Change the settings if there is burr in the image.
	White *1 *1: Displayed when [Admin Setup] > [Spot Color] is set to [White] on the control panel for C941/C942/ES9541/ ES9542/Pro9541/ Pro9542.	0 +1 +2 +3 -6 -5 -4 -3 -2 -1	With white, compensates for print results variation due to differences in the temperature and humidity environments, print density, and print frequency. Change the settings if there is burr in the image.
	Clear *1 *1: Displayed when [Admin Setup] > [Spot Color] is set to [Clear] on the control panel for C941/ES9541/ Pro9541.	0 +1 +2 +3 -6 -5 -4 -3 -2 -1	With clear, compensates for print results variation due to differences in the temperature and humidity environments, print density, and print frequency. Change the settings if there is burr in the image.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
BG Setting	Cyan	0 +1 +2 +3 -3 -2 -1	With cyan, compensates for print results variation due to differences in the temperature and humidity environments, print density, and print frequency. Change the setting if the underlay is dark.
	Magenta	0 +1 +2 +3 -3 -2 -1	With magenta, compensates for print results variation due to differences in the temperature and humidity environments, print density, and print frequency. Change the setting if the underlay is dark.
	Yellow	0 +1 +2 +3 -3 -2 -1	With yellow, compensates for print results variation due to differences in the temperature and humidity environments, print density, and print frequency. Change the setting if the underlay is dark.
	Black	0 +1 +2 +3 -3 -2 -1	With black, compensates for print results variation due to differences in the temperature and humidity environments, print density, and print frequency. Change the setting if the underlay is dark.
	White *1 *1: Displayed when [Admin Setup] > [Spot Color] is set to [White] on the control panel for C941/C942/ES9541/ ES9542/Pro9541/ Pro9542.	0 +1 +2 +3 -3 -2 -1	With white, compensates for print results variation due to differences in the temperature and humidity environments, print density, and print frequency. Change the setting if the underlay is dark.
	Clear *1 *1: Displayed when [Admin Setup] > [Spot Color] is set to [Clear] on the control panel for C941/ES9541/ Pro9541.	0 +1 +2 +3 -3 -2 -1	With clear, compensates for print results variation due to differences in the temperature and humidity environments, print density, and print frequency. Change the setting if the underlay is dark.
Drum Cleaning		On Off	Sets whether to implement drum cleaning before printing. The image quality may be improved.
Transfer Roller Cleaning		Execute	Implements cleaning of the transfer roller unit.
High Humid Mode		Mode1 Mode2 Off	Set if the paper curl after printing is conspicuous. Try mode 2 if reduced paper curl effects are not obtained after settings mode 1. Setting mode 1 or mode 2 will increase the warm-up time and reduce the print speed.
Moisture Control		On Off	Sets whether or not to implement condensation control. If [On], completing the printing of 1 page may take time.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
Narrow Paper Speed		Normal Normal2 Slow	Sets the speed when printing on narrow paper. Normal: Print at a regular speed. Continuous printing may cause intermittence. Normal 2: Print at a regular speed. Continuous printing is less likely to cause intermittence than Normal mode, but may be lower fixing capability. Slow: Print at a slower speed. Intermittent printing is less likely to occur.
Print Mode		Normal Slow	Automatically switches the printing speed according to the usage conditions of the printer to avoid toner peeling. Not switch if [Normal] is selected.
Transfer Setting	Cyan Transfer Setting	0 +1 +2 +3 -3 -2 -1	Lower the setting value if lateral-stripe white dots appear for cyan, green and blue toner. Raise the setting value if lateral-stripe dark dots appear for cyan toner.
	Magenta Transfer Setting	0 +1 +2 +3 -3 -2 -1	Lower the setting value if lateral-stripe white dots appear for magenta and red toner. Raise the setting value if lateral-stripe dark dots appear for magenta toner.
	Yellow Transfer Setting	0 +1 +2 +3 -3 -2 -1	Lower the setting value if lateral-stripe white dots appear for yellow toner. Raise the setting value if lateral-stripe dark dots appear for yellow toner.
	Black Transfer Setting	0 +1 +2 +3 -3 -2 -1	Lower the setting value if lateral-stripe white dots appear for black toner. Raise the setting value if lateral-stripe dark dots appear for black toner.
	White Transfer Setting*1 *1: Displayed when [Admin Setup]>[Color Setup]>[Spot Color] is set to [White] on the control panel for C941/C942/ES9541/ES9542/Pro9541/Pro9542.	0 +1 +2 +3 -3 -2 -1	Lower the setting value if lateral-stripe white dots appear for white toner.
	Clear Transfer Setting*1 *1: Displayed when [Admin Setup]>[Color Setup]>[Spot Color] is set to [Clear] on the control panel for C941/ES9541/Pro9541.	0 +1 +2 +3 -3 -2 -1	Lower the setting value if lateral-stripe white dots appear for clear toner.
DV Roller Cleaning		On Off	Adjust the toner disposal threshold. On: Gives priority to image quality. Off: Gives priority to toner life.

[Admin Setup]

Note

- To enter this menu, it is necessary to enter the [Password].
- In the default factory settings, the administrator password is [aaaaaa].

■ Network Setup

- Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
TCP/IP	Enable Disable	Enables/disables the TCP/IP protocols.
NetBIOS over TCP* *: Displayed if [TCP/IP] in the control panel is set to [Enable].	Enable Disable	Enables/disables the NetBIOS over TCP/IP.
EtherTalk	Enable Disable	Enables/disables EtherTalk.
IP Address Set* *: Displayed if [TCP/IP] in the control panel is set to [Enable].	Auto Manual	Sets whether to request the IP address from the DHCP server.
IPv4 Address* *: Displayed if [TCP/IP] in the control panel is set to [Enable].	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Sets the IP address.
Subnet Mask* *: Displayed if [TCP/IP] in the control panel is set to [Enable].	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Sets the subnet mask.
Gateway Address* *: Displayed if [TCP/IP] in the control panel is set to [Enable].	xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx	Sets the gateway address.
Web* *: Displayed if [TCP/IP] in the control panel is set to [Enable].	Enable Disable	Enables/disables access using web browsers.
Telnet* *: Displayed if [TCP/IP] in the control panel is set to [Enable].	Enable Disable	Enables/disables access using TELNET.
FTP* *: Displayed if [TCP/IP] in the control panel is set to [Enable].	Enable Disable	Enables/disables access using FTP.
IPSec* *: Displayed if [TCP/IP] in the control panel is set to [Enable].	Enable Disable	Enables/disables access using IPSec.
SNMP* *: Displayed if [TCP/IP] in the control panel is set to [Enable].	Enable Disable	Enables/disables access using SNMP.
Network Scale	Normal Small	Normal: The printer will operate effectively even if connected to a hub with spanning tree functions. Small scale, however, is 2 to 3 PCs. When connected to a small-scale LAN, the printer startup time will be lengthened. Small: From small scale LANs with 2 or 3 PCs to large scale LANs are covered, but if connected to a hub with spanning tree functions, operations may not be effective.
Gigabit Network	Enable Disable	Sets whether to support a Gigabit network.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Hub Link Setting	Auto 100Base-TX Full 100Base-TX Half 10Base-T Full 10Base-T Half	Sets the connection mode to the hub.
Network Factory Defaults	Execute	Restores the settings such as network, mail server, LDAP server, and secure protocol server, etc., to their default values.

■ USB Setup

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
USB	Enable Disable	Enables/disables access using a USB interface.
Speed	480Mbps 12Mbps	Sets the maximum baud rate using a USB interface.
Soft Reset	Enable Disable	Enables/disables the software reset command.
Serial Number	Enable Disable	Enables/disables the USB serial number. The USB serial number is used to identify USB devices connected to a PC.
Offline Receive	Enable Disable	Sets whether to receive data even if offline or a recoverable error occurs.

■ Print Setup

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
Personality		Auto PCL XPS IBM PPR EPSON FX PostScript	Select the print language. Print language switching is automatic when set to [Auto].
Copies		1 to 999	Sets the copy quantity. This setting is disabled unless local print is set to demo data.
Duplex		On Off	Sets whether or not to implement 2-sided printing.
Binding		Long Edge Short Edge	Sets the 2-sided print binding method.
Job Offset		On Off	Sets whether to enable job offset.
Output Bin		Face Down Face Up	Sets the output bin.
Media Check		Enable Disable	Sets whether to enable the print data paper size and the tray paper size mismatch.
A4/Letter Override		No Yes	Sets whether to print by switching A4 to letter size and letter to A4 size when there is no paper suited to the print data size in the tray.
Resolution		600dpi 1200dpi 1200x600dpi multi-levels	Sets the resolution.
Toner Save	Toner Save Level	Off Low Middle High	Sets the toner ave quantity. Specifies [Off] when toner save mode is disabled.
	Color	All Except 100% Black	All: All colors, including 100% black, comprise all the target colors for toner saving. Except 100% Black: All colors, excluding 100% black, comprise all the target colors for toner saving.
Mono-Print Mode		Auto Color Mode Normal Mode	Sets the monochrome page print mode. Auto: If the first page is monochrome page or monochrome page + spot color, print it by using only the black image drum or black + spot color image drum. If a color page appears, print it by using the 4-color image drum and continue to print even if monochrome page appears. Color Mode: The CMYK image drum always prints down, and the clear and white image drums print down from where the page is, including white or clear. Normal Mode: K image drums are normally printed down, and other color image drums are down when printing pages including those colors, and up when printing pages that do not include such colors. However, CMY image drums are down/up using three colors.
Default Orientation		Portrait Landscape	Sets the print orientation.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Form Length	5 lines to 64 lines to 128 lines	Sets the number of printable lines per page.
Edit Size	Cassette size A3Nobi A3Wide A3 A4 A4 A5 A5 A6 B4 B5 B5 B6 Legal14 Legal13.5 Legal13 Tabloid Extra Tabloid Letter Letter Executive 16K (184x260mm) 16K (195x270mm) 16K (197x273mm) 16K (184x260mm) 16K (195x270mm) 16K (197x273mm) 8K (260x368mm) 8K (270x390mm) 8K (273x394mm) Statement Com-6 3/4 Envelope Com-9 Envelope Com-10 Envelope Monarch Envelope A2 Envelope A6 Envelope A7 Envelope DL Envelope C4 Envelope C5 Envelope Nagagata #3 Nagagata #4 Nagagata #40 Yougata #0 Yougata #2 Yougata #4 Kakugata #2 Kakugata #3 Kakugata #8 Index cards A4Wide A4Wide B6Half Custom	Sets the edit size of the paper if the paper size has not been specified from the PC. Disabled with PS.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Trapping	Off Narrow Wide	Sets trapping.
X Dimension	2.5" to 8.3" to 13"	Sets the default custom paper width.
	64mm to 210mm to 330mm	
Y Dimension	3.5" to 11.7" to 52.0"	Sets the default custom paper length.
	89mm to 297mm to 1321mm	

■ PS Setup

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Network Protocol	ASCII RAW	Sets the PS communications protocol mode for data from the network.
USB Protocol	ASCII RAW	Sets the PS communications protocol mode for data from the USB.
PDF Paper Size	Tray Size PDF Paper Size	Set the paper size when printing with PDF Direct Print.

■ PCL Setup

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Font Source	Resident Resident2 Downloaded	Sets the location of the fonts to be used.
Font Number	I0 C1 C2 C3 C4 S1	Sets the numbers of the fonts to be used.
Font Pitch	0.44CPI to 10.00CPI to 99.99CPI	Sets the font width. Increases and reduces in 0.01 CPI units. Displayed when the font selected using [Font No.] is an outline font with fixed spacing.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Font Height	4.00 point to 12.00 point to 999.75 point	Sets the font height. Increases and reduces in 0.25 point units. Displayed when the font selected using [Font No.] is an outline font with variable spacing.
Symbol Set	WIN3.1J PC-8 PC-8 Dan/Nor PC-8 Grk PC-8 TK PC-775 PC-850 PC-851 Grk PC-852 PC-855 PC-857 TK PC-858 PC-862 Heb PC-864 L/A PC-866 PC-866 Ukr PC-869 PC-1004 Pi Font Plska Mazvia PS Math PS Text Roman-8 Roman-9 Roman Ext Serbo Croat1 Serbo Croat2 Spanish UCS-2 Ukrainian VN Int'l VN Math VN US Win 3.0 Win 3.1 Arb Win 3.1 L/G Win 3.1 Blt Win 3.1 Cyr Win 3.1 Grk Win 3.1 Heb Win 3.1 L1 Win 3.1 L2 Win 3.1 L5 Wingdings Dingbats MS Symbol OCR-A OCR-B OCRB Subset2 HP ZIP	Select the symbol set.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Symbol Set	USPSFIM USPSSTP USPSZIP Arabic-8 Bulgarian CWI Hung DeskTop German Greek-437 Greek-437 Cy Greek-737 Greek-8 Greek-928 Hebrew NC Hebrew OC Hebrew-7 Hebrew-8 IBM-437 IBM-850 IBM-860 IBM-863 IBM-865 ISO Dutch ISO L1 ISO L2 ISO L4 ISO L5 ISO L6 ISO L9 ISO Swedish1 ISO Swedish2 ISO Swedish3 ISO-2 IRV ISO-4 UK ISO-6 ASC ISO-10 S/F ISO-11 Swe ISO-14 JASC ISO-15 Ita ISO-16 Por ISO-17 Spa ISO-21 Ger ISO-25 Fre ISO-57 Chi ISO-60 Nor ISO-61 Nor ISO-69 Fre ISO-84 Por ISO-85 Spa ISO-Cyr ISO-Grk ISO-Hebrew Kamenicky Legal Math-8 MC Text MS Publish PC Ext D/N PC Ext US PC Set1 PC Set2 D/N PC Set2 US	Select the symbol set.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
A4 Print Width		78 column 80 column	Sets the number of digits until an auto carriage return on A4 paper.
White Page Skip		On Off	Sets whether not to print blank pages.
CR Function		CR CR+LF	Sets the operations when receiving CR codes.
LF Function		LF LF+CR	Sets the operations when receiving LF codes.
Print Margin		Normal 1/5" 1/6"	Sets the are of the paper where printing is not possible.
True Black		Off On	Sets whether to print image data black using mixed CMYK or print using black toner only.
Pen Width Adjust		On Off	Compensates so that thin lines are visible.
Tray ID#	MPTray	1 to 4 to 59	Specifies the number of the Multi-Purpose Tray specification using the output specification command in the PCL commands.
	Tray1	1 to 59	Specifies the number of the tray 1 specification using the output specification commands in the PCL commands.
	Tray2*1 *1: The optional expansion tray unit is displayed when mounted.	1 to 5 to 59	Specifies the number of the tray 2 specification using the output specification commands in the PCL commands.
	Tray3*1 *1: The optional expansion tray unit is displayed when mounted.	1 to 20 to 59	Specifies the number of the tray 3 specification using the output specification commands in the PCL commands.
	Tray4*1 *1: The optional expansion tray unit is displayed when mounted.	1 to 21 to 59	Specifies the number of the tray 4 specification using the output specification commands in the PCL commands.
	Tray5*1 *1: The optional expansion tray unit is displayed when mounted.	1 to 22 to 59	Specifies the number of the tray 5 specification using the output specification commands in the PCL commands.

■ XPS Setup

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
DigitalSignature	Print Invalid Sign Print Only Valid Sign Off	Print Invalid Sign: If a document is falsified, a regular print and falsification error report are printed. Print Only Valid Sign: If a document is falsified, a falsification error report only is printed. Off: Signature authentication is not implemented.
DiscardControl	Auto Each Page Off	Auto: Resources are liberated as necessary. Each Page: Resources are liberated per page according to the markup. Off: Discard Control function is disabled.
MC Mode	On Off	Sets whether or not to use MC functions.
Unzip Mode	Auto Speed Print	Auto: Mode is switched automatically according to the file. Speed: Print speed is prioritized, and partial Unzip functions are not used. Print: Print processing is prioritized, and partial Unzip functions are used.
White Page Skip	On Off	Sets whether not to print blank pages.

■ IBM PPR Setup

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Character Pitch	10 CPI 12 CPI 17 CPI 20 CPI Proportional	Specifies character pitch in IBM PPR emulation.
Font Condense	12CPI to 20CPI 12CPI to 12CPI	Specifies 12CPI pitch for Condense Mode.
Character Set	SET-2 SET-1	Sets a character set.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Symbol Set	IBM-437 IBM-850 IBM-860 IBM-863 IBM-865 PC Set1 PC Ext US PC Ext D/N PC Set2 US PC Set2 D/N Roman-8 ISO L1 PC-8 PC-8 Dan/Nor PC-850 Legal ISO-2 IRV ISO-4 UK ISO-6 ASC ISO-10 S/F ISO-11 Swe ISO-14 JASC ISO-15 Ita ISO-16 Por ISO-17 Spa ISO-21 Ger ISO-25 Fre ISO-57 Chi ISO-60 Nor ISO-61 Nor ISO-69 Fre ISO-84 Por ISO-85 Spa German Spanish ISO Dutch Roman Ext ISO Swedish1 ISO Swedish2 ISO Swedish3 VN Math VN Int'l VN US PS Math PS Text Math-8 Pi Font MS Publish Win 3.0 DeskTop Win 3.1 L1 MC Text PC-852 Win 3.1 L5 Win 3.1 L2 CWI Hung PC-857 TK ISO L2 ISO L5 PC-8 TK	Sets a symbol set.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Symbol Set	Kamenicky Hebrew NC Hebrew OC Plska Mazvia ISO L6 Win 3.1 Heb Win 3.1 Cyr PC-866 Win 3.1 Grk PC-869 PC-855 Greek-437 Greek-437 Cy Greek-737 Greek-928 Serbo Croat2 Ukrainian Bulgarian PC-1004 Win 3.1 Blt PC-775 Serbo Croat1 PC-858 Roman-9 ISO L9 Greek-8 Win 3.1 L/G PC-851 Grk PC-8 Grk Hebrew-7 ISO-Hebrew Hebrew-8 PC-862 Heb ISO-Cyr ISO-Grk PC-866 Ukr ISO L4	Sets a symbol set.
Letter O Style	Enable Disable	Specifies the style that replaces φ (9B)and ¥ (9D) with φ (ou) and Φ (zero).
Zero Character	Normal Slashed	Specifies the style of 0 (zero). SLASHED: SLASH ZERO
Line Pitch	6 LPI 8 LPI	Sets line space.
White Page Skip	On Off	Sets ejecting or not ejecting a blank sheet. Available only when simplex is set.
CR Function	CR CR+LF	Sets performance when CR code is received.
LF Function	LF LF+CR	Sets performance when LF code is received.
Line Length	80 column 136 column	Specifies the number of characters per line.
Form Length	11 inch 11.7 inch 12 inch	Specifies the length of paper.
TOF Position	0.0 inch 0.1 inch ~ 1.0 inch	Sets the position from the top edge of paper.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Left Margin	0.0inch 0.1inch ~ 1.0inch	Sets the amount to shift the horizontal print start position to the right.
Fit to Letter	Enable Disable	Sets the printing mode that can fit print data, equivalent to 11 inches (66 lines), in the LETTER-size printable area.
Text Height	Same Diff	Sets height of a character.
Continuous Paper Mode	On Off	Sets to Landscape the edit direction of paper supported by A3 printer.

■ EPSON FX Setup

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Character Pitch	10 CPI 12 CPI 17 CPI 20 CPI Proportional	Specifies character pitch.
Character Set	SET-2 SET-1	Specifies a character set.
Symbol Set	IBM-437 IBM-850 IBM-860 IBM-863 IBM-865 PC Set1 PC Ext US PC Ext D/N PC Set2 US PC Set2 D/N Roman-8 ISO L1 PC-8 PC-8 Dan/Nor PC-850 Legal ISO-2 IRV ISO-4 UK ISO-6 ASC ISO-10 S/F ISO-11 Swe ISO-14 JASC ISO-15 Ita ISO-16 Por ISO-17 Spa ISO-21 Ger ISO-25 Fre ISO-57 Chi ISO-60 Nor ISO-61 Nor ISO-69 Fre ISO-84 Por ISO-85 Spa	Specifies a symbol set.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Symbol Set	German Spanish ISO Dutch Roman Ext ISO Swedish1 ISO Swedish2 ISO Swedish3 VN Math VN Int'l VN US PS Math PS Text Math-8 Pi Font MS Publish Win 3.0 DeskTop Win 3.1 L1 MC Text PC-852 Win 3.1 L5 Win 3.1 L2 CWI Hung PC-857 TK ISO L2 ISO L5 PC-8 TK Kamenicky Hebrew NC Hebrew OC Plska Mazvia ISO L6 Win 3.1 Heb Win 3.1 Cyr PC-866 Win 3.1 Grk PC-869 PC-855 Greek-437 Greek-437 Cy Greek-737 Greek-928 Serbo Croat2 Ukrainian Bulgarian PC-1004 Win 3.1 Blt PC-775 Serbo Croat1 PC-858 Roman-9 ISO L9 Greek-8 Win 3.1 L/G PC-851 Grk PC-8 Grk Hebrew-7 ISO-Hebrew Hebrew-8 PC-862 Heb ISO-Cyr ISO-Grk PC-866 Ukr ISO L4	Specifies a symbol set.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Letter O Style	Enable Disable	Specifies the style that replaces φ (9B)and ¥ (9D) with φ (ou) and Φ (zero).
Zero Character	Normal Slashed	Specifies the style of 0 (zero). SLASHED: SLASH ZERO
Line Pitch	6 LPI 8 LPI	Sets line space.
White Page Skip	On Off	Sets whether ejecting a blank sheet or not.
CR Function	CR CR+LF	Sets performance when CR code is received.
Line Length	80 column 136 column	Specifies the number of characters per line.
Form Length	11 inch 11.7 inch 12 inch	Specifies the length of paper.
TOF Position	0.0 inch 0.1 inch ~ 1.0 inch	Sets the position from the top edge of paper.
Left Margin	0.0 inch 0.1 inch ~ 1.0 inch	Sets the amount to shift the horizontal print start position to the right.
Fit to Letter	Enable Disable	Sets the printing mode that can fit print data, equivalent to 11 inches (66 lines), in the LETTER-size printable area.
Text Height	Same Diff	Sets height of a character.
Continuous Paper Mode	On Off	Sets to Landscape the edit direction of paper supported by A3 printer.

■ Color Setup

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Ink Simulation	Off SWOP ISO Coated Japan	Sets the ink simulation. This setting is enabled only for PS language jobs.
UCR	Low Medium High	You can select the black plate (black) amount during color printing. Setting more black plate economizes on the toner of the other three colors.
CMY 100% Density	Enable Disable	Enables and disables 100% output over the CMY 100% shade values.
CMYK Conversion	On Off	You can select the method of total toner amount control for CMYK data. Select [Off] to disable the GCR (Gray Component Replacement). Further, this menu setting is disabled if using the ink simulation function.
Spot Color*1 *1: Displayed with C941/ES9541/Pro9541 only.	White Clear	Displays the spot color information. The setting is enabled after the printer is restarted.

■ Panel Setup

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Near Life Status	Enable Disable	Sets the panel display control when a near life warning occurs for the image drum, fuser unit, or belt.
Near Life LED	Enable Disable	Sets the alarm lamp ON control when a near life warning occurs for the toner, image drum, fuser unit, belt, or waste toner box.
Idle Display	Toner Gauge Paper Size	Sets the information displayed in the standby screen.
Panel Brightness During Operating	5 to 31	Adjusts the brightness (backlight luminosity) of the control panel LCD. The set brightness is applied during control panel operations.
Panel Brightness While Power Save	0 to 1 to 31	Adjusts the brightness (backlight luminosity) of the control panel LCD. The set brightness is applied after the panel backlight timer time has eplased from the last operation.
Panel Backlight Timer	10 to 30 to 300	Adjusts the time (s) from the last operation to when the panel brightness (during power save) is applied.
Front Lamp	Mode1 Mode2 Off	Sets the printer front lamp operations. Mode1: Lit when in standby mode, flashes slowly during processing, and flashes rapidly when an error occurs. Mode2: Lit when in standby mode, flashes slowly during processing, and OFF when an error occurs. Off: Normally OFF.

■ Time Setup

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Date Format	yyyy/mm/dd mm/dd/yyyy dd/mm/yyyy	Sets the date display mode.
Time Zone	-12:00 to +0:00 to +13:00	Sets the time difference from GMT in 15-minute units. If the time zone setting is changed, the tome differences before and after the change is reflected in the current time. Memo ● The factory default is set to +9.00.
Daylight Saving	On Off	Sets whether to display summertime. On: Advances the current time by 1 hour. Off: Turns back the current time by 1 hour.
Time Setting	2000/01/01 00 :00 to 2009/01/01 00 :00 to 2091/12/31 23 :59	Sets the time. Memo ● The factory default is to set the time.

■ Power Setup

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Power Save	Enable Disable	Enables/disables power save mode.
Sleep	Enable Disable	Enables/disables sleep mode.
Auto Power Off	Enable Auto Setting Disable	Sets auto power OFF mode.

■ Others Setup

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
RAM Setup	Receive Buffer Size	Auto 0.5 MB 1 MB 2 MB 4 MB 8 MB 16 MB 32 MB	Sets the incoming buffer size that is assured by the local interface.
	Resource Save	Auto Off 0.5 MB 1 MB 2 MB 4 MB 8 MB 16 MB 32 MB	Sets the resource saving area size.
Flash Memory Setup*1 *1: Displayed when the control panel [Common storage settings]> [Enable initialization] is set to [Yes].	Initialize	Execute	Initializes flash memory.
	Resize PS Area	nn% [n.n MB]	Sets the Percentage of PS area in the flash memory.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
HDD Setup*1*2*3 *1: Displayed when the control panel [Common storage settings]> [Enable initialization] is set to [Yes]. *2: Displayed when [Boot Menu]> [HDD Setup]> [Enable HDD] in the control panel is set to [Yes]. *3: Displayed when the HDD is mounted.	Initialize	Execute	Initializes the HDD.
	Resize Partition	PCL nn%	20%	Sets the partition size.
		Common mm%	50%	
		PS ll%	30%	
		<Apply>		
	Format Partition		PCL Common PS	Formats the selected partition.
	Erase HDD		Execute	Deletes all HDD data such that it cannot be recovered.
Storage Common Setup*1 *1: Displayed when the HDD is mounted.	Check File System*2 *2: Displayed when [Boot Menu]>[HDD Setup]>[Enable HDD] in the control panel is set to [Yes].		Execute	Implements management data (FAT information) recovery, and resolves mismatches between the actual (free) space in the file system and the free space displayed.
	Check All Sectors*2 *2: Displayed when [Boot Menu]>[HDD Setup]>[Enable HDD] in the control panel is set to [Yes].		Execute	Recovers defective sector information on the HDD and file system nonconformances.
	Enable Initialization		No Yes	Sets whether or not to authorize setup changes concomitant with HDD and flash memory initialization.
Security Setup*1 *1: Displayed when the HDD (option) is mounted and [Boot Menu] > [HDD Setup] >[Enable HDD] is set to [Yes] on the control panel.	Job Limitation		Off Encrypted job	Sets the job restriction mode controls. If [Job encryption] is selected, non-encrypted secure prints will be discarded.
	Make Secure HDD*2 *2: Displayed when [Storage Common Setup]>[Enable Initialization] is set to [Yes] on the control panel and the HDD encryption is disabled.		Execute	Enables the data encryption function stored on the HDD. All data stored on the HDD to date will become unrecoverable when this process is implemented.
	Make Normal HDD*3 *3: Displayed when [Storage Common Setup]>[Enable Initialization] is set to [Yes] on the control panel and the HDD encryption is enabled.		Execute	Unlocks the data encryption function stored on the HDD. All data stored on the HDD to date will become unrecoverable when this process is implemented.
	Reset Cipher Key*3 *3: Displayed when [Storage Common Setup]>[Enable Initialization] is set to [Yes] on the control panel and the HDD encryption is enabled.		Execute	Regenerates the encryption key used in the encrypted HDD. All data stored on the HDD to date will become unrecoverable when this process is implemented.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
Language Setup	Language Initialize	Execute	Deletes the message files that have been downloaded.
Font Setup	Font Output Mode	JIS90 JIS2004	Sets the font output mode.
Job Cancel Setup	Cancel Key Behavior	Short Long Off	Sets the operations when the device [CANCEL] button is pressed. Short: Press and hold for 2s max. to cancel the print job. Long: Press and hold for 2 to 5s to cancel the print job. Off: Disables the [CANCEL] button.
	Inquiry Display	On Off	Sets whether to display the enquiry screen when a job is canceled.
	Focus Position	Yes No	Sets whether to apply [Yes] or [No] focus for selection in the job cancellation enquiry screen.
	Display Timeout	60 to 180 to 300	Sets the display timeout value for the enquiry screen when a job is canceled.

■ Settings

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
Reset Settings	Execute	Restores the user menu settings to the factory settings.
Save Settings	Execute	Saves the current menu settings.
Restore Settings*1 *1: Displayed when [Save Settings] is executed on the control panel.	Execute	Changes the saved menu settings.

■ Change Password

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item		Details
New password	**********	Sets a new password to be entered in the [Administrator menu] and [Boot Menu].
Verify Password	**********	Sets a new password to be entered in the [Administrator menu] and [Boot Menu] for which [New password] has been set.

[Print Statistics]

Note

- To enter this menu, it is necessary to enter the [Password].
- In the default factory settings, the password is [0000].

- Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
JOB LOG		Enable Disable	Enables/disables the totalization function.
Supplies Report*1 *1: Not displayed if [Usage Report] is set to [Disable] on the control panel.		Enable Disable	Sets whether or not to display the number of consumables replacements.
Reset Main Counter*1 *1: Not displayed if [Usage Report] is set to [Disable] on the control panel.		Execute	Resets the main counter aggregate value.
Consumables counter reset*1*2 *1: Not displayed if [Usage Report] is set to [Disable] on the control panel. *2: Not displayed if [Supplies Report] is set to [Disable] on the control panel.		Execute	Resets the number of consumables replacements.
Change Password*1 *1: Not displayed if [Usage Report] is set to [Disable] on the control panel.	New Password	****	Sets the new password to be entered in [Print Statistics].
	Verify Password	****	Sets a new password to be entered in the [Print Statistics] for which [New Password] has been set.

[Calibration]

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
Auto Density Mode		On Off	Sets whether to automatically compensate density and shade.
Auto BG Adjust Mode*1 *1: Displayed if [Auto Density Mode] in the control panel is set to [ON].		Off -1 0 +1 +2	Compensates for print results variation due to differences in the temperature and humidity environments, print density, and print frequency. Changes the value if there is burr in the image or the underlay is dark.
Density Adjustment Media		Standard Media Special Media	Sets the density adjustment to suit the media used. Standard Media: For the media of standard thickness to be printed at high speed. Special Media: For the thick or special media to be printed at low speed.
Adjust Density		Execute	Implements density compensation. Implement when the device is in standby mode.
Adjust Registration		Execute	Implements auto color misalignment compensation operations. Implement when the device is in standby mode.
Heavy Media Adjust		Off -5 to 0 to +15	Compensates the fixing speed during card stock printing.
Heavy Media Mode		Auto On Off	Sets the card stock mode. Suppresses misalignment of the image training edge during card stock printing. Enabled for ultra card stock 4 and ultra card stock 5.
Color Density	Cyan Density	-3 to 0 to +6	Adjusts the cyan density. This setting is enabled from printing after the density compensation has been implemented.
	Magenta Density	-3 to 0 to +6	Adjusts the magenta density. This setting is enabled from printing after the density compensation has been implemented.
	Yellow Density	-3 to 0 to +6	Adjusts the yellow density. This setting is enabled from printing after the density compensation has been implemented.
	Black Density	-3 to 0 to +6	Adjusts the black density. This setting is enabled from printing after the density compensation has been implemented.
	White Density*2 *2: Displayed when using white toner in C941/C942/ES9541/ES9542/Pro9541/Pro9542.	-3 to 0 to +6	Adjusts the white density. This setting is enabled from printing after the density compensation has been implemented.
	Clear Density*3 *3: Displayed when using clear toner in C941/ES9541/Pro9541.	-3 to 0 to +6	Adjusts the clear density. This setting is enabled from printing after the density compensation has been implemented.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
Print Color Tuning Pattern		Execute	Prints patterns to match the shading characteristics.
Base Color Tuning	Highlight	A-1 A-2 B-1 B-2 to O-1 O-2	Matches the color balance for the parts displayed as most clear in the highlight area of the printed color matching pattern. The matching results are reflected in the highlight matching values for cyan, magenta, and yellow matching.
	Mid-Tone	A-1 A-2 B-1 B-2 to O-1 O-2	Matches the color balance for the parts displayed as most clear in the mid-tone area of the printed color matching pattern. The matching results are reflected in the mid-tone matching values for cyan, magenta, and yellow matching.
	Dark	A-1 A-2 B-1 B-2 to O-1 O-2	Matches the color balance for the parts displayed as most clear in the dark area of the printed color matching pattern. The matching results are reflected in the dark matching values for cyan, magenta, and yellow matching.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item				Details
Fine Color Tuning	Cyan Tuning	Highlight	-4 to **0** to +4	Matches the highlights (light areas) of the cyan shade characteristics.
		Mid-Tone	-4 to **0** to +4	Matches the intermediate areas of the cyan shading characteristics.
		Dark	-4 to **0** to +4	Matches the dark (dark areas) of the cyan shade characteristics.
	Magenta Tuning	Highlight	-4 to **0** to +4	Matches the highlights (light areas) of the magenta shade characteristics.
		Mid-Tone	-4 to **0** to +4	Matches the intermediate areas of the magenta shading characteristics.
		Dark	-4 to **0** to +4	Matches the dark (dark areas) of the magenta shade characteristics.
	Yellow Tuning	Highlight	-4 to **0** to +4	Matches the highlights (light areas) of the yellow shade characteristics.
		Mid-Tone	-4 to **0** to +4	Matches the intermediate areas of the yellow shading characteristics.
		Dark	-4 to **0** to +4	Matches the dark (dark areas) of the yellow shade characteristics.
	Black Tuning	Highlight	-3 to **0** to +3	Matches the highlights (light areas) of the black shade characteristics.
		Mid-Tone	-3 to **0** to +3	Matches the intermediate areas of the black shading characteristics.
		Dark	-3 to **0** to +3	Matches the dark (dark areas) of the black shade characteristics.

● Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
Reset Color Tuning		Execute	Resets the CMYK color matching.
White Tuning*1 *1: Displayed when white toner is used in C941/ C942/ ES9541/ ES9542/ Pro9541/ Pro9542.	Highlight	-3 to 0 to +3	Matches the highlights (light areas) of the white shade characteristics.
	Mid-Tone	-3 to 0 to +3	Matches the intermediate areas of the white shading characteristics.
	Dark	-3 to 0 to +3	Matches the dark (dark areas) of the white shade characteristics.

[Boot Menu]

Note

- To enter this menu, press and hold the [OK] button while turning ON the power supply.
- To enter this menu, it is necessary to enter the [Password].
- In the default factory settings, the administrator password is [aaaaaa].
- This menu is displayed in English only.

- Shaded areas are factory-set values.

Item			Details
Network Factory Defaults		Execute	Implements network menu initialization.
HDD Setup*1 *1: Displayed when the HDD is mounted.	Enable HDD	No Yes	Sets whether to start the printer viewing the HDD is not mounted when the HDD is actually mounted.
Storage Common Setup*1*2 *1: Displayed when the HDD is mounted. *2: Displayed when [Enable HDD] in the control panel is set to [Yes].	Check File System	Execute	Implements management data (FAT information) recovery, and resolves mismatches between the actual (free) space in the file system and the free space displayed.
	Check All Sectors	Execute	Recovers defective sector information on the HDD and file system nonconformances.
Menu Lockout		On Off	Sets whether not to display menus other than the Secure Print/Encrypted Secure Print in the control panel.
Panel Lockout		Mode1 Mode2 Off	Sets whether to disable the operations buttons on the control panel.

Appendix

Using Print Job Accounting 322

Character code table 323

Using Print Job Accounting

Note

- The optional print job accounting is required.
- Upgrading the print job accounting software may lead to different descriptions from the text herein.
- If print job accounting has been added to the device, print by enabling "JobAccounting: ON" in the device setup print.
- See "Settings details" (P.265).

Number of usable user IDs and logs

The number of user IDs that can be registered and the number of logs that can be saved using the factory settings are described below. These numbers may be reduced depending on the log details.

Number of user IDs that can be registered	Number of logs that can be saved
5000ID	With the (optional) HDD mounted: 5,000 With the (optional) HDD not mounted: 550

Character code table

PostScript mode

■ Standard Latin fonts

Low code

High code	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0																
1																
2		!	"	#	$	%	&	'	(	)	*	+	,	-	.	/
3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
4	@	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O
5	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	[	\	]	^	_
6	`	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o
7	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z	{	|	}	~	
8																
9																
A		¡	¢	£	⁄	¥	ƒ	§	¤	'	"	«	‹	›	fi	fl
B		–	†	‡	·		¶	•	‚	„	”	»	…	‰		¿
C		`	´	ˆ	˜	¯	˘	˙	¨		°	¸		˝	˛	ˇ
D	—															
E		Æ		ª					Ł	Ø	Œ	º				
F		æ				ı			ł	ø	œ	ß				

■ Symbol

Low code

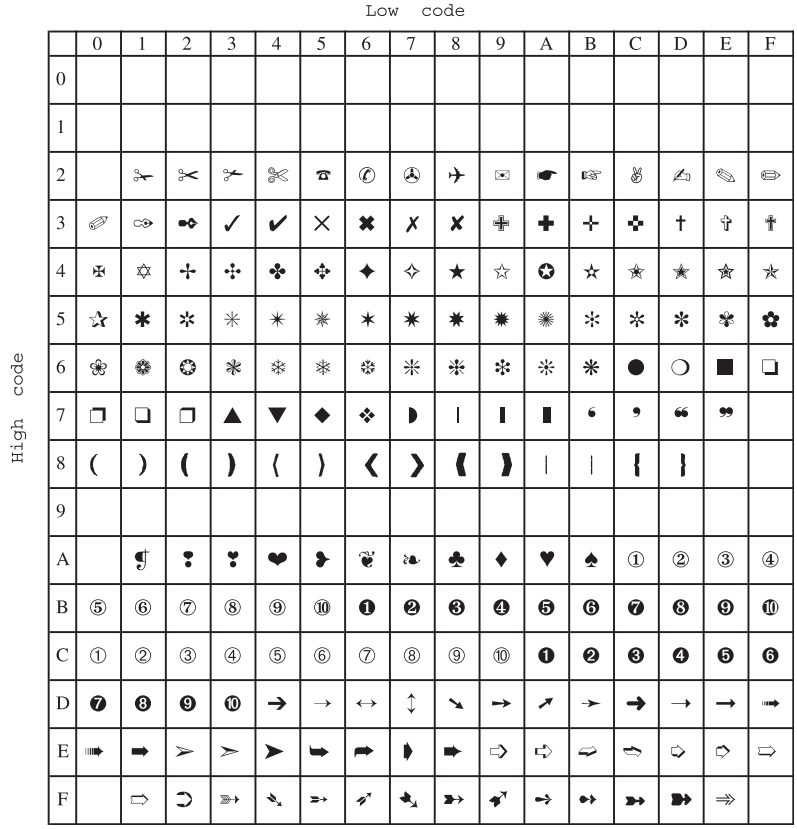
High code	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0																
1																
2		!	∀	#	∃	%	&	∍	(	)	*	+	,	−	.	/
3	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	:	;	<	=	>	?
4	≅	Α	Β	Χ	Δ	Ε	Φ	Γ	Η	Ι	ϑ	Κ	Λ	Μ	Ν	Ο
5	Π	Θ	Ρ	Σ	Τ	Υ	ς	Ω	Ξ	Ψ	Ζ	[	∴	]	⊥	_
6	‾	α	β	χ	δ	ε	φ	γ	η	ι	φ	κ	λ	μ	ν	ο
7	π	θ	ρ	σ	τ	υ	ϖ	ω	ξ	ψ	ζ	{	|	}	~	
8																
9																
A	€	ϒ	′	≤	⁄	∞	ƒ	♣	♦	♥	♠	↔	←	↑	→	↓
B	°	±	″	≥	×	∝	∂	•	÷	≠	≡	≈	…	|	—	↵
C	ℵ	ℑ	ℜ	℘	⊗	⊕	∅	∩	∪	⊃	⊇	⊄	⊂	⊆	∈	∉
D	∠	∇	®	©	™	∏	√	·	¬	∧	∨	⇔	⇐	⇑	⇒	⇓
E	◊	〈	®	©	™	Σ	⎛	⎜	⎝	⎡	⎢	⎣	⎧	⎨	⎩	⎪
F		〉	∫	⌠	⎮	⌡	⎞	⎟	⎠	⎤	⎥	⎦	⎫	⎬	⎭	

■ Wingdings-Regular

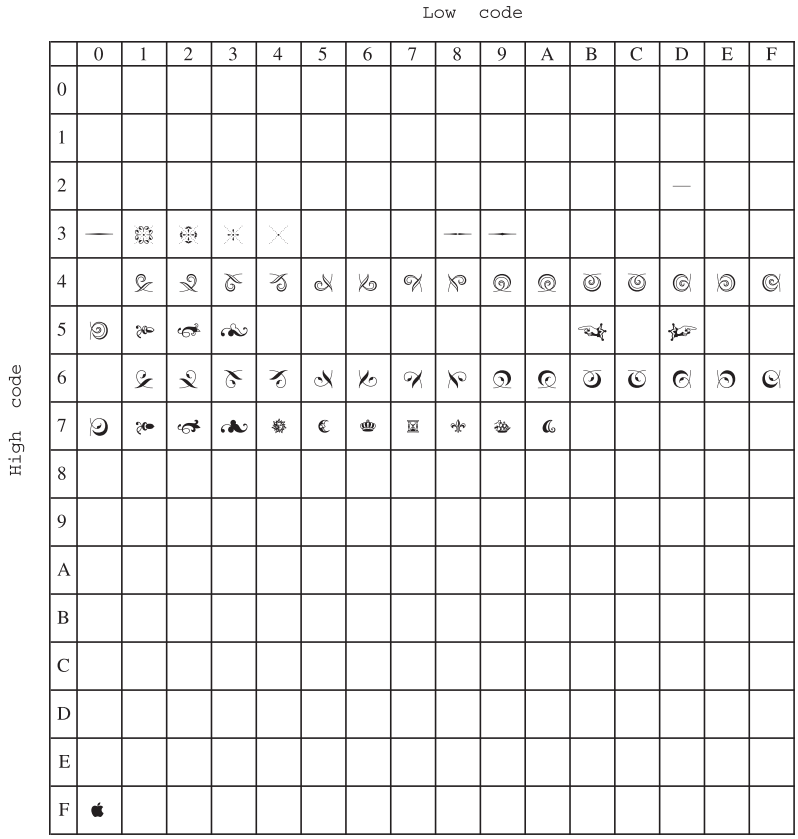
Low code

High code	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0																
1																
2		✁	✂	✃	✄	🔔	🕮	🕯	☎	🕭	✉	🖃	🖄	🖅	🖆	🖇
3	🗀	🗁	🗎	🗏	🗐	🗄	🖴	🖮	🖰	🖲	🖳	🖪	🖫	🖬	🖭	🖉
4	🖈	🖌	🖍	🖐	🖜	🖝	🖞	🖟	🖠	🖡	☺	😐	☹	💣	☠	🏳
5	🏱	✈	☼	🕆	❄	🕇	🕈	✠	✠	✡	☪	☯	🕉	☸	♈	♉
6	♊	♋	♌	♍	♎	♏	➚	♑	♒	♓	🙰	🙵	●	❍	■	□
7	❒	❑	❒	⬧	⧫	◆	❖	⬩	⊠	🞕	⌘	❁	❁	“	”	
8	⓪	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩	⓿	❶	❷	❸	❹
9	❺	❻	❼	❽	❾	❿	🙶	🙷	🙸	🙹	🙺	🙻	🙼	🙽	·	•
A	·	○	○	○	⊙	◎	❍	▪	□	🞅	✦	★	✶	✷	✹	✵
B	⌖	⌖	✧	⌑	⌖	✪	☆	🕐	🕑	🕒	🕓	🕔	🕕	🕖	🕗	🕘
C	🕙	🕚	🕛	🖙	🖚	🖛	🖜	🖝	🖞	🖟	🖠	🖡	🖢	🖣	🖤	🖥
D	🖦	🖧	🖨	🖩	🖪	⌫	⌦	🖫	🖬	🖭	🖮	🖯	🖰	🖱	🖲	←
E	→	↑	↓	↖	↗	↙	↘	←	→	↑	↓	↖	↗	↙	↘	⇦
F	⇨	⇧	⇩	⇔	⇳	⇖	⇗	⇙	⇘	▫	▫	×	✓	🗵	☑	🗹

■ ZapfDingbats



■ Hoefler Text Ornaments



PCL mode

Note

- If printing using application software, the application may use unique character code tables.

■ Symbol set

PC-8
PC-8 Dan/Nor
PC-8 Grk
PC-8 TK
PC-775
PC-850
PC-851 Grk
PC-852
PC-855
PC-857 TK
PC-858
PC-862 Heb
PC-864 L/A
PC-866
PC-866 Ukr
PC-869
PC-1004
Pi Font
Plska Mazvia
PS Math
PS Text
Roman-8
Roman-9
Roman Ext
Serbo Croat1
Serbo Croat2
Spanish
UCS-2
Ukrainian
VN Int'l
VN Math
VN US
Win 3.0
Win 3.1 Arb
Win 3.1 L/G
Win 3.1 Blt
Win 3.1 Cyr
Win 3.1 Grk
Win 3.1 Heb
Win 3.1 L1
Win 3.1 L2
Win 3.1 L5
Wingdings
Dingbats MS
Symbol
OCR-A
OCR-B
OCRB Subset2
HP ZIP
USPSFIM
USPSSTP
USPSZIP
Arabic-8
Bulgarian
CWI Hung
DeskTop
German
Greek-437
Greek-437 Cy
Greek-737
Greek-8
Greek-928
Hebrew NC
Hebrew OC
Hebrew-7
Hebrew-8
IBM-437
IBM-850
IBM-860
IBM-863
IBM-865
ISO Dutch
ISO L1
ISO L2
ISO L4
ISO L5
ISO L6
ISO L9
ISO Swedish1
ISO Swedish2
ISO Swedish3
ISO-2 IRV
ISO-4 UK
ISO-6 ASC
ISO-10 S/F
ISO-11 Swe
ISO-14 JASC
ISO-15 Ita
ISO-16 Por
ISO-17 Spa
ISO-21 Ger
ISO-25 Fre
ISO-57 Chi
ISO-60 Nor
ISO-61 Nor
ISO-69 Fre
ISO-84 Por
ISO-85 Spa
ISO-Cyr
ISO-Grk
ISO-Hebrew
Kamenicky
Legal
Math-8
MC Text
MS Publish
PC Ext D/N
PC Ext US
PC Set1
PC Set2 D/N
PC Set2 US
WIN3.1J

■ PCL Heisei Single-Byte (WIN3.1J)

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0				0	@	P	`	p				−	タ	ミ		
1			!	1	A	Q	a	q			。	ア	チ	ム		
2			"	2	B	R	b	r			「	イ	ツ	メ		
3			#	3	C	S	c	s			」	ウ	テ	モ		
4			$	4	D	T	d	t			、	エ	ト	ヤ		
5			%	5	E	U	e	u			・	オ	ナ	ユ		
6			&	6	F	V	f	v			ヲ	カ	ニ	ヨ		
7			'	7	G	W	g	w			ァ	キ	ヌ	ラ		
8			(	8	H	X	h	x			ィ	ク	ネ	リ		
9			)	9	I	Y	i	y			ゥ	ケ	ノ	ル		
A			*	:	J	Z	j	z			ェ	コ	ハ	レ		
B			+	;	K	[	k	{			ォ	サ	ヒ	ロ		
C			,	<	L	¥	l	|			ャ	シ	フ	ワ		
D			−	=	M	]	m	}			ュ	ス	ヘ	ン		
E			.	>	N	^	n	~			ョ	セ	ホ	゛		
F			/	?	O	_	o				ッ	ソ	マ	゜		

■ Symbol

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0				0	≅	Π	¯	π				∘	ℵ	∠	◊	
1			!	1	A	Θ	α	θ			ϒ	±	ℑ	∇	〈	〉
2			∀	2	B	P	β	ρ			′	″	ℜ	®	®	∫
3			#	3	X	Σ	χ	σ			≤	≥	℘	©	©	⌠
4			∃	4	Δ	T	δ	τ			/	×	⊗	™	™	⌡
5			%	5	E	Y	ε	υ			∞	∝	⊕	∏	Σ	⎛
6			&	6	Φ	ς	ϕ	ϖ			f	∂	∅	√	⎛	⎞
7			∍	7	Γ	Ω	γ	ω			♣	•	∩	·	⎜	⎜
8			(	8	H	Ξ	η	ξ			♦	÷	∪	¬	⎝	⎠
9			)	9	I	Ψ	ι	ψ			♥	≠	⊃	∧	⎡	⎤
A			*	:	ϑ	Z	φ	ζ			♠	≡	⊇	∨	⎜	⎜
B			+	;	K	[	κ	{			↔	≈	⊂	⇔	⎣	⎦
C			,	<	Λ	∴	λ	|			↑	⋯	⊄	⇐	⎡	⎤
D			−	=	M	]	μ	}			←	⏐	⊆	⇑	⎧	⎫
E			.	>	N	⊥	ν	~			→	—	∈	⇒	⎣	⎦
F			/	?	O	_	ο				↓	↵	∉	⇓	⎜	

■ Wingdings

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0				🗀	🗋	🖘	♊	❑	⓪	❺	▪	⌗	🕐	🙰	🡒	🡆
1			🖉	🗁	🖗	✈	♋	❑	①	❻	○	⌖	🕑	🙱	🡑	🡅
2			✂	🗎	🖘	☼	♌	❒	②	❼	○	✧	🕒	🙲	🡓	🡇
3			✂	🗏	🖙	🔥	♍	⬩	③	❽	◘	⌑	🕓	🙳	🡔	⇔
4			🖋	🗐	🖚	❄	♎	♦	④	❾	⊙	⌦	🕔	🙴	🡕	🡕
5			🔔	🖅	🖛	✞	♏	◆	⑤	❿	◎	✪	🕕	⌫	🡖	🡖
6			🕮	🖃	🖜	✞	♐	❖	⑥	❍	❍	☆	🕖	⌦	🡗	🡗
7			🕯	🖮	🖝	✟	♑	⬩	⑦	❓	▪	🕗	🡐	🡄	🡘	🡘
8			☎	🖰	🖞	✠	♒	☒	⑧	❔	□	🕘	🕘	🡅	🡒	🡙
9			🕿	🖲	🖟	✡	♓	🖂	⑨	❕	▲	🕙	🡕	🡁	🡑	▫
A			🖂	🖳	☺	☪	🕈	⌘	⑩	❗	✦	🕚	🡑	🡇	🡓	▫
B			🖃	🖴	😐	☯	🕭	❀	⓿	❗	★	🕛	🡒	🡐	🡔	×
C			🖄	🖫	☹	☸	●	✿	❶	❗	★	🕜	🡓	🡑	🡕	✓
D			🖅	🖬	💣	✵	❍	“	❷	❗	🕝	🙵	🙶	🡘	🡖	☒
E			🖆	🖭	☠	♈	■	”	❸	·	✹	🕞	🙷	🡙	🡗	☑
F			🖇	🖉	🏳	♉	□		❹	•	✵	🕟	🙸	🡐	🡄	▥

■ Memo

Index

A

Adjusting density watermarks 122
Adjusting ultra fine lines 71, 72
Administrator menu 297
Administrator passwords 273
Administrator setup 231
Auto density compensation mode 120
Auto tray selection 90
Auto tray switching 104, 105

B

Basic 2
Black finish 137
Black Finish 137
Black overprint 142
Booklets 65

C

Changing passwords 314
CMY 100% density 310
Collate 95, 97
Color Correct Utility
Color samples 150, 155
Color samples for matching ... 151, 155, 156
Compensating gamma and hue 158, 161
Deleting setup files 168, 169
Reading setup files 165, 167
Saving settings to a file 163, 164
Specifying palette colors 150, 154
Test printing
..... 151, 152, 155, 157, 159, 162
Color matching
Automatic 128
Graphic Pro 133
No Color Matching 135
Office colors 130
Color misalignment
compensation (manual) 120
Color Swatch Utility 172
Consumables and maintenance unit 277
Controlling control panel buttons 274
Controlling control panel menus 275
Cover Printing 92
Creating pamphlets 65

D

Dark 125
Date and time 311
Dates 311
Density compensation (auto) 120
Density compensation (manual) 121
Device information 210, 231
Device settings screen 278
DHCP server
Setting devices 225
Setting servers 224
Direct printing 261
Downloading PostScript files 108
Downloading PostScript files to the device 109

E

E-mail receiving settings 212
E-mail sending settings 213
Easy Guide (Set-up Guide) 2
Emulation mode 109
Encrypted communications 235, 239
Encrypted jobs 80
Encrypted Secure Print 78
Encryption (SSL/TLS) 220
Enlarging to print across several sheets 63
EtherTalk 211
Changing printer names 260
Changing zone names 260

F

Face-down stacker 85
Face-up stacker 85
Fine line adjustment 69
Flash memory initialization 312
Freeing the PC from print processing 106

G

General network setup 210

H

HDD initialization 313
Highlight 124, 127

I

IBM PPR Setup 305
ICC profiles 145, 174
IEEE802.1X 218, 256
IP address 184
IP filtering 219
IP filters 246
IPP 217
IPSec 221, 239

J

Job list 232
Job Spool 108

M

MAC address 247
MAC address filtering 220
Mac OS X utilities
    Network Card Setup Utility 210
    NIC settings tool 207
    Panel language setup 204
    Print job accounting client 205
Mail notifications 249, 251
Maintenance 222
Manually-fed printing 87
Manuals
    Marks and Symbols 3
    Separate Configuration 2
Menu lockout 275
Menu Lockout 275
Mid-Tone 125
Mono printing 110
Multi-page printing 88, 89
Multi-Purpose Tray 77
Multipurpose tray is handled
    as manual feed 23, 28, 35, 41, 48

N

NetBIOS over TCP 212
Not printing underlines or shading 67

O

Orientation
    Printing on face-down print surfaces 85
    Printing on face-up print surfaces 85
Overlay printing 101
Overlaying stamps to print 93

P

Panel lockout 274
Panel Lockout 274
Paper size 97
Paper Size Setup 63
Paper sizes that can be used
    in 2-sided printing 56
Paper sizes that can be used
    in 2-sided printing 47
Paper supporter 61, 62
Paper trays 85
Paper Weight 47
Passwords 233
Photo Enhance 69
Preventing line blurring 71
Print quantity 276
Print totalization results 268
Printable custom sizes 47
Printer buffer 106
Printer drivers
    Changing default settings 113
    Deleting 114
    Mac OS X PS printer drivers 18
    Saving settings 111
    Updating 115
    Using saved settings 112
    Windows PCL printer drivers 16

Windows PS printer drivers 14
Windows XPS printer drivers 17
Printer information 279
Printing 35, 41, 48
Custom media 52
Envelopes (irregular sizes) 28
Envelopes (regular sizes) 23
Glossy 35
Labels, Transparencies 41
User-defined paper sizes 47
Printing black using black toner only 137
Printing color matching patterns 123, 126
Printing colored text naturally vividly 69
Printing fine lines naturally vividly 106, 107
Printing orientations alternately 54
Printing pages individually 87
Printing PDF files without using the printer drivers 261
Printing photos naturally vividly 69
Printing PostScript errors 63
Printing ProQ2400 67
Printing reports/lists
Demo pages 270
Error logs 268
File list 266
Font list 267
Network information 267
Print totalization results 268
Scan to log 269
Test printing 265
User media list 269, 270
Printing separations in CMYK 148
Printing using registered forms 101
Printing using shades of black and white 140
Prioritizing print speed using low resolution 67
Profile assistant 173

R

Reducing several pages to 1 sheet for printing 54
Removing color parts 67
Rendering colored lines inconspicuous 143
Rendering white lines inconspicuous 142, 143
Rotate Sort function 97

S

Saved jobs 71
Saving print jobs to the device 99
Scaling prints 61
Secure Print 76
Security 219
Separation printing 148
Setting networks to factory settings 223
Setting passwords in print jobs 76, 78, 99
Setting the resolution 67
Setup Manual 2
SNMP 216, 227
SNMP Trap 216
SNMPv3 254
SNTP 218
Sort printing 95
Specifying 1st page print method 92, 93
Specifying toner consumption amount 58
SSL/TLS 235
Synthesizing and printing black using CMYK toner 137

T

TCP/IP 211
Time zones 311
Toner economy mode 58
Toner save 59, 60
Trapping 143
Tray Switch 103
Troubleshooting/Daily Maintenance Manual 2
TrueType fonts 73, 75

U

Uses custom sizes 271
Using custom media 52
Using fonts
PC 75

Printer 73
Using the BOOTP environment 226

W

Watermarks 93
Web browser 210, 229
Items table 231
Login 230
Web printing 222
Windows utilities
Change the Printer Display Language ... 192
Configuration Tool 180, 210
Direct Network Printing Utility (LPR) 194
Network Extension 201
PDF Print Direct 187
Print job accounting client 188
Web Driver Installer 203
Writing print data to files 107

X

XPS settings 305

Oki Data Corporation
4-11-22 Shibaura, Minato-ku,Tokyo
108-8551, Japan

www.okiprintingsolutions.com

August 2015
45582202EE Rev6